Owner's manual
SEAT Mii

SEAT

Vehicle identification data

Model:
Vehicle Registration:
Vehicle identification number:
Date of vehicle registration or vehicle delivery:
SEAT Official Service:
Service advisor:
Telephone:

Confirmation of receipt of documentation and vehicle keys

The following items were delivered with the vehicle:	**YES**	**NO**
On-board documentation	☐	☐
First key	☐	☐
Second key	☐	☐
Correct working order of all keys was checked	☐	☐
Location: Date:		
Signature of owner:		

Introduction

Thank you for your trust choosing a SEAT vehicle.

With your new SEAT, you will be able to enjoy a vehicle with state-of-the-art technology and top quality features.

We recommend reading this Instruction Manual carefully to learn more about your vehicle so you can enjoy all its benefits in your daily driving.

Information about handling is complemented with instructions regarding the operation and maintenance of the vehicle in order to ensure its safety and maintain its value. Moreover, we want to give you valuable advice and tips to drive your vehicle efficiently and respecting the environment.

We wish you safe and enjoyable motoring.

SEAT, S.A.

⚠ WARNING

Read and always observe safety information concerning the passenger's front airbag **››› page 66, Important information regarding the front passenger's airbag.**

About this manual

This manual describes the **features** of the vehicle at the time of drafting this text. Some of the features described below will be introduced in the future or will only be available in certain markets.

Some of the features described here are not included in all the types or variations of the model and they can be varied or modified based on technical or marketing requirements without it being considered misleading advertising.

Some details on the **drawings** may vary from its vehicle and must be interpreted as a standard representation.

The **direction indicators** (left, right, forwards, backwards) in this manual refer to the travel direction of the vehicle unless otherwise stated.

The **audiovisual material** is only meant to help the users better understand some features of the car. It is not a replacement for the instruction manual. Access the instruction manual to see the complete information and warnings.

* The **features marked with an asterisk** are included by default only in certain versions of the model, supplied as optional only for certain versions or only offered in certain countries.

® **Trademarks** are marked with ®. The absence of this symbol does not guarantee that the term is not a trademark.

>> It indicates that the section continues on the next page.

Important warnings on the page.

More in-depth content on the page.

General information on page indicated.

SOS Emergency information on the page.

You can access the information in this manual using:

- Thematic table of contents that follows the manual's general chapter structure.
- Visual table of contents that uses graphics to indicate the pages containing "essential" information, which is detailed in the corresponding chapters.
- Alphabetical index with many terms and synonyms to help you find information.

WARNING

Texts after this symbol contain information about safety and warn you about possible accident or injury risks.

CAUTION

Texts after this symbol indicate possible damage to the vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Texts after this symbol contain information about the protection of the environment.

Note

Texts after this symbol contain additional information.

Printed Instruction Manual

The printed instruction manual contains relevant information about the use of the vehicle and the Infotainment System.

The digital version of the manuals contains more in-depth information.

Digital Version of the Infotainment System Manual

BKJ-0252

Fig. 1 SEAT website

The digital version is available on SEAT's official website.

To view the digital version of the manual:

- scan the QR code ››› **Fig. 1**
- **OR** enter the following address in the navigator website:

  http://www.seat.com/owners/your-seat/manuals-offline.html

choose your vehicle and then “Infotainment”.

Frequently Asked Questions

Before driving

How do you adjust the seat? ››› page 14

How do you adjust the steering wheel? ››› page 15

How do you adjust the exterior mirrors? ››› page 15

How do you turn on the exterior lights? ››› page 22

How does the automatic gearbox selector lever work? ››› page 28

How do you refuel? ››› page 32

How do you activate the windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system? ››› page 24

Emergency situations

A warning lamp lights up or flashes. What does this mean? ››› page 27

Where are the first-aid kit and the warning triangle in the vehicle? ››› page 70

How do you open the bonnet? ››› page 12

How do you perform a jump start? ››› page 44

Where is the vehicle tool kit located? ››› page 70

How do you repair a tyre with the anti-puncture kit? ››› page 36

How do you change a wheel? ››› page 37

How do you change a fuse? ››› page 35

How do you change a light? ››› page 79

How do you tow a vehicle? ››› page 43

Useful tips

How do you set the time? ››› page 89

When should the vehicle inspection should be performed? ››› page 90

How do you remove the luggage compartment cover? ››› page 125

How do you drive in an economical and environmentally-friendly way? ››› page 166

How do you check and top up the engine oil? ››› page 32

How do you check and top up the engine coolant? ››› page 33

How do you top up the windscreen washer fluid? ››› page 34

How do you check and top up the brake fluid? ››› page 34

How do you check and adjust tyre pressure values? ››› page 209

Vehicle washing tips ››› page 220

Functions of interest

How does the START-STOP system work? ››› page 170

What parking assistants are available? ››› page 172

How does tyre pressure monitoring work? ››› page 212

Interior lighting ››› page 24

Table of Contents

The essentials 7

Exterior view 7
Exterior view 8
Interior view (left-hand drive) 9
How it works 10
Unlocking and locking 10
Before driving 14
Airbags 16
Child seats 18
Starting the vehicle 22
Lights and visibility 22
SEAT information system 24
Cruise control 26
Warning lamps 27
Gearbox lever 28
Air conditioning 29
Fluid level control 32
Emergencies 35
Fuses 35
Bulbs 36
Action in the event of a puncture 36
Changing a wheel 37
Snow chains 42
Emergency towing of the vehicle 43
How to jump start 44
Changing the wiper blades 46

Safety 48

Safe driving 48
Driving advice 48
Correct position of the vehicle occupants 49
Pedal area 53
Seat belts 53
Why wear a set belt 53
How to properly adjust your seat belt 57
Seat belt tensioners 59
Airbag system 60
Brief introduction 60
Airbag safety instructions 63
Deactivating airbags 64
Transporting children safely 65
Safety for children 65
Child seats 67

Emergencies 70

Self-help 70
In case of emergency 70
Vehicle tool kit* 70
Changing a wheel 72
Tyre repair 73
Changing the windscreen wiper blades 75
Tow-starting and towing 75
Emergency locking and unlocking 77
Fuses and bulbs 78
Fuses 78
Changing bulbs 79

Operation 87

General instrument panel 87
Instrument panel 86
Instruments 88
Opening and closing 92
Vehicle key set 92
Central locking* and locking system 94
Doors 98
Rear lid 99
Controls for the windows 101
Sliding/tilting electric panoramic sunroof 102
Lights and visibility 103
Lights 103
Visibility 108
Windscreen wiper and window wiper systems 108
Mirror 110
Seats and head restraints 112
Adjusting the seat and head restraints 112
Seat functions 113
Transport and practical equipment 114
Transporting objects 114
Practical equipment 115
Luggage compartment 122
Roof carrier 127
Air conditioning 129
Heating, ventilation and air conditioning 129

Infotainment System 133

Introduction 133
Safety warnings 133
Overview of the unit 135
General operating information 137
Audio Mode 139
Radio Mode 139
Media Mode 141
Phone management* 145
Drive Mii App* 147

Driving 149

Start and driving 149
Stopping and starting the engine 149
Braking and parking 151
Braking and stability systems 156
Changing gear 158
Steering 163
Run-in and economical driving 165

Engine management and exhaust gas purification system ... 168
Driving tips ... 169
Driver assistance systems ... 170
Start-Stop system ... 170
Cruise control system (CCS)* ... 171
Parking distance warning system* ... 172
City safety assist (Safety Assist)* ... 174
Hill driving assistant* ... 179
Towing bracket device ... 179
Driving with a trailer ... 179

Practical tips ... 180

Care and maintenance ... 180
Accessories, replacement of parts and modifications ... 180
Checking and refilling levels ... 186
Fuel ... 186
Filling the tank ... 189
Bonnet ... 193
Engine oil ... 195
Engine coolant ... 198
Brake fluid ... 200
Windscreen washer reservoir ... 201
Vehicle battery ... 202
Wheels and tyres ... 206
Tyres ... 206

Maintenance ... 217

Service ... 217
Service intervals ... 217
Additional service offers ... 219
Warranty ... 220
Vehicle maintenance ... 220
Maintenance and cleaning ... 220

Information for the user ... 226

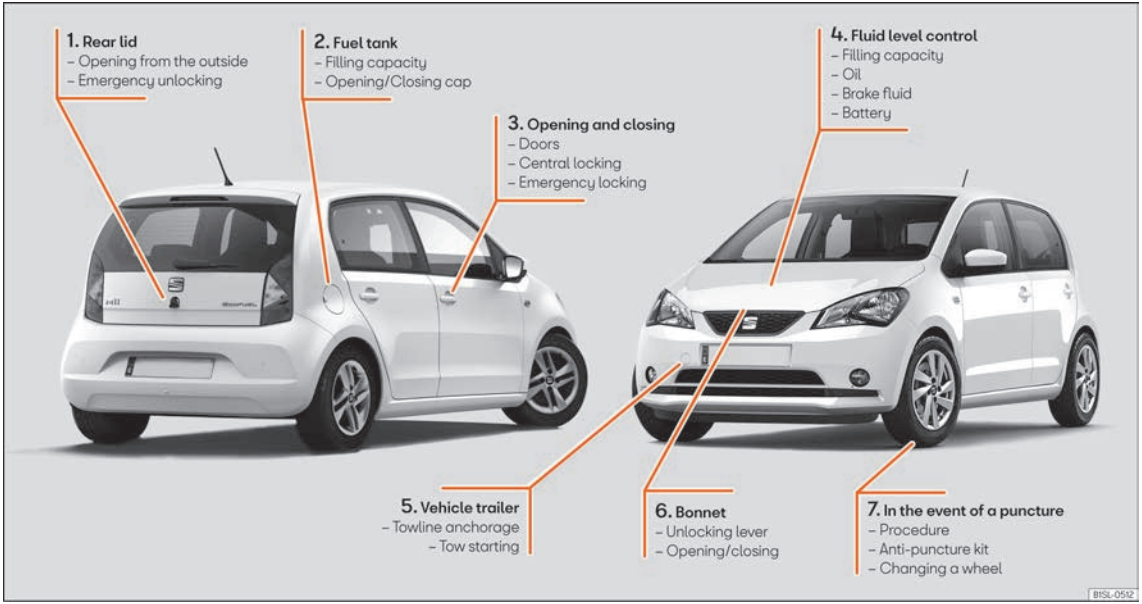
Information for the user ... 226
Information stored in control units ... 226
Other important information ... 227
Information about the EU Directive 2014/53/EU ... 229

Technical data ... 233

Technical features ... 233
Important information ... 233
Wheels ... 234
Engine data ... 235
Vehicle data ... 237

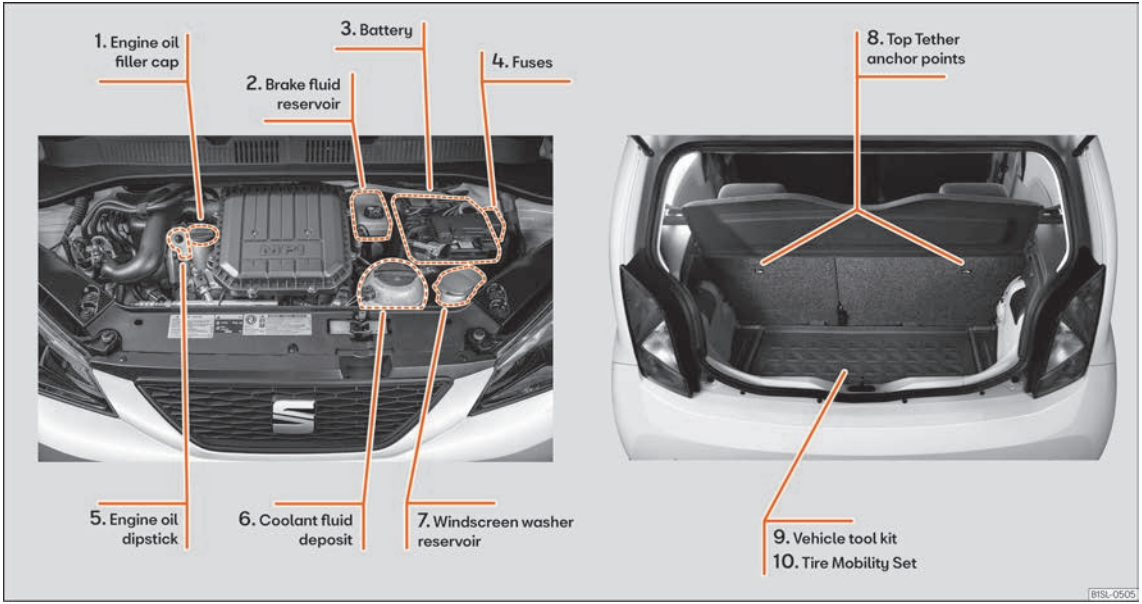
Index ... 239

Exterior view



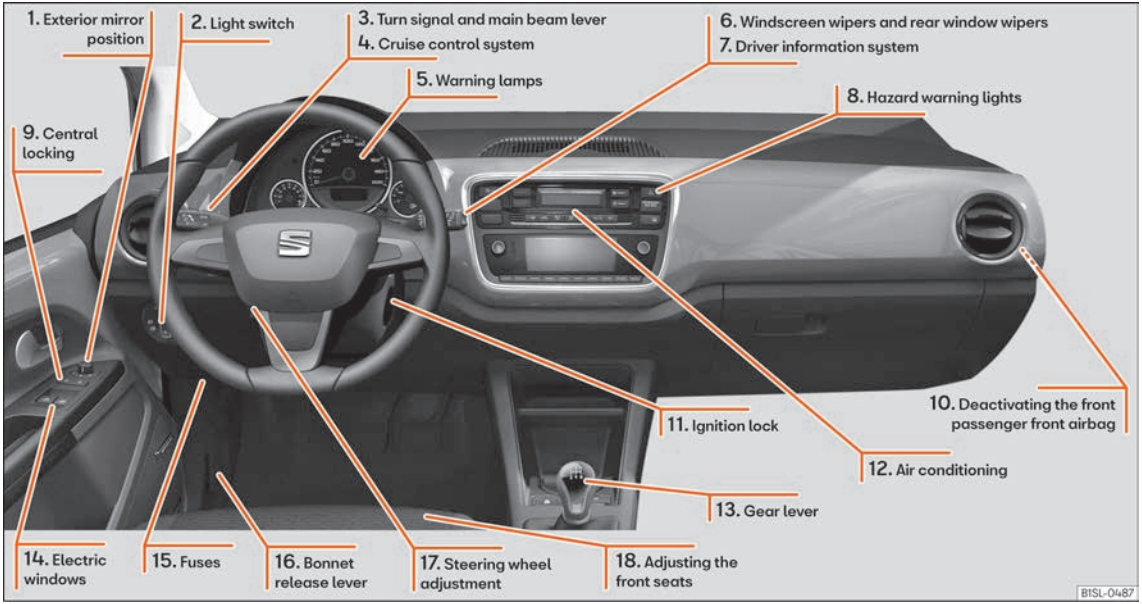
① ››› page 11
② ››› page 32
③ ››› page 10
④ ››› page 32
⑤ ››› page 43
⑥ ››› page 12
⑦ ››› page 36

Exterior view



① ››› page 32
② ››› page 34
③ ››› page 34
④ ››› page 35
⑤ ››› page 32
⑥ ››› page 33
⑦ ››› page 34
⑧ ››› page 21
⑨ ››› page 37
⑩ ››› page 36

Interior view (left-hand drive)



(1) ››› page 15
(2) ››› page 22
(3) ››› page 23
(4) ››› page 26
(5) ››› page 27
(6) ››› page 24
(7) ››› page 24
(8) ››› page 23
(9) ››› page 10
(10) ››› page 17
(11) ››› page 22
(12) ››› page 29
(13) ››› page 28
(14) ››› page 13
(15) ››› page 35
(16) ››› page 12
(17) ››› page 15
(18) ››› page 14

How it works

Unlocking and locking

Doors

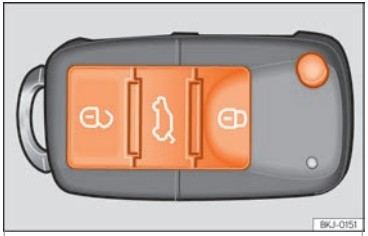


Fig. 2 Remote control key: keys.

Fig. 3 On the driver's door: central locking button.

Locking and unlocking the vehicle using the key

- Locking: press the button 🔒 ››› Fig. 2.
- Unlocking: press the button 🔓 ››› Fig. 2.
- Unlock the trunk lid: hold down the 🚗 ››› Fig. 2 button for at least 1 second.

Locking and unlocking with the central locking switch

- Locking: press the button 🔒 ››› Fig. 3. None of the doors can be opened from the outside. The doors can be opened from the inside by pulling the inside door handle.
- Unlocking: press the button 🔓 ››› Fig. 3.

⚠ ››› ⚠ in Introduction on page 94

📖 ››› page 94

SOS ››› page 11

Locking and unlocking the driver door manually

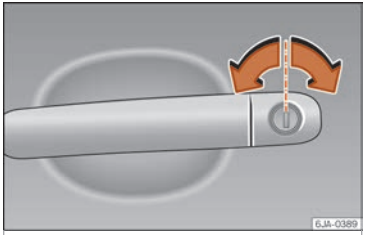


Fig. 4 Driver-side door handle with lock cylinder.

As a general rule, when the driver door is locked all other doors are locked. Unlocking manually only opens the driver door.

- Unfold the key shaft if necessary ››› 📖 page 92.
- Insert the key shaft into the lock cylinder to unlock or lock the vehicle ››› Fig. 4.

Locking the passenger door manually

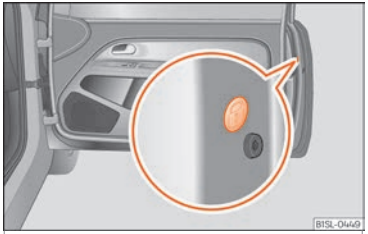


Fig. 5 On the front part of the passenger door: emergency locking, hidden behind a rubber gasket.

Fig. 6 Emergency locking of the vehicle using the vehicle key

The passenger door can be manually locked.

- Open the door.
- Remove the rubber cap to the front of the door. The rubber cap is marked with a lock symbol ››› Fig. 5.
- Unfold the key shaft if necessary ››› page 92.
- Insert the key shaft horizontally into the opening and moved the coloured lever forward ››› Fig. 6.
- Replace the rubber cap and close the door.
- Check if the door is locked.
- Have the vehicle checked by a specialised workshop.

Note

The doors can be opened and unlocked individually from the inside by pulling the door handle. To open, pull the inner door release lever twice ››› page 94.

Rear lid

Fig. 7 Rear lid open: space for pulling.

Opening

- Press the button on the vehicle key ››› Fig. 2 for about one second to unlock the rear lid.
- Insert the vehicle key into the lock cylinder of the driver door and turn the key **in an anti-clockwise direction ››› page 94.**

Closing

- Grab the handgrip inside the rear lid ››› Fig. 7 (arrow).
- Push the rear lid downwards until it locks into place in the lock.
- Ensure that it is correctly closed by pulling on it firmly.

»

››› ⚠ in Introduction on page 99

››› page 99

SOS ››› page 12

Manual release mechanism for the rear lid

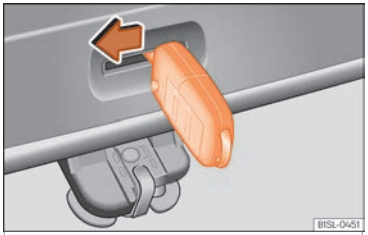


Fig. 8 From the trunk: emergency unlocking of the rear lid.

- If necessary, fold the rear seat bench backrest forward ››› page 14.
- Remove equipment to access the inside of the rear lid.
- Unfold the key shaft ››› page 92.
- Insert the key shaft into the rear lid opening ››› Fig. 8 and press the release lever in the direction of the arrow to unlock the rear lid.

Bonnet

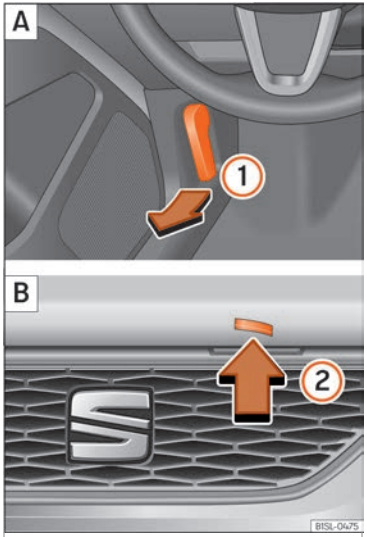


Fig. 9 A: Release lever in the footwell on the driver side B: Release lever on the bonnet

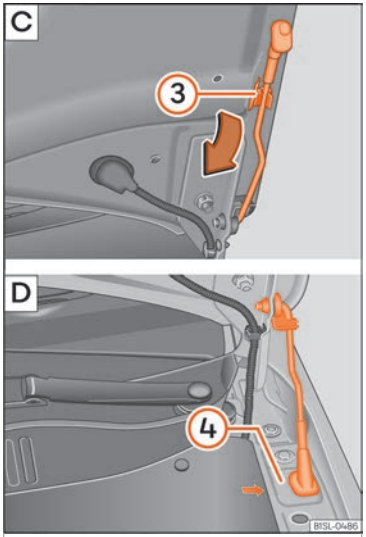


Fig. 10 C: Bonnet securing rod in the bonnet. D: Bonnet supported by the bonnet securing rod

Opening the bonnet

The bonnet is released from inside the vehicle.

Before opening the bonnet, make sure that the windscreen wiper arms are in place

against the windscreen ››› ❗ in Working in the engine compartment on page 194.

- Pull the release lever ››› Fig. 9 ① in the direction of the arrow. The bonnet is released from the lock carrier by a spring mechanism ››› ⚠ in Working in the engine compartment on page 194.
- Lift the bonnet up slightly while pressing the release lever ② in the direction of the arrow to completely open the bonnet.
- Take out the bonnet support rod from its clip in the direction of the arrow ③ and place it in the corresponding open position ④ (arrow).

Closing the bonnet

- Slightly lift the bonnet.
- Release the bonnet stay and replace it in its support.
- At a height of approximately 30 cm let it fall so it locks.

If the bonnet does not close, do not press downwards. Open it again and let it fall as mentioned above.

››› ⚠ in Working in the engine compartment on page 193

››› page 193

Controls for the windows

Fig. 11 On the driver door: buttons for front electric windows.

- Opening the window: press the button.
- Closing the window: pull the button.

① Window on the front left door

② Window on the front right door

››› ⚠ in Opening and closing the windows electrically on page 101

Panoramic sunroof*

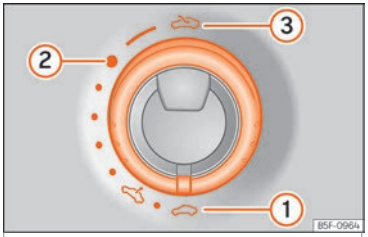


Fig. 12 On the internal roof: turn the knob to open and close

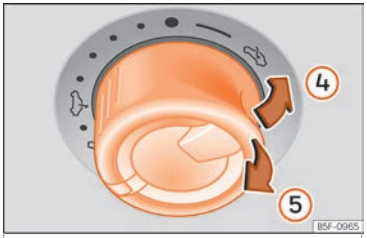


Fig. 13 On the internal roof: press or pull the knob to raise the sunroof and close it.

To raise the sliding/tilting sunroof, the knob must be in the basic position ①.

- Open: turn the switch to position ››› Fig. 12 ③.

»

- Comfort position: turn the switch to position ››› Fig. 12 ②.
- Close: turn the switch to position ››› Fig. 12 ①.
- Lift: Push the switch to position ››› Fig. 13 ④. For an intermediate position, hold down the switch until you reach the desired position.
- Lower: pull the switch to position ››› Fig. 13 ⑤. For an intermediate position, hold down the switch until you reach the desired position.

››› ⚠ in Opening and closing the panoramic sunroof on page 102

››› page 102

Before driving

Manually adjusting the seats

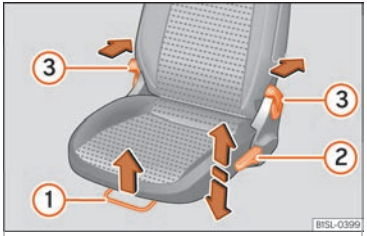


Fig. 14 Front left seat controls

The front seat head restraints are integrated in the backrests and adjusting them is not possible.

① **Forwards/backwards**: pull the lever and move the seat. The front seat must be engaged when the lever is released!

② **Raise/lower**: pull the lever up or push down (several times if necessary) from its home position.

③ **Tilt backrest**: pull the lever and adjust the backrest seat angle until you reach the desired position. The seat backrest must be engaged.

››› ⚠ in Manual front seat adjustment on page 112

Seat belt adjustment

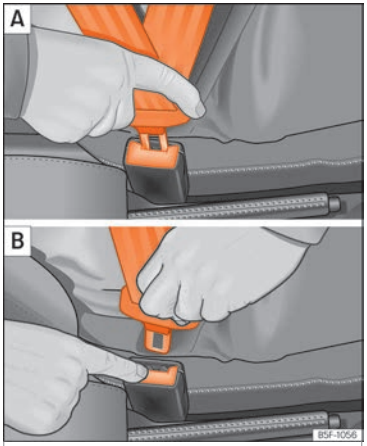


Fig. 15 Positioning and removing the seat belt buckle.

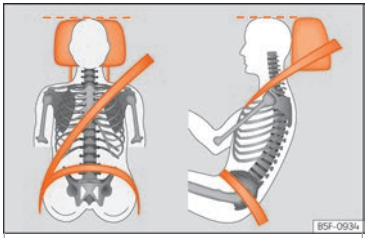


Fig. 16 Correct seat belt and head restraint positions, viewed from front and the side.

To adjust the seat belt around your shoulders, adjust the height of the seats.

The shoulder part of the seat belt should be well centred over it, never over the neck. The seat belt lies flat and fits comfortably on the upper part of the body.

The lap part of the seat belt lies across the pelvis, never across the stomach. The seat belt lies flat and fits comfortably on the pelvis.

››› ⚠ in Introduction on page 53

››› page 57

Seat belt tensioners

During a head-on, lateral or rear collision, the seat belts on the front seats tighten automatically.

The tensioner can be triggered only once.

››› ⚠ in Service and disposal of belt tension devices on page 59

››› page 59

Adjusting the exterior mirrors

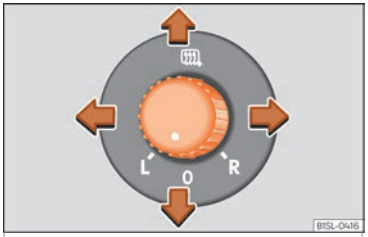


Fig. 17 On the driver door: rotating control for electric windows.

Adjusting the exterior mirrors: Turn the knob to the corresponding position:

L/R Turning the knob to the desired position, adjust the mirrors on the driver side (L, left) and the passenger side (R, right) to the direction desired.

Depending on the equipment fitted on the vehicle, the mirrors may be heated according to the outside temperature.

››› ⚠ in Exterior mirrors on page 111

››› page 111

Adjusting the steering wheel

Fig. 18 Mechanical steering wheel adjustment

- Push the lever ››› Fig. 18 (1) downwards.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that you can hold onto the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the ring at the 9 o'clock and »

3 o'clock positions and your arms slightly bent.

- Firmly push the lever upwards as far as it will go ››› ⚠ in Adjusting the steering wheel position on page 50.

››› ⚠ in Adjusting the steering wheel position on page 50

››› page 50

Airbags

Front airbags

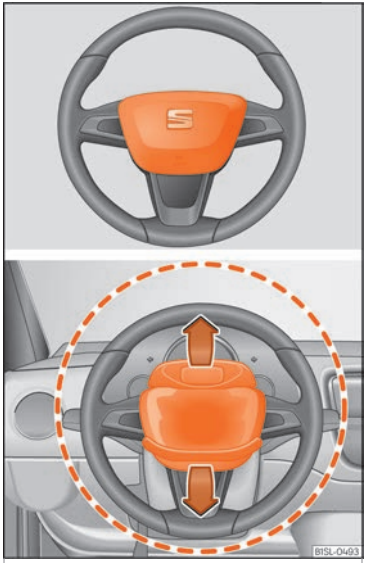


Fig. 19 Location and deployment area of the front airbag for the driver.

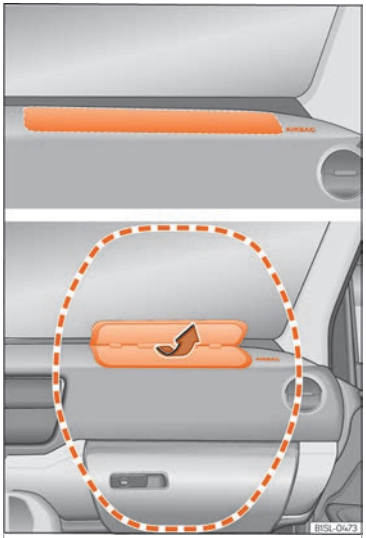


Fig. 20 Location and deployment area of the front airbag for the passenger.

In conjunction with the seat belts, the front airbag system gives the driver and the front passenger additional protection for the head and chest in the event of a severe frontal collision. Always remain as far away as possible from the front airbag ››› page 49. This

way, in the event of an accident, the front airbags can deploy fully when triggered, providing maximum protection.

The front airbag for the driver is located in the steering wheel ››› Fig. 19 and the airbag for the front passenger is located in the dash panel ››› Fig. 20. Airbags are identified by the word "AIRBAG".

When the front airbags are triggered they fill the zones marked in red ››› Fig. 19 and ››› Fig. 20 (radius of action). Therefore, objects should never be placed or mounted in these areas ››› ⚠ in Front airbags on page 63, Factory-fitted accessories are outside the range of the front airbag for the driver and the front passenger, e.g. the baseplate for the mobile phone support.

The airbag covers fold out of the steering wheel ››› Fig. 19 and the dash panel ››› Fig. 20 when the driver and front passenger airbags, respectively, are triggered.

››› ⚠ in Front airbags on page 63

Disabling the front passenger front airbag

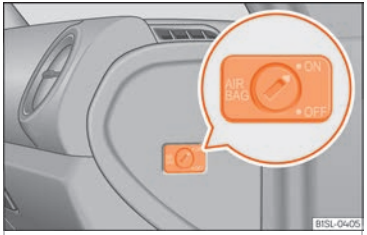


Fig. 21 On the passenger side: switch to activate and deactivate the front passenger airbag.

The front passenger front airbag must be disabled when a rear-facing child seat is mounted.

Disabling the front passenger front airbag

- Switch the ignition off.
- Open the door on the front passenger side.
- Unfold the vehicle key blade ››› 📖 page 92.
- Using the vehicle key, turn the key switch to **OFF** ››› Fig. 21.
- Close the door on the front passenger side.
- The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** control lamp on the dash panel will remain lit while the ignition is switched on ››› 📖 page 64.

››› ⚠ in Manual disabling and enabling of the front passenger front airbag with the key switch on page 65

››› page 64

Side airbags

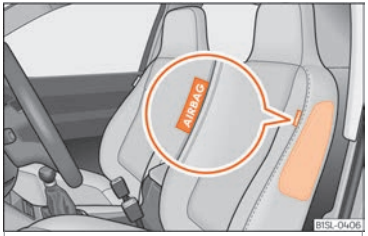


Fig. 22 On the front seat side: location of side airbag.

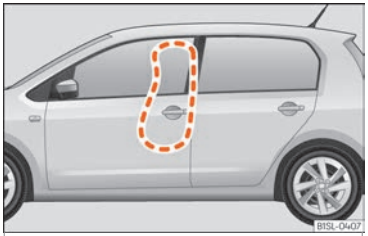


Fig. 23 On the left side of the vehicle: side airbag deployment zone.

The side airbags are located in the outer cushion of the driver and front passenger seat backrests ››› Fig. 22. Their position is indicated by the word "AIRBAG". The area marked in red ››› Fig. 23 indicates the side airbag deployment zone.

In the event of a side-on collision, the side airbag will deploy in the side of the vehicle affected ››› Fig. 23, thus reducing the risk of injuries to passengers on the side of the body and the head facing the accident side.

››› ⚠ in Side airbags* on page 63

Child seats

Important information regarding the front passenger's airbag

Fig. 24 Passenger side sun blind.

Fig. 25 On the rear frame of the passenger side door: adhesive in relation to the airbag.

A sticker with important information about the passenger airbag is located on the passenger's sun visor and/or on the passenger side door frame.

››› ⚠ in Important information regarding the front passenger's airbag on page 66

››› page 65

Mounting systems

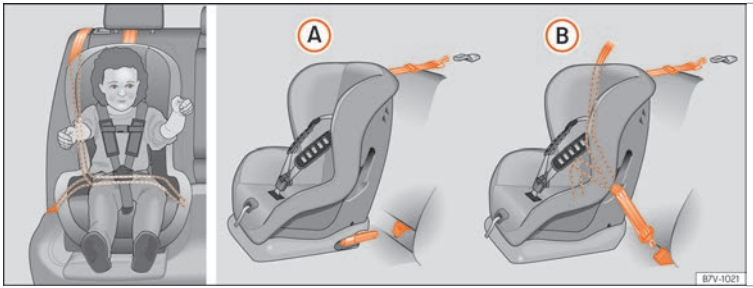


Fig. 26 On rear seats: possible assemblies of children seats.

Always secure child seats properly and safely in the vehicle according to the child seat manufacturer's installation instructions.

Mounted child seats must rest correctly on the vehicle's seat and must not move or rock more than 2.5 cm.

Child seats equipped for a Top Tether strap must also be secured using the Top Tether retaining strap in the vehicle ››› page 21. Attach the retaining strap to the corresponding retaining rings only. Not all rings can be used with the Top Tether system. Always tighten the Top Tether retaining strap so that the child seat fits snugly against the corresponding seat in the vehicle.

Specific mounting systems for each country

Attachment variants ››› Fig. 26:

Ⓐ *Europe*: ISOFIX retaining rings and upper retaining strap ››› page 20 and ››› page 21.

Ⓑ Three-point seat belt and upper retaining strap ››› page 19.

The systems include the child restraint system mounting with an upper retaining strap (Top Tether) and lower anchoring points on the seat.

Securing child seats with the seat belt

The seat belt may be used to secure child seats with the **universal** marking (on the orange label) to the vehicle seats marked with a **u** in the table below.

Category	Front passenger[a)]	Rear seats
Group 0 Up to 10 kg	u	u
Category 0+ Up to 13 kg	u	u
Group 1 9 to 18 kg	u	u

»

Category	Front passenger[a)]	Rear seats
Group 2 15 to 25 kg	u	u
Group 3 22 to 36 kg	u	u

[a)] Compliance with current national legislation and the manufacturer's instructions is required when using or installing child seats.

Securing the child seat using the seat belt

- Please read and observe the child seat manufacturer's handling instructions.
- Move the front passenger seat, or the rear seat bench back as far as possible and, in the case of an adjustable backrest, set it in the upright position ››› page 49.
- Positioning the child seat on the seat according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- Fasten the seat belt or pass it around the child seat structure in the manner described in the manufacturer's instructions.
- Make sure the seat belt is not twisted.
- Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and push it down until it is securely locked with an audible click.
- Ensure that the upper belt web lies tightly on the child seat.
- Pull the belt (it must be no longer possible to pull the lower belt webbing out).

Removing the child seat

The seat belt must not be unfastened until the vehicle has come to a standstill.

- Press the red button on the buckle. The latch plate is released from the buckle.
- Guide the belt back by hand so that it rolls up easily and the trim will not be damaged.
- Remove the child seat from the vehicle.

››› ⚠ in Safety instructions on page 67

Fixing the child seat with the ISOFIX system

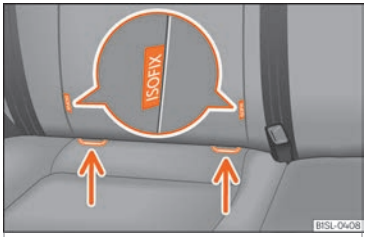


Fig. 27 On the seat of the vehicle: identification variants of the anchor points for the child seats

Both outermost rear seats have **two** retainers named lower anchor points.

Summary chart for assembly with the ISOFIX system

The following table shows the assembly possibilities for ISOFIX or i-Size child seats on the ISOFIX anchorage points of the different vehicle seats.

Age group	Class according to size[a)]	Front passenger seat	Rear seats
Group 0: up to 10 kg	E	X	IL-SU
Group 0+: up to 13 kg	E	X	IL-SU
	D	X	
	C	X	
Group 1: 9 to 18 kg	D	X	IL-SU IUF
	C	X	
	B	X	
	B1	X	
	A	X	
Group 2: 15 to 25 kg	–	X	IL-SU
Group 3: 22 to 36 kg	–	X	IL-SU

Age group	Class according to size[a)]	Front passenger seat	Rear seats
i-Size child restraint system	–	X	X

X: seat not suitable for an ISOFIX or i-Size child seat of this group.
IL-SU: seat suitable for an ISOFIX child seat with semi-universal certification. Take into account the list of vehicles of the manufacturer of the child seat.
IUF: seat suitable for an ISOFIX child seat with universal certification.

[a)] The indication of class according to size corresponds to the authorised bodyweight for the child seat. In child seats with universal or semi-universal approval, the class according to size is indicated on the ECE approval label. The indication of class according to size is stated on the corresponding child seat.

Child seats with rigid mounting

For the installation of a child seat with rigid mounting auxiliary introduction elements can be used. These elements facilitate fitting and protect the upholstery. They form part of the supply volume of the child seat or can be acquired at a SEAT dealership. If necessary, these elements are inserted in both anchor points of the vehicle ››› ⓘ in Safety instructions on page 67.

- Observe the manufacturer's instructions when installing and removing the child seat ››› ⚠ in Safety instructions on page 67.
- Press the child seat onto the retaining rings ››› Fig. 27 in the direction of the arrow. The child seat must be safely engaged and click audibly into place.
- Pull on both sides of the child seat to ensure that it is secure.

Child seat with adjustable retaining straps

- Observe the manufacturer's instructions when installing and removing the child seat ››› ⚠ in Safety instructions on page 67.
- Place the child seat on the seat cushion and attach the retaining strap hooks to the retaining rings ››› Fig. 27.
- Tighten the straps evenly using the corresponding adjustment device. The child seat must sit flush against the vehicle seat.
- Pull on both sides of the child seat to ensure that it is secure.

››› ⚠ in Safety instructions on page 67

Securing a child seat with the Top Tether retaining strap

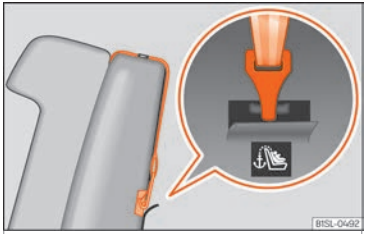


Fig. 28 Example of an upper retaining strap connected.

- Observe the manufacturer's instructions when installing and removing the child seat ››› ⚠ in Safety instructions on page 67.
- Unlock the seat backrest and fold it gently forward ››› page 14.
- Remove the head restraints situated behind the child seat and store them safely in the vehicle ››› 📖 page 49.
- Guide the upper retaining strap from of the child seat back to the luggage compartment, feeding it through the seat backrest and the rear shelf.
- Fold back the seat backrest and push it firmly into the lock.
- Secure the child seat to the lower anchor points ››› page 20

»

- Hook the upper retaining strap in the luggage compartment, to the corresponding retaining ring ››› Fig. 28.
- Tighten the strap so that the top of the child seat rests on the seat backrest.

››› ⚠ in Safety instructions on page 67

Starting the vehicle

Ignition lock

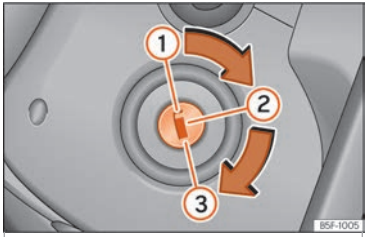


Fig. 29 Ignition key positions.

Turn on the ignition: place the key in the ignition and start the engine.

Locking and unlocking the steering wheel

- Lock the steering wheel: remove the key from the ignition and turn the wheel until it locks. In vehicles with automatic transmission, in order to remove the key, move the gear shift to the **N** position. If necessary, press the gear shift blocking key and release it.
- Unlock the steering wheel: put the key into the ignition and turn it at the same time as the steering wheel in the direction indicated by the arrow. If it is not possible to turn the steering wheel, it may be because it is locked.

Turning on/switching off the ignition, glow plugs reheating

- Turn on the ignition: turn the key to the ② position.
- Turn off the ignition: turn the key to the ① position.

Starting the engine

- Manual transmission: press the clutch pedal all the way down and move the gearbox lever into neutral.
- Automatic transmission: press the brake pedal and move the selector lever to **N**.
- Turn the key to the ③ position. The key automatically returns to the ② position. Do not press the accelerator.

Start-Stop system*

When you stop and release the clutch pedal, the Start-Stop system* turns off the engine. The ignition remains switched on.

››› ⚠ in Switching on the ignition and starting the engine on page 149

››› page 149

Lights and visibility

Light switch

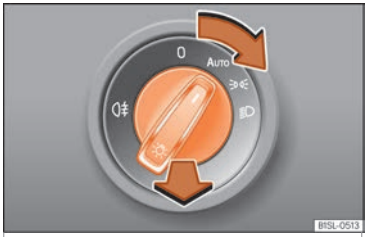


Fig. 30 Instrument console: light panel.

Turn the switch to the required position ››› Fig. 30.

Symbol	Ignition switched off	Ignition is switched on
0	Fog lights, dipped beam and side lights off.	Light off or daytime driving light on.

Symbol	Ignition switched off	Ignition is switched on
AUTO	The "Coming home" and "Leaving home" guide lights may be switched on.	Automatic control of dipped beam and daytime running light.
	Side light on.	
	Dipped beam headlight off	Dipped beam switched on.

Rear fog light: move the switch completely from positions **AUTO**, or .

Turn on fog lights: push the switch or turn it to the **0** position.

››› ⚠ in Switching lights on and off on page 104

››› page 103

Turn signal and main beam lever

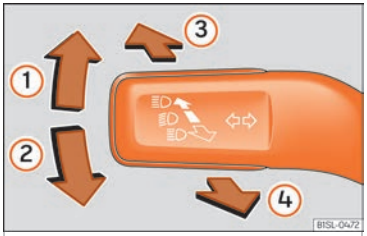


Fig. 31 Turn signal and main beam lever in their initial position

More the lever to the required position:

1. Right turn light: right-hand parking light (ignition switched off).
2. Left turn light: left-hand parking light (ignition switched off).
3. Main beam on: control lamp lit up on the instrument panel.
4. Light flash: on with the lever pushed. Control lamp lit up.

Lever all the way down to switch it off.

››› ⚠ in Turn signal and main beam lever on page 105

››› page 105

Hazard warning lights

Fig. 32 Dashboard: switch for hazard warning lights.

Switched on, for example:

- When approaching a traffic jam
- In an emergency
- The vehicle has broken down
- When towing or being towed

››› ⚠ in Hazard warning lights on page 106

››› page 106

Interior lights

Position:	Function
0	Switching off the reading light.
	Switching on the reading light.
	Switches door contact control on (central position). The reading light comes on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked, a door is opened or the key is removed from the ignition. The light goes off a few seconds after all the doors are closed, the vehicle is locked or the ignition is switched on.

Note

The reading lights go out when the vehicle is locked, or a few minutes after the key is removed from the ignition. This prevents the vehicle's battery from discharging.

Windscreen wipers and window wiper blade

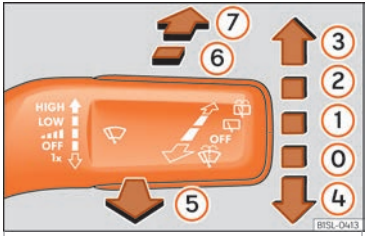


Fig. 33 Operating the windscreen wiper and rear wiper.

More the lever to the required position:		
0	OFF	Windscreen wipers off.
1		Windscreen interval wipe.
2	LOW	Slow wipe.
3	HIGH	Continuous wipe.
4	1x	Brief wipe - short wipe. Hold the lever down for more time to increase the wipe frequency.
5		Automatic wipe for cleaning windscreens with the lever up.
6		Interval wipe for rear window. The wiper will wipe the window approximately every six seconds.
7		Automatic wipe for cleaning rear windows with the lever pressed.

››› page 108

SOS ››› page 46

SEAT information system

Introduction

With the ignition switched on it is possible to access different messages via the display on the instrument panel display.

The number of messages displayed on the instrument panel display will vary according to the vehicle electronics and equipment.

A specialised workshop will be able to programme or modify additional functions, according to the vehicle equipment. SEAT recommends taking your car in for technical service.

WARNING

Any distraction may lead to an accident, with the risk of injury.

- **Do not consult the messages on the instrument panel screen when driving.**

Management of indications on the display

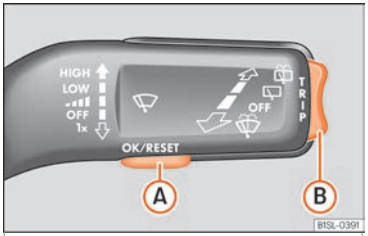


Fig. 34 Windscreen wipers lever: control buttons.

Calling up options

- Switch the ignition on.
- If a message or vehicle symbol is displayed, press OK/RESET (››› **Fig. 34** Ⓐ).
- Press the top or bottom part of the rocker switch ››› **Fig. 34** Ⓑ until the desired option appears.

Multifunction display (MFI)

The multifunction display (MFD) has two automatic memories: **1 - Partial memory** and **2 - Total memory**. The selected memory will be shown in the lower right-hand corner of the display.

With the ignition switched on, and memory 1 or 2 displayed, briefly press OK to change from one memory to another.

1 Trip memory (for a single journey).	The memory stores the values for the journey and the consumption from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off again. If the journey is broken for more than 2 hours, the memory is automatically erased. If the journey is continued in less than 2 hours after the ignition is switched off, the new data is added to the data already stored in the memory.
2 Total memory (for all journeys).	The memory stores the values of any number of journeys, until it counts a total of 19 hours and 59 minutes of driving, or 1999.9 km or miles of driving, depending on the type of instrument panel fitted. On reaching either of these limits, the memory is automatically erased and starts to count from 0 again.

Possible displays

Menu	Function
Time	Current time in hours (h) and minutes (min).
Travelling time	This indicates the hours (h) and minutes (min) since the ignition was switched on.
Current fuel consumption	The current fuel consumption display operates throughout the journey, in l/100 km; with the engine running and the vehicle stopped, in l/hour.
Average fuel consumption	After turning on the ignition, average fuel consumption in litres/100 km will be displayed after travelling about 100 metres. Otherwise horizontal lines are displayed. The value shown is updated approximately every 5 seconds.
Operating range	Approximate distance in km that can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank, assuming the same style of driving is maintained. This is calculated using the current fuel consumption.
Distance covered	Distance travelled, after ignition is switched on, in km.

»

Menu	Function
Average speed	The average speed will be shown after a distance of about 100 metres has been travelled. Otherwise horizontal lines are displayed. The value shown is updated approximately every 5 seconds.
Digital display of speed	Current speed displayed digitally.
Digital coolant temperature gauge	Digital display of the current temperature of the engine liquid coolant.
Warning at --- km/h	If the stored speed is exceeded (between 30 - 250 km/h, or 18 - 155 mph), an audible warning is given together with a visual warning.

Changing between display modes

- Press the rocker switch in the windscreen wiper lever.

Storing a speed for the speed warning

- Select the display **Speed warning at --- km/h**.
- Press OK on the windscreen wiper lever to store the current speed and switch off the warning.
- In addition, set the required speed by pressing the rocker switch on the windscreen wiper lever or △ or ▽ buttons on the multifunction steering wheel for 5 seconds. Next, press OK again or wait a few seconds. The speed is stored and the warning activated.
- *To switch off*, press OK. The stored speed is deleted.

Manually erasing memory 1 or 2

- Select the memory to be erased.
- Press and hold the eject button OK for approximately 2 seconds.

Cruise control

Operating the cruise control system (CCS)*

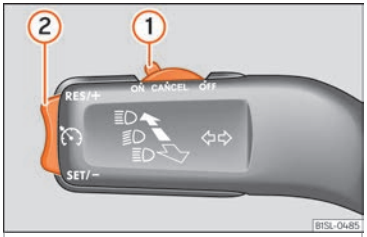


Fig. 35 Switch and controls for operating the CCS.

- Switching on the CCS: Move switch ››› Fig. 35 ① to **ON**. The system is on. If no speed has been programmed, the system will not control it.
- Activate the CCS: Press button ››› Fig. 35 ② in the **SET/–** area. The current speed is memorised and controlled.
- Temporarily switching off the CCS: Move switch ››› Fig. 35 ① to **CANCEL** or push the brake. The cruise control system is switched off temporarily.
- Reactivating the CCS: Press button ››› Fig. 35 ② in **RES/+**. The memorised speed is saved and controlled again.
- Increasing stored speed during CCS regulation: press button ② in **RES/+**. The vehicle accelerates until the new stored speed.
- Reducing stored speed during CCS regulation: press button ② in **SET/–** to lower the speed by 1 km/h (1 mph). Speed is reduced until reaching the new stored speed.
- Switching off the CCS: Move switch ››› Fig. 35 ① to **OFF**. The system is disconnected and the memorised speed is deleted.

››› ⚠ in Cruise control operation on page 172

››› page 171

Warning lamps

Control and warning lamps

The control and warning lamps are indicators of warnings, ››› ⚠, faults ››› ❗ or certain functions. Some control and warning lamps come on when the ignition is switched on, and switch off when the engine starts running, or while driving.

When certain control and warning lamps are lit, an audible warning is also heard.

(P)	Handbrake ››› page 152.
(!)	Fault in the brake system ››› page 152.
	Engine cooling fluid ››› page 198.
	Engine oil pressure ››› page 195.
	Fault in the steering system ››› page 164.
	Driver or passenger has not fastened seat belt ››› page 54.
	Fault in the generator ››› page 203; **OR** the Start-Stop system cannot start the engine ››› page 170.
	Fault in ESC or disconnection caused by the system; **OR** ESC or ASR in operation ››› page 156.
(TC)	Fault in Traction Control* or disconnection caused by the system; **OR** Traction Control* in operation ››› page 156.
(ABS)	Fault in the ABS ››› page 156.
	Rear fog light switched on ››› page 103.
	Fault in the emission control system ››› page 168.
EPC	Fault in the petrol engine management ››› page 168.
	Fuel tank almost empty ››› page 190.
CNG	Natural gas tank is almost empty ››› page 190.
	Fault in airbag system and seat belt tensioners ››› page 64.
(!)	Tyre monitor system ››› page 212.
	Turn lights or emergency lights on ››› page 103.
	Cruise control ››› page 171.
	Main beam on or flasher on ››› page 103.
	A passenger in the rear seats has fastened their seat belt ››› page 54.
	A passenger in the rear seats has not fastened their seat belt ››› page 54.
	City Safety Assist ››› page 175.
On	City Safety Assist switched on manually ››› page 175.
OFF	City Safety Assist switched off manually ››› page 175.
InSP	Service interval display ››› page 90.
(A)	Start-Stop system activated ››› page 170.
	Start-Stop system unavailable ››› page 170.

⚠ WARNING

If the warning lamps are ignored, the vehicle may stall in traffic, or may cause accidents and severe injuries.

- **Never ignore the warning lamps.**
- **Stop the vehicle safely as soon as possible.**
- **Park the vehicle away from traffic and ensure that there are no highly flammable materials under the vehicle that could come into contact with the exhaust system (e.g. dry grass, fuel).**
- **A faulty vehicle represents a risk of accident for the driver and for other road users. If necessary, switch on the hazard warning lamps and put out the warning triangle to advise other drivers.**
- **Before opening the bonnet, switch off the engine and allow it to cool.**

»

- **In any vehicle, the engine compartment is a hazardous area and could cause severe injuries** ›› page 193.

CAUTION

Failure to heed the warning lamps when they appear may result in faults in the vehicle.

Gearbox lever

Manual gearbox

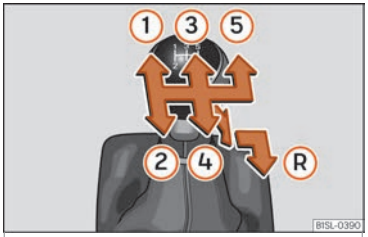


Fig. 36 Gear shift pattern of a 5-speed manual gearbox

The position of each of the gears is shown on the gear stick ›› **Fig. 36**.

- Keep the clutch pedal pushed all the way down.
- Move the gearbox lever to the required position ›› ⚠ **in Manual gear change on page 159**.
- Release the clutch pedal to engage clutch.

Selecting reverse gear

- Engage reverse gear only when the vehicle is stopped.
- Keep the clutch pedal pushed all the way down ›› ⚠ **in Manual gear change on page 159**.
- Place the gearbox lever into neutral and push the lever downwards.
- Slide the gearbox lever to the right, and then backward as shown on the lever.
- Release the clutch pedal to engage clutch.

›› ⚠ **in Manual gear change on page 159**

›› **page 159**

Automatic gearbox

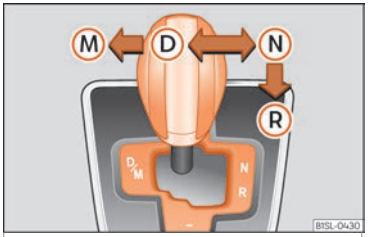


Fig. 37 Automatic gearbox diagram of gears

R Reverse gear

N Neutral (idling)

D Drive (forward)

M Tiptronic mode: pull the lever forwards (+) to go up a gear or backwards (–) to go down a gear.

›› ⚠ **in Automatic gear change on page 160**

›› **page 160**

Air conditioning

How does the Climatronic* work?

Fig. 38 In the centre console, top section: Climatronic control panel.

Switching off	Switch the system off by pressing several times on the lower button ❀ ››› Fig. 38
A/C	**Cooling mode** The **A/C** button switches cooling mode on and off.
AUTO	**Automatic mode** The **AUTO** button switches the automatic mode on and off. The automatic mode maintains temperature constant in the vehicle's interior. Temperature and the amount and distribution of air are controlled automatically. Modifying ventilation automatically switches off the automatic mode.
Temperature	Press buttons (1) and (2) ››› Fig. 38 to adjust the temperature. The adjusted temperature is displayed on the screen.
❀	**Fan** The ❀ ››› Fig. 38 buttons are used to adjust fan speed.
Air distribution	: The air is distributed towards the upper part of the body through the dash panel air vents. : Air distribution to footwells : Air distribution to the windscreen

»

MAX	**Removing ice from the windscreen** The MAX ››› Fig. 38 button is used to remove ice from the windscreen as quickly as possible and to demist it (defrost/demist function). When the temperature is above +3°C (+38°F), the air is dehumidified and fan speed increases.
	Air recirculation The ››› Fig. 38 button switches that air recirculation on and off ››› page 129.
	Heated rear window The button, located in the upper part of the centre console, switches the heated rear window on and off when the engine is running. The heated rear window switches off automatically after 10 minutes at most.

››› ⚠ in Introduction on page 129

››› page 129

How does the manual air conditioning and the heating and fresh air system work?

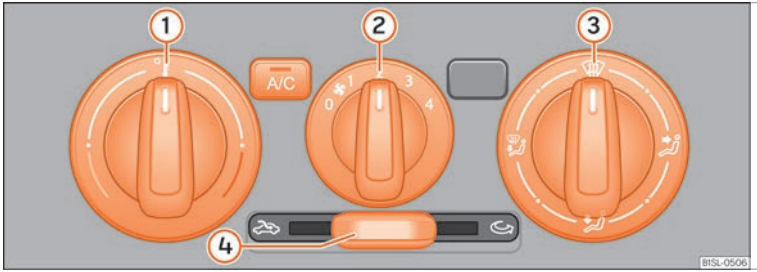


Fig. 39 Centre console, top section: controls for the manual air conditioning and the heating and fresh air system.

Switching off	It is switched off by turning the central control ② to the 0 ››› Fig. 39 position.

A/C	**Cooling mode**[a)] The **A/C** button switches cooling mode on and off.
Temperature	The left rotary adjuster (1) ››› Fig. 39 is used to adjust the temperature.
	Fan The central rotary adjuster (2) ››› Fig. 39 is used to adjust fan speed.
Air distribution	The right rotary adjuster (3) ››› Fig. 39 is used to adjust air distribution. : The air is distributed towards the upper part of the body through the dash panel air vents. : Air distribution to footwells. : Air distribution towards the windscreen and the footwell. : **Removing ice from the windscreen**. Ice is removed from the windscreen as fast as possible and the windscreen is demisted (defrost function).
	Air recirculation The slider (4) ››› Fig. 39 is used to switch air recirculation on and off ››› page 129.
	Heated rear window The button, located in the upper part of the centre console, switches the heated rear window on and off when the engine is running. The heated rear window switches off automatically after 10 minutes at most.

[a)] Valid for vehicles with manual air conditioning.

››› ⚠ in Introduction on page 129

››› page 129

Fluid level control

Filling the fuel tank

Fuel tank capacity	
Petrol engines	Around 35.0 l of which approx. 4.0 l are reserve.
Natural gas engine	Natural gas: approx. 11.0 kg; of which max. 1.5 kg are reserve Petrol: approx. 10.0 l; of which approx. 5.0 l are reserve

Windscreen washer tank capacity
The washer bottle capacity is approximately 3 litres.

Fuel

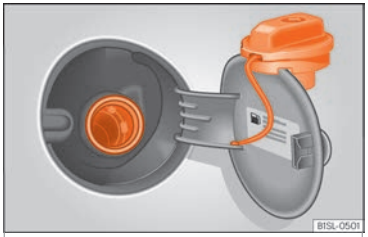


Fig. 40 Open fuel tank flap with tank cap in the holder

Opening the fuel tank cap

The tank flap is at the rear of the vehicle on the right.

- Pull the rear zone of the fuel tank flap to open.
- Unfold the key shaft if necessary ››› page 92.
- Insert the vehicle key into the lock cylinder of the fuel tank plug and turn the key in an anticlockwise direction.
- Take out the fuel tank plug by turning it in an anticlockwise direction and rest it on the upper part of the fuel tank flap ››› Fig. 40.

Closing the fuel tank cap

- Screw on the fuel tank filler plug in a clockwise direction until it is fully inserted with a click.
- Insert the vehicle key into the lock cylinder of the fuel tank plug, turn the key in a clockwise direction and remove the key.
- Press the tank flap until you hear it click into place. The tank flap must be flush with the body contour.

››› ⚠ in Introduction on page 189

››› page 191

Oil

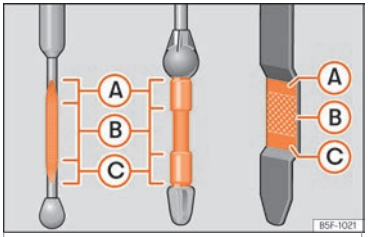


Fig. 41 Engine oil dipstick.

Fig. 42 In the engine compartment: Engine oil filler cap.

The level is measured using the dipstick located in the engine compartment.

The oil indicator must be between zones (A) and (C). It can never go above zone (A).

- Zone (A): do not add oil.

- Zone (B): you can add oil but keep the level in that zone.
- Zone (C): add oil until zone (B).

Topping up engine oil

- Unscrew cap from oil filler opening.
- Add oil slowly.
- At the same time, check the level to ensure you do not add too much.
- When the oil level reaches at least zone (B), unscrew the engine oil filler cap carefully.

If the engine oil level is too low

You can get information about the correct engine oil for your vehicle in your specialised shop. If you have to change your engine oil, use this oil.

If the recommended engine oil is not available, in the event of an **emergency** you can change the oil **once** with a maximum of 0.5 L of the next oil until the next oil change:

– *Petrol engines:* standard VW 504 00, VW 502 00, VW 508 00, ACEA C3 or API SN.

Have the oil changed by a specialised workshop.

Using engine oil that is compliant with the VW 504 00 standard instead of VW 508 00 could increase consumption and the vehicle's CO_2 emissions.

Castrol EDGE Professional

Recommended by SEAT

SEAT recommends using original SEAT oil to guarantee high SEAT engine performance.

››› ⚠ in Topping up engine oil on page 197

››› page 195

Coolant

Fig. 43 Engine compartment: coolant expansion tank cap.

The coolant tank is located in the engine compartment.

When the engine is cold, replace the coolant when the level is below **MIN**.

Coolant specifications

The engine cooling system is supplied from the factory with a specially treated mixture of water and at least 40 % of the additive **G13** (TL-VW 774 J), purple. This mixture gives the necessary frost protection down to -25°C (-13°F) and protects the light alloy parts of the engine cooling system against corrosion. It also prevents scaling and considerably raises the boiling point of the coolant.

To protect the cooling system, the percentage of additive must always be at least 40 %, even in warm climates where anti-freeze protection is not required.

If for weather reasons further protection is necessary, the proportion of additive may be increased, but only up to 60 %; otherwise antifreeze protection will diminish and this will worsen cooling.

When the coolant is topped up, use a mixture of **distilled water** and at least 40 % of the G13 or G12 plus-plus (TL-VW 774 G) additive (both are purple) to obtain an optimum anti-corrosion protection ››› ❗ in Checking the coolant level and topping up on page 200. The mixture of G13 with G12 plus (TL-VW 774 F), G12 (red) or G11 (green-blue) engine coolants will significantly reduce anti-corrosion protection and should therefore be avoided ››› ❗ in Checking the coolant level and topping up on page 200. »

››› ⚠ in Checking the coolant level and topping up on page 199

››› page 198

Brake fluid

Fig. 44 Engine compartment: brake fluid reservoir cap.

The brake fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

The level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks. If it is below **MIN**, please visit a Technical Service.

››› ⚠ in Checking the brake fluid level on page 201

››› page 200

Windscreen washer

Fig. 45 In the engine compartment: cap of the windscreen washer tank.

The windscreen washer reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

To top up, mix water with a product recommended by SEAT.

In cold temperatures, add anti-freeze for the windshield cleaner.

››› ⚠ in Checking and topping up the windscreen washer reservoir with water on page 202

››› page 201

Battery

The battery is located in the engine compartment. It does not require maintenance. It is checked as part of the Inspection Service.

››› ⚠ in Introduction on page 203

››› page 202

Emergencies

Fuses

Fuse location

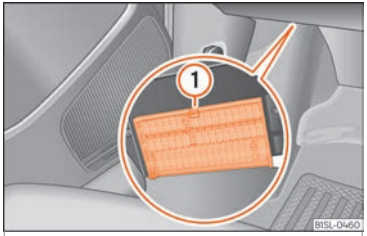


Fig. 46 On the dashboard on the driver side: lid of the fuse box.

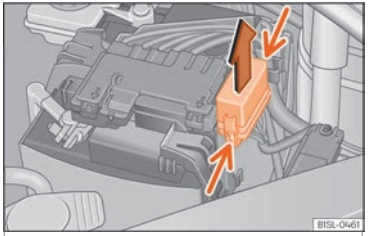


Fig. 47 In the engine compartment: lid of the fuse box.

Underneath the instrument panel

The fuse box is located underneath the dash panel on the driver side ››› Fig. 46.

In the engine compartment

Press the locking tabs to release the fuse box cover ››› Fig. 47.

Identifying fuses situated below the dash panel by colours

Colour	Amp rating
Purple	3
Light brown	5
Brown	7.5
Red	10
Blue	15
Yellow	20
White or transparent	25
Green	30
Orange	40

››› ⚠ in Introduction on page 78

››› page 78

Replacing a blown fuse

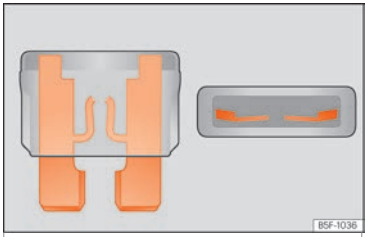


Fig. 48 Image of a blown fuse.

Preparation

- Switch off the ignition, lights and all electrical equipment.
- Open the corresponding fuse box ››› page 79.

Identifying a blown fuse

A fuse is blown if its metal strip is ruptured ››› Fig. 48.

Point a lamp at the fuse to see if the fuse has blown.

To replace a fuse

- Remove the fuse.
- Replace the blown fuse by one with an *identical* amperage rating (same colour and markings) and *identical* size.

»

• Replace the cover again or close the fuse box lid.

Bulbs

Bulbs (12 V)

Light source used for each function

Halogen headlights.	Type
Daytime running light/side light	W21/5W
Dipped beam headlights	H4 LL
Main beam headlights	H4 LL
Turn signal	PY21W NA

Rear bulb light	Type
Brake/side lights	P21/5W LL
Side lights	P21/5W LL
Turn signal	PY21W NA LL
Retro fog light	P21W
Reverse lights	R10W

Action in the event of a puncture

What to do first

• Park the vehicle on a horizontal surface and in a safe place as far away from traffic as possible.

• Apply the handbrake.

• Switch on the hazard warning lights.

• *Manual transmission:* select the 1st gear.

• *Automatic transmission:* Move the selector lever to position **D** or **R**.

• If you are towing a trailer, unhitch it from your vehicle.

• Have the vehicle tool kit ››› page 71 and the spare wheel* ready ››› page 213.

• Observe the applicable legislation for each country (reflective vest, warning triangles, etc.).

• All occupants should leave the vehicle and wait in a safe place (for instance behind the roadside crash barrier).

⚠ WARNING

• Always observe the above steps and protect yourself and other road users.

• If you change the wheel on a slope, block the wheel on the opposite side of the car with a stone or similar to prevent the vehicle from moving.

Repairing a tyre with the anti-puncture kit

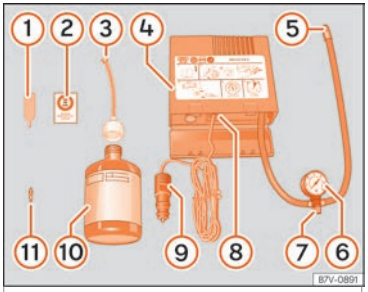


Fig. 49 Standard display: contents of the anti-puncture kit.

The anti-puncture kit is located under the floor panel in the luggage compartment.

Sealing the tyre

• Unscrew the tyre valve cap and insert. Use the ››› Fig. 49 ① tool to remove the insert. Place it on a clean surface.

• Shake the tyre sealant bottle vigorously ››› Fig. 49 ⑩.

- Screw the inflator tube ››› Fig. 49 ③ into the sealant bottle. The bottle's seal will break automatically.
- Remove the lid from the filling tube ››› Fig. 49 ③ and screw the open end of the tube into the tyre valve.
- With the tyre sealant bottle upside down, fill the tyre with the contents of the sealant bottle.
- Remove the bottle from the valve.
- Place the insert back into the tyre valve using the tool ››› Fig. 49 ①.

Inflating the tyre

- Screw the compressor tyre inflator tube ››› Fig. 49 ⑤ into the tyre valve.
- Check that the air bleed screw is closed ››› Fig. 49 ⑦.
- Start the engine and leave it running.
- Insert the connector ››› Fig. 49 ⑨ into the vehicle's 12-volt socket ››› page 120.
- Turn the air compressor on with the ON/OFF switch ››› Fig. 49 ⑧.
- Keep the air compressor running until it reaches 2.0 to 2.5 bar (29-36 psi/200-250 kPa). **A maximum of 8 minutes**.
- Disconnect the air compressor.
- If it does not reach the pressure indicated, unscrew the tyre inflator tube from the valve.
- Move the vehicle 10m so that the sealant is distributed throughout the tyre.
- Screw the compressor tyre inflator into the valve.
- Repeat the inflation process.
- If the indicated pressure still cannot be reached, the tyre is too badly damaged. Stop and request assistance from an authorised technician.
- Disconnect the air compressor. Unscrew the tyre inflator tube from the tyre valve.
- When the tyre pressure is between 2.5 and 2.0 bars, continue driving without exceeding 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Attach the sticker ››› Fig. 49 ② to the instrument cluster, within the driver's visual field.
- Check the pressure again after 10 minutes ››› page 74.

››› ⚠ in TMS (Tyre Mobility System)* on page 73

››› page 73

Changing a wheel

Vehicle tool kit

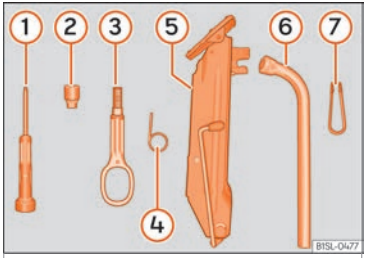


Fig. 50 Components of the vehicle tool kit

① Screwdriver with hexagon socket in the handle
② Adapter for anti-theft bolt.
③ Towline anchorage, removable.
④ Wire hook for removing the hub caps.
⑤ Jack.
⑥ Wheel spanner.
⑦ Wheel bolt cap clips.

››› ⚠ in What to do first on page 36

››› page 70

Hubcaps

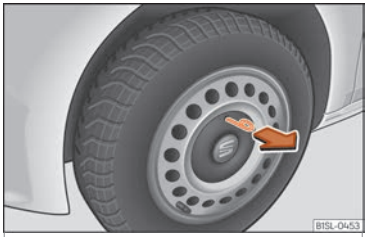


Fig. 51 Remove the hubcap of the steel wheel trim

In order to access the wheel bolts, first remove the hubcap.

Removing and fitting the hubcap

- To remove, take the vehicle tool kit wire hook and attach it to the edge of the wheel trim ››› Fig. 51.
- Remove the trim by pulling it in the direction of the arrow.
- To replace the hubcap, press the hubcap against the trim until it clicks into place.

The caps protect the wheel bolts and should be remounted after changing the tyre.

Full hubcaps

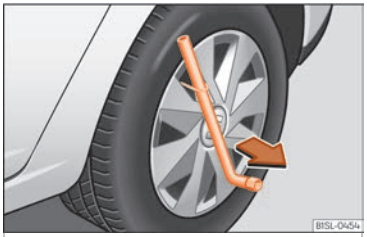


Fig. 52 Removing the full hubcap

Removing the full hubcap

- Take the wheel brace and the wire hook from the vehicle tool kit ››› page 70.
- Hook the wire through one of the grooves on the hubcap.
- Insert the wheel brace onto the wire hook ››› Fig. 52 and pull the hub cap in the direction shown by the arrow.

Fitting hubcaps

- It is necessary to press the hubcap against the wheel so that the space for the valve fits over the tyre valve.
- Make sure that the hubcap is correctly fitted all the way around the wheel. If you are using an anti-theft wheel lock, screw it in the opposite position to the valve.

Wheel bolt caps

Fig. 53 Removing the wheel bolt caps

Removal

- Fit the plastic clip (vehicle tools ››› page 70) over the cap until it clicks into place ››› Fig. 53.
- Remove the cap with the plastic clip.

The caps protect the wheel bolts and should be remounted after changing the tyre.

The **anti-theft wheel bolt** has a special cap which is only compatible with anti-theft bolts and cannot be used for conventional bolts.

Loosening the wheel bolts

Fig. 54 Tyre change: slacken the wheel bolts.

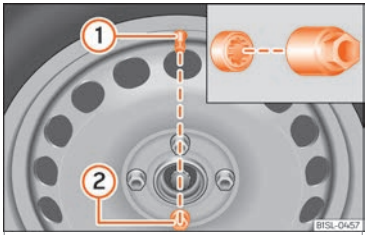


Fig. 55 Tyre change: tyre valve (1) and position of anti-theft wheel locking bolt (2).

- Only use the tool supplied with the vehicle to loosen the wheel bolts.
- Loosen the wheel bolts only about one turn before raising the vehicle with the jack.
- If the wheel bolt is very tight, you may be able to loosen it by pushing down on the end of the wheel brace carefully with your foot. Hold on to the vehicle for support and take care not to slip.

Loosening wheel bolts

- Fit the wheel brace as far as it will go over the wheel bolt ››› Fig. 54.
- Hold the wheel brace at the end and rotate the bolt approximately *one* turn anticlockwise ››› ⚠.

Loosening anti-theft wheel bolts

For wheels with full hubcap, the anti-theft wheel lock must be threaded into position ››› Fig. 55 (2) before mounting the hubcap. Otherwise it will not be possible to mount the entire hubcap.

- Take the adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts out of the vehicle tool kit.
- Insert the adapter onto the wheel bolt ››› Fig. 55. Push it on as far as it will go.
- Fit the wheel brace onto the adapter as far as possible.
- Hold the wheel brace at the end and rotate the bolt approximately *one* turn anticlockwise ››› ⚠.

Important information about wheel bolts

The wheel rims and bolts have been designed to be fitted to factory options. If different rims are fitted, the correct wheel bolts with the right length and correctly shaped bolt heads must be used. This ensures that wheels are fitted securely and that the brake system functions correctly.

In some circumstances, wheel bolts from the same model vehicle should not be used.

Wheel bolt tightening torque

The prescribed tightening torque for wheel bolts for steel and alloy wheels is **110 Nm**. Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts checked as soon as possible with a reliable torque wrench.

If wheel bolts are rusty and it is difficult to tighten them, the threads should be replaced and cleaned **before checking the tightening torque**.

Never grease or lubricate wheel bolts or the wheel hub threads. Although they have been tightened to the prescribed torque, they could come loose while driving.

⚠ WARNING

If the wheel bolts are not fitted correctly they could be released while driving leading to loss of vehicle control and serious damage.

- **Only use wheel bolts which correspond to the wheel rims in question.**
- **Never use different wheel bolts.** »

- The bolts and threads should be clean, free of oil and grease and easy to thread.
- To loosen and tighten the wheel bolts, always use the wheel brace supplied with the vehicle.
- Loosen the wheel bolts only about one turn before raising the vehicle with the jack.
- Never grease or lubricate wheel bolts or the wheel hub threads. Although they have been tightened to the prescribed torque, they could come loose while driving.
- Never loosen the bolted joints of wheel rims with bolted ring trims.
- If the wheel bolts are not tightened to the correct torque, they may come loose while driving, and the bolts and rims may come out. If the tightening torque is too high, the wheel bolts and threads can be damaged.

Raising the vehicle with the jack

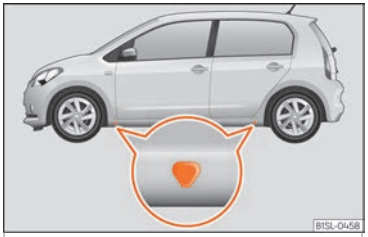


Fig. 56 Jack position points.

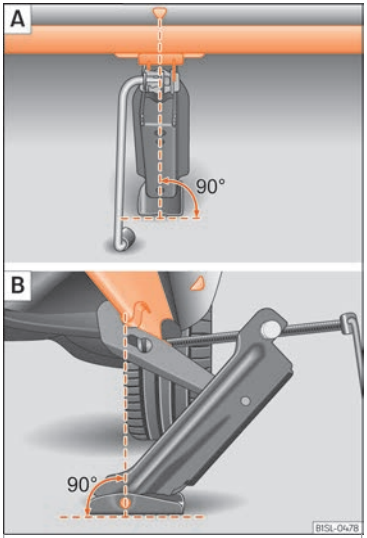


Fig. 57 Jack mounted on the left rear part of the vehicle

The jack may be applied only at the jacking points shown (marks on chassis) ››› Fig. 56. Always the relevant jacking point for the wheel to be changed ››› ⚠.

Raise the vehicle using only the designated jacking points.

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle is not correctly raised, it could fall off the jack causing serious injury. Please observe the following rules to minimise the risk of injury:

- **You should only use a jack approved by SEAT for your vehicle. Other jacks, even those approved for other SEAT models, might slip out of place.**
- **The ground should be firm and flat. If the ground is sloped or soft then the vehicle could slip and fall off the jack. If necessary, support the jack on a wide solid base.**
- **If the ground is slippery, such as tiles, place a non-slip surface (a floor mat, for instance) beneath the jack to avoid slipping.**
- **Only fit the jack at the prescribed jacking points. The claw of the jack should grip the reinforcement nerve on the underbody** **››› Fig. 57**.
- **You should never place a body limb such as an arm or leg under a raised vehicle that is solely supported by the jack.**
- **If you have to work underneath the vehicle, you must use suitable stands additionally to support the vehicle, there is a risk of accident!.**
- **Never raise the vehicle if it is tilting to one side or the engine is running.**
- **Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised. The vehicle may come loose from the jack due to the engine vibrations.**

Removing and fitting a wheel

Fig. 58 Changing the tyre: loosen wheel bolts with the socket at the end of the wheel brace

Change the wheel after loosening the wheel bolts and raising the vehicle with the jack.

Removing the wheel

- Slacken the wheel bolts **››› page 39**.
- Raise the vehicle **››› page 40**.
- Using the hexagonal socket in the wheel brace **››› Fig. 58**, unscrew the slackened wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface.
- Take off the wheel.

How to use the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel

Check the direction of rotation of the tyre **››› page 214, Tyre code**.

- Place the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel into position.
- Replace the wheel bolts and tighten *slightly* using the hexagonal socket on the end of the wheel brace.
- To tighten the anti-theft locking wheel bolts use the corresponding adaptor.
- Lower the car with the jack.
- Tighten all of the wheel bolts clockwise ››› ⚠. Tighten the bolts in diagonal pairs (not in a circle).
- Put the caps, trim or full hubcap back on **››› page 38**.

⚠ WARNING

If the wheel bolts are not treated suitably or not tightened to the correct torque then this could lead to loss of vehicle control and to a serious accident.

- **All the wheel bolts and hub threads should be clean and free of oil and grease. The wheel bolts should be easily tightened to the correct torque.**
- **The hexagonal socket in the wheel brace should be used for turning wheel bolts only. Do not use it to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.**

Tyres with compulsory direction of rotation

A directional tread pattern can be identified by the arrows on the sidewall that point in the direction of rotation. Always observe the direction of rotation indicated when fitting the wheel to guarantee optimum properties of this type of tyres with regard to grip, noises, wear and aquaplaning.

If it is absolutely necessary to fit the spare tyre* against the direction of rotation, drive with care as this means the tyre does not offer optimum driving properties. This is of particular importance when the road surface is wet.

To return to directional tread tires, replace the punctured tyre as soon as possible and restore the obligatory direction of rotation of all tyres.

After the wheel change

- Clean the vehicle tools, if necessary and put them away in the luggage compartment foam holder ››› page 70.
- Store the spare wheel, the temporary spare wheel or the changed wheel securely in the luggage compartment.
- Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench ››› page 39.
- Have the flat tyre replaced as quickly as possible.

Snow chains

Use

When using snow chains, applicable local legislation and maximum permitted speed limits must be observed.

In winter weather, snow chains not only help to improve grip but also improve the braking capacity.

The fitting of chains is permitted **only on front wheels** and **with the following combinations of wheel trims and tyres**:

Tyre size	Wheel rim
165/70 R14	5 J x 14 offset of 35
175/65 R14	

SEAT recommends you ask a technical service for further information on wheel, tyre and chain sizes.

Wherever possible use fine-link chains measuring less than 15 mm including the lock.

Remove wheel hub covers and trim rings before fitting snow chains ››› ❗. The wheel bolts should be covered with caps for safety reasons. These are available from technical services.

Temporary spare wheel

For technical reasons, snow chains must not be used on the compact temporary spare wheel ››› page 213.

If it is necessary to fit chains with the temporary spare wheel in use, install the wheel on the rear axle in the event of a fault in a front wheel. Then, fit the rear wheel that is free, instead of the damaged front wheel. In this situation, observe the rotating direction of the wheels. SEAT recommends attaching the snow chains before fitting the wheel.

⚠ WARNING

The use of unsuitable or incorrectly fitted chains could lead to serious accidents and damage.

- **Always the appropriate snow chains.**
- **Observe the fitting instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer.**
- **Never exceed the maximum permitted speeds when driving with snow chains.**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **Remove the snow chains to drive on roads without snow. Otherwise they will**

impair vehicle handling, damage the tyres and wear out very quickly.

- **Wheel rims may be damaged or scratched if the chains come into direct contact with them. SEAT recommends the use of covered snow chains.**

Note

Snow chains are available in different sizes according to the vehicle type.

Emergency towing of the vehicle

Towing

Fig. 59 Right side of the front bumper: towline anchorage screwed in.

Towline anchorages

Attach the bar or rope to the towline anchorages.

It is located with the vehicle's tools ››› page 70.

Screw the front towline anchorage into the screw connection ››› Fig. 59 and tighten it with the wheel brace.

Tow rope or tow bar

When towing, the tow bar is the safest and vehicle friendly way. You should only use a tow rope if you do not have a tow bar.

A tow rope should be slightly elastic to avoid damage to both vehicles. It is advisable to use a tow rope made of synthetic fibre or similarly elastic material.

- Only secure the tow rope or tow bar to the towline anchorage or specially designed fitting.

Notes for the driver of the towed vehicle

- Keep the ignition running to prevent the steering wheel from locking and also to allow the use of the turn signals, horn, windscreen wipers and washers.
- As the power assisted steering does not work if the engine is not running, you will need more strength to steer than normally.
- The brake must be depressed much harder as the brake servo does not operate. Avoid hitting the towing vehicle.
- Note the instructions and information contained in the Instruction Manual for the vehicle to be towed.

Notes for the driver of the towing vehicle

- Accelerate gently and carefully. Avoid sudden manoeuvres.
- Brake well in advance than usual and brake gently.
- Note the instructions and information contained in the Instruction Manual for the vehicle to be towed.

Driving style

Towing requires some experience, especially when using a tow rope. Both drivers should realise how difficult it is to tow a vehicle. Inexperienced drivers should not attempt to tow.

Do not pull too hard with the towing vehicle and take care to avoid jerking the tow rope. When towing on an unpaved road, there is always a risk of overloading and damaging the anchorage points.

Switch on the ignition so that the turn signals, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer can work. Ensure that the steering wheel is unlocked and moves freely.

»

Place the gear lever in neutral on vehicles with a manual gearbox. With an automatic gearbox, place the lever in **N**.

To brake, press the brake pedal firmly. The brake servo does not work when the engine is switched off.

The power steering only works when the ignition is switched on, provided that the battery is sufficiently charged. Otherwise, it will need more force.

Ensure that the tow rope remains taut at all times.

››› ⚠ in Instructions for tow-starting on page 76

››› page 75

Tow-starting

In general, the vehicle should not be started by towing. Jump-starting is much more preferable ››› page 44.

For technical reasons, the following vehicles can **not** be tow started:

- Vehicles with an automatic gearbox.
- If the vehicle battery is flat, it is possible that the engine control unit does not operate correctly.

However, if your vehicle must absolutely be tow-started (manual gearbox):

- Put it into second or third gear.
- Keep the clutch pressed down.
- Switch on the ignition and the hazard warning lights.
- Release the clutch when both vehicles are moving.
- As soon as the engine starts, press the clutch and move the gear lever into neutral. This helps to prevent a collision with the towing vehicle.

How to jump start

Jump leads

If the engine fails to start because of a discharged battery, the battery of another vehicle can be used to start the engine. Before starting, check the magic eye on the battery ››› page 202.

For starting assistance, jump lead cables conforming to the standard DIN 72553 are required (see the cable manufacturer instructions). The cable section in vehicles with petrol engine must be at least 25 mm^2.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of jump leads and incorrectly jump starting could cause the battery to explode resulting in serious injury. Please observe the following rules to minimise the risk of a battery explosion:

- **The battery providing current must have the same voltage (12V) and approximately the same capacity (see markings on battery) as the flat battery.**
- **Never charge a frozen or recently thawed battery. A flat battery can also freeze at temperatures close to 0°C (+32°F).**
- **If a battery is frozen and/or has been frozen then it must be replaced.**
- **A highly explosive mixture of gases is released when the battery is being charged. Always keep lit cigarettes, flames, sparks and fire far from the battery. Never use a mobile telephone when connecting and removing the jump leads.**
- **Charge the battery only in well ventilated areas given that when the battery is charged by outside assistance, it creates a mix of highly explosive gases.**
- **Jump leads should never enter into contact with moving parts in the engine compartment.**
- **Never switch the positive and negative poles or connect the jump leads incorrectly.**
- **Note the instruction manual provided by the manufacturer of the jump leads.**

CAUTION

To avoid considerable damage to the vehicle electrical system, note the following carefully:

- **If the jump leads are incorrectly connected, this could result in a short circuit.**
- **The vehicles must not touch each other, otherwise electricity could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected.**

How to jump start: description

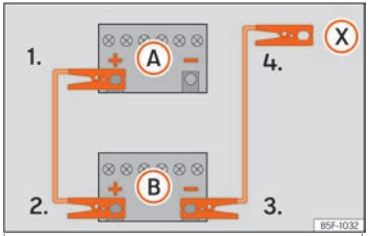


Fig. 60 Diagram of connections for vehicles without Start Stop system

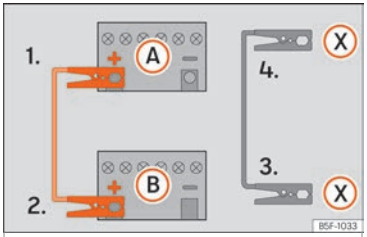


Fig. 61 Diagram of connections for vehicles with Start Stop system

Jump lead terminal connections

1. Switch off the ignition of both vehicles ››› ⚠.
2. Connect one end of the *red* jump lead to the positive (+) terminal of the vehicle with the flat battery (A) ››› **Fig. 60**.
3. Connect the other end of the *red* jump lead to the positive terminal (+) in the vehicle providing assistance (B).

4a. *In vehicles without a Start-Stop system:* connect one end of the *black* jump lead to the negative terminal (−) of the vehicle providing the current (B) ››› **Fig. 60**.

4b. *In vehicles with a Start-stop system:* connect one end of the *black* jump lead (X) to a suitable ground terminal, to a solid piece of metal in the engine block, or to the engine block itself ››› **Fig. 61**.

5. Connect the other end of the *black* jump lead (X) to a solid metal component bolted to the engine block or to the engine block itself of the vehicle with the flat battery. Do not connect it to a point near the battery (A).
6. Position the leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.

Starting

7. Start the engine of the vehicle with the boosting battery and let it run at idling speed.
8. Start the engine of the vehicle with the flat battery and wait for 2 or 3 minutes until the engine is running.

Removing the jump leads

9. Before you remove the jump leads, switch off the dipped beam headlights if they are switched on.
10. Turn on the heater blower and heated rear window in the vehicle with the flat battery. This helps minimise voltage peaks which are generated when the leads are disconnected.
11. When the engine is running, disconnect the leads in reverse order to the details given above.

»

Make sure the battery clamps have sufficient metal-to-metal contact with the battery terminals.

If the engine fails to start after about 10 seconds, switch off the starter and try again after about 1 minute.

⚠ WARNING

- **Please note the safety warnings referring to working in the engine compartment** ››› page 193.
- **The battery providing assistance must have the same voltage as the flat battery (12V) and approximately the same capacity (see imprint on battery). Failure to comply could result in an explosion.**
- **Never use jump leads when one of the batteries is frozen. Danger of explosion! Even after the battery has thawed, battery acid could leak and cause chemical burns. If a battery freezes, it should be replaced.**
- **Keep sparks, flames and lighted cigarettes away from batteries, danger of explosion. Failure to comply could result in an explosion.**
- **Observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the jump leads.**
- **Do not connect the negative cable from the other vehicle directly to the negative terminal of the flat battery. The gas emitted from the battery could be ignited by sparks. Danger of explosion.**
- **Never attach the negative cable to fuel system components or the brake lines in the other vehicle.**
- **The non-insulated parts of the battery clamps must not be allowed to touch. The jump lead attached to the positive battery terminal must not touch metal parts of the vehicle, this can cause a short circuit.**
- **Position the leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.**
- **Do not lean on the batteries. This could result in chemical burns.**

Note

The vehicles must not touch each other, otherwise electricity could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected.

Changing the wiper blades

Windscreen wipers service position

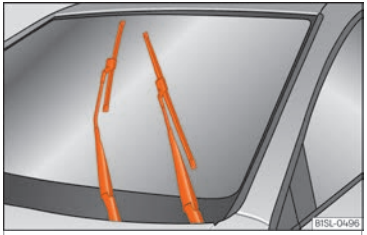


Fig. 62 Wipers in service position.

The wiper arms can be raised when the wipers are in service position ››› Fig. 62.

- Close the bonnet ››› page 193.
- Switch the ignition on and off.
- Press the windscreen wiper lever downwards briefly ››› Fig. 33 ④.

Before driving, always lower the wiper arms. When the ignition is switched on, the windscreen wiper arms return to their initial position upon activating the windscreen wiper lever.

››› page 75

Changing the front wiper blades

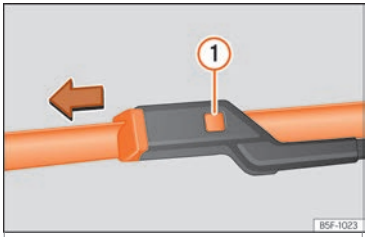


Fig. 63 Changing the front wiper blades

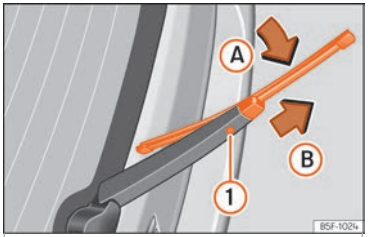


Fig. 64 Changing the rear wiper blade

Lifting and unfolding the wiper arms

The wiper arm may **only** be lifted at the point where it is fastened to the blade.

The wiper should be in service position before unfolding it ››› page 108.

Cleaning windscreen wiper blades

- Lifting and unfolding the wiper arms.
- Use a soft cloth to remove dust and dirt from the windscreen wiper blades.
- If the blades are very dirty, a sponge or damp cloth may be used ››› ! in Changing the windscreen and rear window wiper blades on page 75.

Changing the windscreen wiper blades

- Lifting and unfolding the wiper arms.
- Hold down the release button ››› Fig. 63 (1) while gently pulling the blade in the direction of the arrow.
- Fit a new wiper blade of the **same length and design** on to the wiper arm and hook it into place.
- Rest the wiper arms back onto the windscreen.

Changing the rear wiper blade

- Lift the windscreen wiper arm and fold it at an angle of approximately 60° ››› Fig. 64.
- Press and hold the release button (1).
- Fold the wiper blade towards the windscreen wiper arm ››› Fig. 64 (arrow (A)) while pulling in the direction of arrow (B). You might have to apply a lot of force.
- Insert a new blade of the **same length and type** in the windscreen wiper arm in the opposite direction to the arrow (B) and hook into place. This feature is operational when the knob is in position (arrow (A)).
- Return the windscreen wiper arm to the windscreen. Do not let it simply drop down!

››› ⚠ in Changing the windscreen and rear window wiper blades on page 75

››› page 75

Safety

Safe driving

Driving advice

Safety first!

⚠ WARNING

- **This manual contains important information about the operation of the vehicle, both for the driver and the passengers. The other sections of the on-board documentation also contain further information that you should be aware of for your own safety and for the safety of your passengers.**
- **Ensure that the on-board documentation is kept in the vehicle at all times. This is especially important when lending or selling the vehicle to another person.**

⚠ WARNING

Driving under the influence of alcohol, drugs, medication or narcotics may result in severe accidents and even loss of life.

- **Alcohol, drugs, medication and narcotics may significantly alter perception, affect reaction times and safety while driving, which could result in the loss of control of the vehicle.**

Before driving

For your own safety and the safety of your passengers, always note the following points before every trip:

– Make sure that the vehicle's lights and turn signals are working properly.

– Check tyre pressure.

– Ensure that all windows provide a clear and good view of the surroundings.

– Make sure all luggage is secured ››› page 114.

– Make sure that no objects can interfere with the pedals.

– Adjust front seat, head restraint and mirrors properly according to your size.

– Ensure that the passengers in the rear seats always have the head restraints in the in-use position ››› page 52.

– Instruct passengers to adjust the head restraints according to their height.

– Protect children with appropriate child seats and properly applied seat belts ››› page 65.

– Assume the correct sitting position. Instruct your passengers also to assume a proper sitting position ››› page 49.

– Fasten your seat belt securely. Instruct your passengers also to fasten their seat belts properly ››› page 53.

What affects driving safety?

As a driver, you are responsible for yourself and your passengers. When your concentration or driving safety is affected by any circumstance, you endanger yourself as well as others on the road ››› ⚠, for this reason:

– Always pay attention to traffic and do not get distracted by passengers or telephone calls.

– Never drive when your driving ability is impaired (e.g. by medication, alcohol, drugs).

– Observe traffic laws and speed limits.

– Always reduce your speed as appropriate for road, traffic and weather conditions.

– When travelling long distances, take breaks regularly - at least every two hours.

– If possible, avoid driving when you are tired or stressed.

⚠ WARNING

When driving safety is impaired during a trip, the risk of injury and accidents increases.

Safety equipment

Never put your safety or the safety of your passengers in danger. In the event of an accident, the safety equipment may reduce the risk of injury. The following points cover part of the safety equipment in your SEAT:

- three-point seat belts,
- belt tension limiters for the front seats,
- belt tensioners for the front seats,
- front airbags,
- side airbags in the front seat backrests,
- "ISOFIX" anchor points for child seats in the rear side seats with the "ISOFIX" system,
- rear head restraints with in-use position and non-use position,
- adjustable steering column.

The safety equipment mentioned above works together to provide you and your passengers with the best possible protection in the event of an accident. However, these safety systems can only be effective if you and your passengers are sitting in a correct position and use this equipment properly.

Safety is everyone's business!

Correct position of the vehicle occupants

Correct sitting position

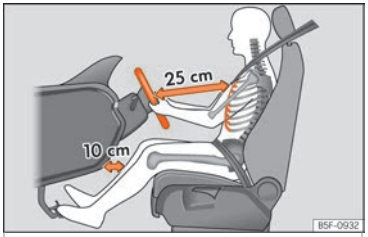


Fig. 65 The proper distance between driver and steering wheel.

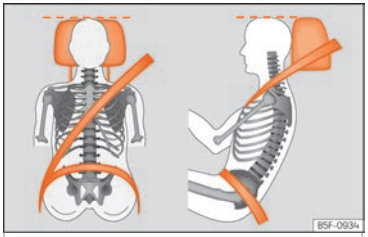


Fig. 66 Correct belt web and head restraint positions

The correct sitting positions for the driver and passengers are shown below.

If your physical constitution prevents you from maintaining the correct sitting position, contact a specialised workshop for help with any special devices. The seat belt and airbag can only provide optimum protection if a correct sitting position is adopted. SEAT recommends taking your car in for technical service.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident or sudden braking or manoeuvre, SEAT recommend the following positions:

Valid for the driver:

- Adjust the seat backrest to an upright position so that your back rests completely against it.
- Adjust the seat so that there is a distance of at least 25 cm between the steering wheel and your chest ››› Fig. 65 and so that you can hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the ring at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions with your arms slightly bent.
- The adjusted steering wheel must face your chest and not your face.
- Adjust the driver seat forwards or backwards so that you are able to press the accelerator, brake and clutch pedals to the floor with your knees slightly angled and the distance between your knees and the dash panel is at least 10 cm ››› Fig. 65.

»

- Adjust the height of the driver seat so that you can easily reach the top of the steering wheel.
- Keep both feet in the footwell so that you have the vehicle under control at all times.
- Adjust and fasten your seat belt correctly ››› page 53.

Valid for the passenger:

- Adjust the seat backrest to an upright position so that your back rests completely against it.
- Move the front passenger seat back as far as possible for optimum protection should the airbag deploy.
- Always keep your feet in the footwell while the vehicle is in motion.
- Adjust and fasten your seat belt correctly ››› page 53.

Valid for the passengers in the rear section:

- Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same level as the top of your head, or as close as possible to the same level as the top of your head and under no circumstances below eye level. Keep the back of your neck as close as possible to the head restraint ››› Fig. 65 and ››› Fig. 66.
- Short people must lower the head restraint to the first anchorage position, even if your head is below its upper edge.
- Tall people must raise the head restraint completely.
- Always keep your feet in the footwell while the vehicle is in motion.
- Adjust and fasten your seat belt correctly ››› page 53.

Adjusting the steering wheel position

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 15.

Adjust the steering wheel before your trip and only when the vehicle is stationary.

Adjust the correct distance between the driver and the steering wheel ››› Fig. 65 using the controls on the driver seat ››› page 14.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the steering wheel adjustment function and an incorrect adjustment of the steering wheel can result in severe or fatal injury.

- **After adjusting the steering column, push the lever firmly upwards to ensure the steering wheel does not accidentally change position while driving.**
- **Never adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is in motion. If you need to adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is in motion, stop safely and make the proper adjustment.**
- **The adjusted steering wheel should be facing your chest and not your face so as not to hinder the driver's front airbag protection in the event of an accident.**
- **When driving, always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the ring at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to reduce injuries when the driver's front airbag deploys.**
- **Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or in any other manner (e.g. in the centre of the steering wheel). In such cases, if the driver's airbag deploys, you may sustain injuries to your arms, hands and head.**

Danger of injuries due to an incorrect sitting position

Number of seats

The vehicle has a total of **4** seats: 2 front seats and 2 rear seats. Each seat is equipped with a seat belt.

If the seat belts are worn incorrectly or not at all, the risk of severe injuries increases. Seat belts can provide optimal protection only if the belt web is properly worn. Being seated in

an incorrect position means the seat belt cannot offer its full protection. This could result in severe and even fatal injuries. The risk of severe or fatal injuries is especially heightened when a deploying airbag strikes a vehicle occupant who has assumed an incorrect sitting position. The driver is responsible for all passengers in the vehicle, particularly children.

The following list shows just some examples of incorrect sitting positions which can be dangerous to all vehicle occupants.

When the vehicle is in motion:

- Never stand in the vehicle.
- Never stand on the seats.
- Never kneel on the seats.
- Never tilt your seat backrest too far to the rear.
- Never lean against the dash panel.
- Never lie on the rear seats.
- Never sit on the front edge of a seat.
- Never sit sideways.
- Never lean out of a window.
- Never put your feet out of a window.
- Never put your feet on the dash panel.
- Never put your feet on the surface of a seat or seat backrest.
- Never travel in a footwell.
- Never travel on a seat without wearing the seat belt.
- Never carry any person in the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

An incorrect sitting position in the vehicle can lead to severe injuries or death in the event of sudden braking or manoeuvres, collision or accidents or if the airbag deploys.

- **Before the vehicle moves, assume the proper sitting position and maintain it throughout the trip. This also includes fastening the seat belt.**
- **Never transport more people than there are seats with a seat belt available in the vehicle.**
- **Children must always be protected with an approved child restraint system suited to their height and weight** **››› page 65, ››› page 60.**
- **Always keep your feet in the footwell while the vehicle is in motion. Never, for example, put your feet on the surface of a seat or on the dash panel and never put them out of a window. Otherwise the airbag and seat belt offer insufficient protection and the risk of injury in the event of an accident is increased.**

⚠ WARNING

Before every trip, adjust the seat, the seat belt and the head restraints and instruct your passengers to fasten their seat belts properly.

- **Move the front passenger seat back as far as possible.**
- **Adjust the driver seat so that there is at least 25 cm distance between your chest and the hub of the steering wheel. Adjust the driver seat so that you are able to press the accelerator, brake and clutch pedals to the floor with your knees slightly angled and that the distance between your knees and the dash panel is at least 10 cm. If your physical constitution prevents you from meeting these requirements, contact a specialised workshop to make any modifications required.**
- **Never drive with the seat backrest tilted far back. The further the seat backrests are tilted to the rear, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the belt web or to the incorrect sitting position!**
- **Never drive with the seat backrest tilted forwards. Should a front airbag deploy, it could throw the seat backrest backwards and injure the passengers of the rear seats.**
- **Sit as far away as possible from the steering wheel and the dash panel.**
- **Keep your back straight and resting completely against the seat backrest and the front seats correctly adjusted. Never place** »

any part of your body in the area of the airbag or very close to it.

- **If passengers on the rear seats are not sitting in an upright position, the risk of severe injury due to incorrect positioning of the belt web increases.**

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect seat adjustment may lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- **Only adjust the seats when the vehicle is stationary, as the seats could move unexpectedly while the vehicle is in motion and you could lose control of the vehicle. Furthermore, an incorrect position is adopted when adjusting the seat.**
- **Only adjust the height, seat backrest and forwards or backwards position of the seat when there is nobody in the seat adjustment area.**
- **There must be no objects blocking the front seat adjustment area.**

Adjusting the rear head restraints

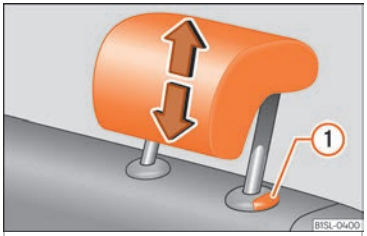


Fig. 67 Adjusting the rear head restraints

All seats are equipped with a head restraint.

The front seat head restraints are integrated in the backrests and adjusting them is not possible.

Adjusting height

- Push the head restraint up or down in the direction of the arrow with the button pressed ››› Fig. 67 (1) ››› ⚠.
- The head restraint must engage securely in position.

Correct adjustment of head restraints

Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same level as the top of your head, or as close as possible to the same level as the top of your head and under no circumstances below eye level. Keep the back of your neck as close as possible to the head restraint.

Adjusting the head restraint for short people

Set the head restraint in the first anchorage position, even if your head is below its upper edge. When the head restraint is at its lowest, it is possible that a small gap remains between it and the seat backrest.

Adjusting the head restraint for tall people

Raise the head restraint completely.

⚠ WARNING

Travelling with the head restraints removed or improperly adjusted increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries in the event of accidents and sudden braking or manoeuvres.

- **Always fit and adjust the head restraint properly whenever a person is occupying a seat.**
- **All vehicle occupants must correctly adjust the head restraint according to their height to reduce the risk of back injuries in the event of an accident. The upper edge of the head restraint must be as close as possible to the same level as the top of your head and under no circumstances below eye level. Keep the back of your neck as close as possible to the head restraint.**
- **Never adjust the head restraint while the vehicle is in motion.**

Pedal area

Pedals

Do not allow floor mats or other objects to obstruct the free passage of the pedals.

Floor mats should leave the pedal area free and unobstructed and be correctly secured in the footwell zone.

In the event of failure of a brake circuit, the brake pedal must be pressed harder than normal to brake the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Objects falling into the driver's footwell could prevent use of the pedals. This could lead the driver to lose control of the vehicle, increasing the risk of a serious accident.

- **Make sure the pedals can be used at all times, with no objects rolling underneath them.**
- **Always secure the mat in the footwell.**
- **Never place other mats or rugs on top of the original mat supplied by the factory.**
- **Ensure that no objects can fall into the driver's footwell while the vehicle is in motion.**

ⓘ CAUTION

The pedals must always have free and unobstructed passage to the floor. For example, in case of a fault in the brake circuit, the brake pedal will need to be pressed further to stop the vehicle. To press the brake pedal down further will require more force than usual.

Seat belts

Why wear a set belt

Introduction

Check the condition of all the seat belts at regular intervals. If you notice that the belt webbing, fittings, retractor mechanism or buckle of any of the belts is damaged, the belt must be replaced immediately by a specialised workshop ››› ⚠. The specialised workshop must use the appropriate spare parts corresponding to the vehicle, the equipment and the model year. SEAT recommends taking your car in for technical service.

⚠ WARNING

Unbuckled or badly buckled seat belts increase the risk of severe or even fatal injuries. The seat belt cannot offer its full protection if it is not fastened and used correctly.

- **Seat belts are the most effective way of reducing the risk of sustaining severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident. Seat belts must be correctly fastened when the vehicle is in motion to protect the driver and all vehicle occupants.**
- **Before each trip, every occupant in the vehicle occupants must sit properly, correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to his or her seat and keep it fastened throughout** »

the trip. This also applies to other vehicle occupants when driving in town.

- When travelling, children must be secured in the vehicle with a child restraint system suitable for their weight and height and with the seat belts correctly fastened ››› page 65.
- Instruct your passengers to fasten their seat belts properly before driving off.
- Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and ensure it is engaged. Using the latch plate in the buckle of another seat will not protect you properly and may cause severe injuries.
- Do not allow liquids or foreign bodies to enter the buckle fastenings. This could damage the buckles and seat belts.
- Never unbuckle your seat belt when the vehicle is moving.
- Never allow more than one passenger to share the same seat belt.
- Never hold children or babies on your lap sharing the same seat belt.
- Bulky and unbuttoned clothing, such as a coat worn over a sweatshirt, impairs the proper fit and function of the seat belt.

⚠ WARNING

It is extremely dangerous to drive using damaged seat belts and could result in serious injury or loss of life.

- Avoid damaging the seat belt by jamming it in the door or the seat mechanism.
- If the fabric or other parts of the seat belt are damaged, the seat belts could break in the event of an accident or sudden braking.
- Always have damaged seat belts replaced immediately by seat belts approved for the vehicle in question by SEAT. Seat belts which have been worn in an accident and stretched must be replaced by a specialised workshop. Renewal may be necessary even if there is no apparent damage. The belt anchorage should also be checked.
- Never attempt to repair, modify or remove a seat belt yourself. All repairs to seat belts, retractors and buckles must be carried out by a specialised workshop.

Warning lamp

Fig. 68 Warning lamp on the instrument panel

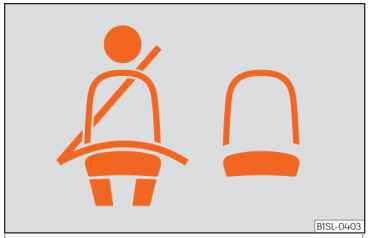


Fig. 69 Indication of seat belt status in the rear seats on the instrument panel display

Lights up or flashes

Driver's seat belt not fastened or front passenger seat belt not fastened if the front passenger seat is occupied.
Fasten your seat belt!

Objects over the passenger seat.
Remove any objects from the front passenger seat and store them safely.

It lights up

A passenger in the rear seats has not fastened their seat belt, if the seat is occupied.*
Fasten your seat belt!

It lights up

A passenger in the rear seats has fastened their seat belt, if the seat is occupied.*

Several warning and control lamps light up for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, signalling that the function is being verified. They will switch off after a few seconds.

An audible warning will be heard if the seat belts are not fastened as the vehicle drives off and reaches a speed of more then 25 km/h (15 mph) or if the seat belts are unfastened while the vehicle is in motion. The seat belt warning lamp will also flash.

The warning lamp does not switch off until the driver and front passenger fasten their seat belts while the ignition is switched on.

Seat belt status display for rear seats

The seat belt status display on the instrument panel informs the driver, when the ignition is switched on, whether any passengers in the rear seats have fastened their seat belts. The symbol indicates that the passenger in this seat has fastened "his or her" seat belt ››› Fig. 69.

The seat belt status is displayed for around 30 seconds when a seat belt in the rear seats is fastened or unfastened. You can switch off this display by pressing the 0.0 / SET button.

The seat belt status flashes for a maximum of 30 seconds when a seat belt in the rear seats is unfastened while the vehicle is in motion. An audible warning will also be heard if the vehicle is travelling at over 25 km/h (15 mph).

The protective function of seat belts

Fig. 70 Drivers with properly worn seat belts will not be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.

Properly worn seat belts hold the occupants in the proper position. They also help prevent uncontrolled movements that may result in serious injury and reduce the risk of being thrown out of the vehicle in case of an accident.

Vehicle occupants wearing their seat belts correctly benefit greatly from the ability of the belts to absorb kinetic energy. In addition, the front part of your vehicle and other passive safety features (such as the airbag system) are designed to absorb the kinetic energy released in a collision. Taken together, all these features reduce the releasing kinetic energy and consequently, the risk of injury. This is why it is so important to fasten seat belts before every trip, even when "just driving around the corner".

Ensure that your passengers wear their seat belts as well. Accident statistics have shown that wearing seat belts is an effective means of substantially reducing the risk of injury and improving the chances of survival when involved in a serious accident. Furthermore, properly worn seat belts improve the protection provided by airbags in the event of an accident. For this reason, wearing a seat belt is required by law in most countries.

Although your vehicle is equipped with airbags, the seat belts must be fastened and worn. The front airbags, for example, are only triggered in some cases of head-on collision. The front airbags will not be triggered during minor frontal or side collisions, rear-end collisions, rollovers or accidents in which the airbag trigger threshold value in the control unit is not exceeded.

Therefore, you should always wear your seat belt and ensure that all vehicle occupants have fastened their seat belts properly before you drive off!

Using seat belts

Twisted seat belt

If it is difficult to remove the seat belt from the guide, the seat belt may have become »

twisted inside the side trim after being wound too quickly on unfastening:

- Pull out the seat belt completely, carefully pulling on the latch plate.
- Untwist the belt and guide it back, assisting it by hand.

The seat belt must be fastened even if it is impossible to untwist it. In this case, the twisted area must not be in an area in direct contact with your body. Have the seat belt untwisted urgently by a specialised workshop.

⚠ WARNING

An improperly handled seat belt increases the risk of sustaining severe or fatal injuries.

- **Regularly check that the seat belts and their components are in perfect condition.**
- **Always keep your seat belt clean.**
- **Do not jam or damage the seat belt or rub it with sharp edges.**
- **Make sure there are no liquids or foreign bodies on the latch plate and in the buckle.**

Head-on collisions and the laws of physics

Fig. 71 A driver not wearing a seat belt is thrown forward violently.

Fig. 72 The unbelted passenger in the rear seat is thrown forward violently, hitting the driver who is wearing a seat belt.

The effects of the laws of physics in the case of a head-on collision are easy to explain: the moment a vehicle starts moving, a type of energy called “kinetic energy” starts acting on both the vehicle and its passengers.

The amount of “kinetic energy” depends on the speed of the vehicle and on the weight of the vehicle and of its passengers. The higher the speed and the greater the weight, the more energy there is to be “absorbed” in an accident.

The most significant factor, however, is the speed of the vehicle. If the speed doubles from 25 km/h (15 mph) to 50 km/h (30 mph), for example, the corresponding kinetic energy is multiplied by four.

Because the vehicle occupants in our example are not restrained by seat belts, in the event of crashing against a wall, all of the occupants' kinetic energy will be absorbed solely by said impact.

Even at speeds of 30 km/h (19 mph) to 50 km/h (30 mph), the forces acting on bodies in a collision can easily exceed one tonne (1000 kg). At greater speed these forces are even higher.

Vehicle occupants not wearing seat belts are not “attached” to the vehicle. In a head-on collision, they will move forward at the same speed their vehicle was travelling just before the impact. This example applies not only to head-on collisions, but to all accidents and collisions.

Even at low speeds the forces acting on the body in a collision are so great that it is not possible to brace oneself with one's hands. In a frontal collision, unbelted passengers are thrown forward and will make violent contact with the steering wheel, dash panel, windscreen or whatever else is in the way ››› Fig. 71.

It is also important for rear passengers to wear seat belts properly, as they could otherwise be thrown forward violently through the vehicle interior in an accident. Passengers in the rear seats who do not use seat belts endanger not only themselves but also the front occupants ››› Fig. 72.

How to properly adjust your seat belt

Fastening and unfastening seat belt

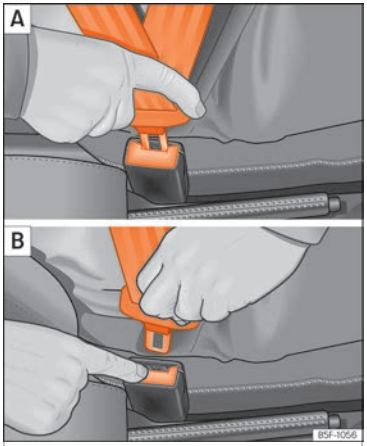


Fig. 73 Positioning and removing the seat belt buckle.

Fig. 74 Position of seat belt during pregnancy.

Properly worn seat belts hold the vehicle occupants in the position that most protects them in the event of an accident or sudden braking ››› ⚠.

Fastening the seat belt

Fasten your seat belt before each trip.

- Correctly adjust the front seat ››› page 49.
- Engage the seat backrest in the upright position and correctly adjust the hear restraint ››› ⚠.
- Pull the latch plate and place the belt webbing evenly across your chest and lap. Do **not** twist the seat belt when doing so ››› ⚠.
- Engage the latch plate in the buckle of the corresponding seat ››› Fig. 73 **A**.
- Pull the belt to ensure that the latch plate is securely engaged in the buckle.

»

Unfastening the seat belt

The seat belt must not be unfastened until the vehicle has come to a standstill ››› ⚠.

- Press the red button on the buckle ››› Fig. 73 **B**. The latch plate will come out of the buckle.
- Guide the belt back by hand so that it rolls up easily and the trim will not be damaged.

Correct seat belt position

Seat belts offer their maximum protection in the event of an accident and reduce the risk of sustaining severe or fatal injuries only when they are properly positioned. Furthermore, if the webbing is correctly positioned, the seat belt will hold the vehicle occupants in the optimum position to ensure the airbag provides the maximum protection. The seat belt must therefore always be worn and the webbing correctly positioned.

Incorrectly worn seat belts can cause severe or even fatal injuries ››› **page 49, Correct position of the vehicle occupants**.

- The shoulder part of the seat belt must lie on the centre of the shoulder, never across the neck or the arm, under the arm or behind the shoulder.
- The lap part of the seat belt must lie across the pelvis, never across the stomach.
- The seat belt must lie flat and fit comfortably. Pull the belt tight if necessary to take up any slack.

In the case of **pregnant women**, the seat belt must lie evenly across the chest and as low as possible over the pelvis, never across the stomach and must be worn properly at all times during the pregnancy ››› Fig. 74.

Adapting the position of the belt webbing to your size

The seat belt can be adapted using the following equipment:

- Front seat height adjustment.

⚠ WARNING

An incorrectly worn seat belt web can cause severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident.

- **The seat belt cannot offer its full protection unless the seat backrest is in an upright position and the seat belt is worn correctly, according to your size.**
- **Unbuckling your seat belt while the vehicle is in motion can cause severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or sudden braking.**
- **The seat belt itself or a loose seat belt can cause severe injuries if the belt moves from hard areas of the body to soft areas (e.g. the stomach).**
- **The shoulder part of the seat belt must lie on the centre of the shoulder, never across the neck or the arm.**
- **The seat belt must lie flat and fit comfortably on the torso**
- **The lap part of the seat belt must lie across the pelvis, never across the stomach. The seat belt must lie flat and fit comfortably on the pelvis Pull the belt tight if necessary to take up any slack.**
- **For pregnant women, the lap part of the seat belt must lie as low as possible over the pelvis and always lie flat, "surrounding" the stomach.**
- **Do not twist the seat belt while it is fastened.**
- **Never pull the seat belt away from your body using your hand.**
- **Do not lie the seat belt across rigid or fragile objects, e.g. glasses, pens or keys.**
- **Never use seat belt clips, retaining rings or similar instruments to alter the position of the belt webbing.**

ⓘ Note

If your physical constitution prevents you from maintaining the correct position of the belt webbing, contact a specialised workshop for help with any special devices to ensure the optimum protection of the seat belt and airbag. SEAT recommends taking your car in for technical service.

Seat belt tensioners

Automatic belt retractor, belt tensioner, belt tension limiter

Seat belts are part of the vehicle safety concept ››› page 60 and consist of the following important functions:

Automatic belt retainer

Every seat belt is equipped with an automatic belt retainer on the shoulder belt. If the belt is pulled slowly or during normal driving, the system allows for total freedom of movement on the shoulder belt. However, during sudden braking, during travel in mountains or bends and during acceleration, the automatic belt retainer on the seat belt is locked is pulled quickly.

Belt tensioners

The seat belts for the occupants in the front seats are equipped with belt tensioners.

Sensors trigger the belt tensioners during severe head-on, lateral and rear collisions and retract and tighten the seat belts. If the seat belt is loose, it is retracted to reduce the forwards movement of occupants or movement in the direction of the collision. The belt tensioner works in combination with the airbag system. The belt tensioner will not be triggered in the event of the vehicle overturning if the side airbags are not deployed.

If the belt tensioner is triggered, a fine dust is produced. This is normal and it is not an indication of fire in the vehicle.

Belt tension limiter

The belt tension limiter reduces the force of the seat belt on the body in the event of an accident.

Note

The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle is dismantled or system components are removed. These requirements are known to specialised workshops **››› page 59****.**

Service and disposal of belt tension devices

If you work on the belt tensioners or remove and install other parts of the vehicle when performing other repair work, the seat belt may be damaged. The consequence may be that, in the event of an accident, the belt tensioners function incorrectly or not at all.

So that the effectiveness of the belt tensioner is not reduced and that removed parts do not cause any injuries or environmental pollution, regulations must be observed. These requirements are known to specialised workshops.

⚠ WARNING

- **Improper use or repairs not carried out by qualified mechanics increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries. The belt tensioners may fail to trigger or may trigger in the wrong circumstances.**
- **Never attempt to repair, adjust, remove or install parts of the belt tensioners or seat belts.**
- **The seat belt tensioner, seat belt and automatic retractor cannot be repaired.**
- **Any work on the belt tensioners and seat belts, including the removal and refitting of system parts in conjunction with other repair work, must be performed by a specialised workshop only.**
- **The belt tensioners will only provide protection for one accident and must be changed if they have been activated.**

For the sake of the environment

Airbag modules and belt tensioners may contain perchlorate. Observe the legal requirements for their disposal.

Airbag system

Brief introduction

Introduction

Front airbags have been installed for both driver and passenger. The front airbags can also protect the chest and head of driver and passenger if the seats, seat belts head restraints and, for the driver, the steering wheel are correctly adjusted and used. Airbags are considered as additional safety equipment. An airbag cannot replace the seat belt, which must be worn at all times, even in front seats where front airbags have been installed.

The airbag can protect vehicle occupants in the event of an accidents, cushioning the movement of the occupants in the direction of the collision in frontal and side accidents.

Deployed airbags fill with a propellant gas. This causes the airbag covers to break and the airbags to deploy extremely quickly in their entire deployment space within fractions of a second. When an occupant with the seat belt properly fastened puts pressure on the inflated airbag, the propellant gas escapes to absorb the force of the impact and slow the movement. This reduces the risk of severe or fatal injuries. Airbag deployment does not mean that other types of injury such as swelling, bruising and skin injuries can be ruled out. Upon deployment of the airbag, friction can cause the generation of heat.

Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower part of the body.

The most important factors for triggering the airbag are the type of accident, the angle of impact, the vehicle speed and the characteristics of the object the vehicle hits. Therefore, airbags are not triggered every time the vehicle is visibly damaged.

The activation of the airbag system depends on the magnitude of the deceleration of the vehicle caused by a collision, which registers through an electronic control unit. If the deceleration magnitude value is below the reference value programmed in the control unit, the airbags will not deploy even though serious damage might be caused to the vehicle as the result of an accident. Damage suffered by the vehicle, reparation costs or absence of damage suffered from the accident are not indications of whether an airbag should have been deployed. Due to the varying nature of collision situations, it is impossible to define a speed range of the vehicle and reference values. For this reason, it is not possible to cover all types of collisions and collision angles resulting in the deployment of the airbag. Factors necessary for the airbag to be deployed can be, the characteristics of the object (hard or soft) against which the vehicle collides, the collision angle and the vehicle speed.

Airbags act in conjunction with the three-point seat belts in certain accident situations, when the vehicle deceleration rate is severe enough to trigger the airbags. Airbags only deploy once and only under certain circumstances. Seat belts remain present to offer protection in situations where airbags are not triggered or where they have already deployed. For example, when a vehicle hits another after an initial collision or is hit by another vehicle.

The airbag system is an integral part of the car's passive safety system. The airbag system can only work effectively when the vehicle occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly and have adjusted the head restraints properly ⚠ ››› page 49.

⚠ WARNING

Never exclusively trust the airbag system as a means of protection.

- **Even when triggered, airbag protection is only auxiliary.**
- **The airbags provide the best protection when the seat belts are properly fastened, thus reducing the risk of sustaining injuries** **››› page 53, Why wear a set belt**.
- **Before each trip, every occupant must sit properly, correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to his or her seat and keeping it fastened throughout the trip. This rule is valid for all vehicle occupants.**

⚠ WARNING

Occupants sitting in the front of the vehicle must never carry any objects in the deployment space between them and the airbags, as this increases the risk of sustaining injuries if the airbag is triggered. This modifies the airbag deployment space or the objects may fly uncontrollably and hit your body.

- **Never carry objects in your hand or on your lap while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Never transport objects on the front passenger seat. In the event of sudden braking and manoeuvres, the objects may end up in the airbag deployment space and fly uncontrollably around the interior if the airbag is activated.**
- **Occupants of the front and rear seats must never carry any other people, pets or objects in the deployment space between them and the airbags. Make sure children and other passengers also respect this recommendation.**

⚠ WARNING

The airbag system provides protection for one accident only. If they have been deployed, they must be replaced.

- **Ensure deployed airbags and the system components involved are immediately replaced with new, SEAT-approved components for the vehicle.**
- **Have any repairs or modifications carried out at a specialised workshop. Specialised workshops have the necessary tools, diagnostics equipment, repair information and qualified personnel.**
- **Never fit recycled or reused airbag components in your vehicle.**
- **Never modify the airbag system components.**

⚠ WARNING

If the airbags are triggered, a fine dust is produced. This is normal and it is not an indication of fire in the vehicle.

- **This fine dust may irritate the skin and eyes and cause breathing difficulties, particularly in people suffering from or who have suffered from asthma or other illnesses of the respiratory tract. To reduce breathing difficulties, get out of the vehicle and open and doors and windows to breath in fresh air.**
- **Should you touch the dust, wash your hands and face using a mild soap and water before you eat.**
- **Prevent the dust from affecting the eyes or open wounds.**
- **Rinse your eyes with water if you have dust in them.**

⚠ WARNING

Solvents cause the surfaces of the airbag modules to become porous. If an airbag is accidentally triggered, the detachment of plastic parts could cause serious injury.

- **Never clean the dash panel and the surfaces of the airbag modules with cleaners containing solvents.**

Description of airbag system

Vehicle safety components

The following safety equipment makes up the vehicle safety design to reduce the risk of severe and fatal injuries. Depending on the vehicle equipment, some equipment may not be fitted in the vehicle or may not be available in some markets.

- Optimised seat belts for all seats.
- Seat belt tension devices for driver and passenger.
- Seat belt force limiters for driver and passenger.
- Seat belt warning lamp
- Front airbags for driver and passenger.
- Side airbags for driver and passenger.
- Airbag control lamp .
- Control units and sensors.

»

- Head restraints optimised for rear-end collision.
- Adjustable steering column.
- If necessary, anchor points for child seats for the rear seats.
- Where applicable, mountings for the child seat upper retaining strap.

Situations in which the front and side airbags do not deploy:

- If the ignition is switched off during the collision.
- In frontal collisions, when the deceleration measured by the control unit is too low.
- In minor side collisions.
- In rear collisions.
- In the event of the vehicle overturning.
- When the impact speed is lower than the reference value set in the control unit.

There is a fault in the system if the control lamp :

- does not light up when the ignition is switched on,
- turns off after 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on,
- turns off and then lights up again after the ignition is switched on,
- illuminates or flashes while the vehicle is moving.

⚠ WARNING

- **The seat belts and airbags can only provide maximum protection if the occupants are seated correctly** **››› page 49****.**
- **If a fault has occurred in the airbag system, have the system checked immediately by a specialised workshop. Otherwise, during a frontal collision the system might not trigger correctly or may fail to trigger at all.**

Airbag activation

The airbags deploy extremely rapidly, within thousandths of a second, to provide additional protection in the event of an accident. A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and it is not an indication of fire in the vehicle.

The airbag system is only ready to function when the ignition is on.

In special accidents instances, several airbags may activate at the same time.

In the event of minor head-on and side collisions, rear-end collisions, overturning or rollover of the vehicle, airbags **do not activate**.

Activation factors

The conditions that lead to the airbag system activating in each situation cannot be generalised. Some factors play an important role, such as the properties of the object the vehicle hits (hard/soft), angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc.

Deceleration trajectory is key for airbag activation.

The control unit analyses the collision trajectory and activates the respective restraint system.

If the deceleration rate is below the predefined reference value in the control unit the airbags will not be triggered, even though the accident may cause extensive damage to the car.

The following airbags are triggered in serious head-on collisions

- Driver airbag.
- Front passenger front airbag

The following airbags are triggered in serious side-on collisions

- Front side airbag on the side of the accident.
- Rear side airbag on the side of the accident.

In an accident with airbag activation:

- the interior lights switch on (if the interior light switch is in the courtesy light position);
- the hazard warning lights switch on;

- all doors are unlocked;
- the fuel supply to the engine is cut.

Airbag safety instructions

Front airbags

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 16.

⚠ WARNING

The airbag is deployed at high speed in fractions of a second.

- Always keep the deployment areas of the front airbags vacant.
- Never secure objects to the covers or in the deployment area of the airbag modules, e.g. drink holders or phone supports.
- The deployment space between the front passengers and the airbags must not in any case be occupied by other passenger, pets and objects.
- Never fix any object to the windscreen above the front airbag on the front passenger side.
- Do not alter, cover or stick anything to the steering wheel hub or the surface of the airbag module on the passenger side of the dash panel.

⚠ WARNING

Front airbags are deployed in front of the steering wheel and the instrument panel.

- When driving, always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside part at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions.
- Adjust the driver seat so that there is a distance of at least 25 cm (10 inches) between the centre of your chest and the hub of the steering wheel. If your physical constitution prevents you from meeting these requirements, make sure you contact a specialised workshop.
- Adjust the front passenger seat so there is as much distance as possible between the front passenger and the dash panel.

Side airbags*

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 18.

⚠ WARNING

The airbag is deployed at high speed in fractions of a second.

- Always keep the deployment areas of the side airbags vacant.
- The deployment space between the front passengers and the airbags must not in any case be occupied by other passenger, pets and objects.
- Do not mount accessories on the doors.
- Only used protective covers for the seats that are approved for the vehicle. Otherwise, the side airbag would be obstructed when deployed.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect handling of the driver's and front passenger seat could prevent the side airbag from deploying properly and cause severe injuries.

- Never remove the front seats of the vehicle or modify any of their components.
- Great forces must not be exerted on the seat backrest bolsters because the side airbags might not deploy correctly, might not deploy at all or might deploy unexpectedly.
- Any damage to the original seat upholstery or around the seams of the side airbag units must be repaired immediately by a specialised workshop.

Deactivating airbags

Control lamps

Fig. 75 Control lamp for disabling the front passenger front airbag on the dash panel

It lights up on the combi-instrument

Fault in airbag system and seat belt tensioners.
Have the system checked immediately by a specialised workshop.

OFF It lights up on the dash panel

Fault in airbag system.
Have the system checked immediately by a specialised workshop.

Front passenger front airbag disabled.
Check whether the airbag should remain disabled.

Several warning and control lamps light up for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, signalling that the function is being verified. They will switch off after a few seconds.

If the front passenger airbag is deactivated, the lamp **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF does not remain lit**, or if it is lit together with the control lamp on the instrument panel, there may be a fault in the airbag system ›››.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of a fault in the airbag system, the airbag may not trigger correctly, may fail to trigger or may even trigger unexpectedly, leading to severe or fatal injuries.

- **Have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialised workshop.**
- **Never mount a child seat in the front passenger seat or remove the mounted child seat! The front passenger front airbag may deploy during an accident in spite of the fault.**

CAUTION

Always pay attention to any lit control lamps and to the corresponding descriptions and instructions to avoid damage to the vehicle.

Manual disabling and enabling of the front passenger front airbag with the key switch

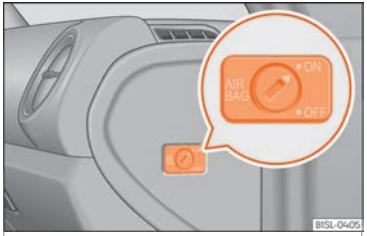


Fig. 76 On the passenger side: switch to activate and deactivate the front passenger airbag.

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 17

Activating the front passenger front airbag

- Switch the ignition off.
- Open the door on the front passenger side.
- Unfold the vehicle key blade ››› page 92.
- Using the vehicle key, turn the key switch to **ON** ››› Fig. 76.
- Close the door on the front passenger side.
- Check that, with the ignition switched on, the control lamp **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** on the dash panel is *not* lit up ››› page 64.

How to know whether the front passenger front airbag is disabled

The **only** indication of the front passenger airbag being disabled is that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** control lamp on the dash panel remains lit (**OFF** stays yellow) ››› page 64.

If the control lamp **OFF** on the dash panel **does not remain lit** or is lit in combination with the control lamp on the instrument panel, a child restraint system cannot be mounted on the front passenger seat for safety reasons. The front passenger front airbag may deploy during an accident.

⚠ WARNING

The front passenger front airbag must only be disabled in special cases.

- **Disable and activate the front passenger front airbag when the ignition is switched off to avoid damage to the airbag system.**
- **It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the key operated switch is set to the correct position.**
- **Only disable the front passenger front airbag when a child seat is to be mounted under exceptional circumstances.**
- **As soon as the child seat is no longer needed on the front passenger seat, reconnect the front passenger front airbag.**

Transporting children safely

Safety for children

Introduction

Before transporting babies and children in a child seat placed in the front passenger seat, first completely read the information regarding the airbag system.

This information is extremely important for driver and passenger safety, particularly that of babies and children.

SEAT recommends the use of child seats from the SEAT accessory programme. These child seats have been designed and tested for use in SEAT vehicles. You can purchase child seats with different mountings from a SEAT dealership.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure children are properly belted in and correctly secured to avoid severe or fatal injuries while the vehicle is in motion.

- **Never use a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger seat if the front passenger front airbag is enabled.**
- **Children up to 12 years old should always travel on the rear seat.**
- **Children must always be protected with an approved child restraint system suited to their height and weight.**
- **Children must assume the proper sitting position and be properly belted in while travelling.**
- **Ensure the seat backrest is upright when a child seat is being used on it.**
- **Do not allow the child's head or other part of his or her body to enter the deployment area of the side airbags.**
- **Make sure the belt webbing is correctly positioned.**
- **Never hold children or babies on your lap or in your arms.**
- **Only one child may occupy a child seat.**
- **Please read and observe the child seat manufacturer's handling instructions.**

⚠ WARNING

An empty or loose child seat could fly uncontrollably around the vehicle interior and cause injuries in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

- **When not in use while the vehicle is in motion, always safely secure the child seat or store it in the luggage compartment.**

ⓘ Note

Replace the child seat after an accident, as it may have invisible damage.

Important information regarding the front passenger's airbag

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 18.

Read and always observe the safety information included in the following chapters:

- Safety distance with respect to the passenger airbag ››› ⚠ in Introduction on page 60.
- Objects between the passenger and the passenger side airbag ››› ⚠ in Front airbags on page 63.

The passenger side front airbag, when enabled, is a serious risk for a child that is facing backward since the airbag can strike the seat with such force that it can cause serious or fatal injuries. Children up to 12 years old should always travel on the rear seat.

Therefore we strongly recommend you to transport children on the rear seats. This is the safest location in the vehicle. Alternatively, the front passenger airbag can be disabled with a key-operated switch ››› page 64. When transporting children, use a child seat suitable for the age and size of each child ››› page 67.

⚠ WARNING

- **If a child seat is secured to the front passenger seat, the risk to the child of sustaining critical or fatal injuries in the event of an accident increases.**
- **An inflating front passenger airbag can strike the rear-facing child seat and project it with great force against the door, the roof or the backrest.**
- **Never install a child seat facing backwards on the front passenger seat unless the front passenger front airbag has been disabled. Risk of potentially fatal injuries to the child! However, if it is necessary, in exceptional cases, to transport a child in the front passenger seat, the front passenger front airbag must always be disabled ››› page 64. If the passenger seat has a height adjustment option, move it to the highest, most upright position. If you have a fixed seat, do not install any child restraint system in this location.**
- **For those vehicles that do not include a key lock switch to deactivate the airbag, the vehicle must be taken to a technical service.**
- **All vehicle occupants, especially children, must assume the proper sitting position and be properly belted in while travelling.**
- **Never hold children or babies on your lap, this can result in potentially fatal injuries to the child!**
- **Never allow a child to be transported in a vehicle without being properly secured, or to stand up or kneel on a seat while travelling. In an accident, the child could be flung through the vehicle, causing possibly fatal injuries to themselves and to the other vehicle occupants.**
- **If children assume an improper sitting position when the vehicle is moving, they expose themselves to greater risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or in an accident. This is particularly important if the child is travelling on the front passenger seat and the airbag system is triggered in an accident; as this could cause serious injury or even death.**
- **A suitable child seat can protect your child!**
- **Never leave a child alone in the child seat or inside the vehicle because depending on the season, very high temperatures may be reached inside a parked vehicle, which could be fatal.**
- **Children who are less than 1.5 metres tall must not wear a normal seat belt without a child seat, as this could cause injuries to the abdominal and neck areas during a sudden braking manoeuvre or in an accident.**
- **Do not allow the seat belt to become twisted and the seat belt should be properly in place ››› page 53.**
- **Only one child may occupy a child seat ››› page 67.**
- **When a child seat is mounted in the rear seats, the door child-proof lock should be activated ››› page 98.**

Child seats

Safety instructions

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 18.

⚠ WARNING

The lower anchor points for child seats do not include rings. Only secure booster seats to lower anchor points.

⚠ WARNING

Child seats with lower anchor points and with an upper retaining strap must be installed in line with the manufacturer's instructions. Failure to comply could result in severe injuries.

- Always secure just *one* retaining strap to a child seat with the luggage compartment retaining ring.
- Always use the correct retaining rings for the retaining strap.
- Never secure the retaining strap to a retainer.

⚠ WARNING

In general, the rear seat is always the safest place for children, who are belted correctly, in the event of an accident.

- A suitable child seat that is correctly installed and used on one of the rear seats offer the most protection possible for babies and children up to 12 years in most accidents.

⚠ WARNING

Unbuckling the seat belt while the vehicle is in motion can cause severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

- The seat belt must not be unfastened until the vehicle has come to a standstill.

ⓘ CAUTION

- To avoid making permanent marks in the padding, remove the auxiliary introduction elements from the anchor points when the child seat is not installed in the vehicle anchor points.
- To prevent damage being done to the upholstery, the padding or the auxiliary introduction elements, always remove the auxiliary introduction elements from the anchor points before folding the rear seat bench.

General information on transporting children in the vehicle

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 19.

Legal regulations and provisions will always take priority over the descriptions of this instruction manual. There are different regulations and provisions for the use of child seats and their mountings (››› table on page 68). In some countries, for example, the use of child seats on certain seats in the vehicle may be forbidden.

The physical principles and the forces acting on the vehicle in the event of a collision or other type of accidents also apply to children ››› page 53. However, unlike adults and youngsters, children do not have fully developed muscle and bone structures. In the event of an accident, children are subject to a greater risk than adults of sustaining severe injuries.

Given that children's bodies are not yet fully developed, child restraint systems must be used that are especially adapted to their height, weight and constitution. There are laws in force in many countries that indicate the use of approved seat systems for transporting babies and children.

Only used authorised, approved child seats that are suitable for the vehicle. Always consult with a SEAT dealership or a Specialised workshop should you have any doubts. »

Specific child seat regulations for each country (selection)

Child seats must comply with the ECE-R 44[1] regulation. You can get additional information by consulting your SEAT dealership or at the internet address www.seat.es.

Categorisation of child seats according to ECE-R 44

Weight category	Weight of the child	Age
Group 0	up to 10 kg	up to approx. 9 months
Group 0+	up to 13 kg	up to approx. 18 months
Group 1	9 to 18 kg	approx. 8 months to 3 1/2 years
Group 2	15 to 25 kg	3 to 7 years approx.
Group 3	22 to 36 kg	6 to 12 years approx.

Not all children fit in the seat of their weight group. Nor do all seats adapt to the vehicle. Therefore, always check whether the child fits properly in the child seat and whether the seat can be installed safely in the vehicle.

Child seats approved under the ECE-R 44 regulation are fitted with the corresponding approval symbol. The sign is an upper-case E in a circle with the identification number below it.

Use of the child seat on the front passenger seat[2]

Transporting children on the front passenger seat is not permitted in all countries. Furthermore, not all child seats are approved for use on the front passenger seat. Your SEAT dealership has an updated list of all approved child seats. Only used child seats that are approved for each vehicle.

The front airbag on the front passenger side is highly dangerous for a child. The front passenger seat is life-threatening to a child if he or she is transported in a rear-facing child seat.

If a rear-facing child seat is secured to the front passenger seat, an inflating front airbag can strike it with such great force that severe or fatal injuries may result ››› ⚠. Therefore, rear-facing child seats must **never** be placed on the front passenger seat when the front passenger front airbag is enabled.

Only use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the front passenger front airbag is disabled. When it is disabled, the yellow control lamp on the dash panel PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF will be lit up ››› page 60. **If you cannot disable the front passenger front airbag and it remains activated, it is forbidden to transport children on the front passenger seat ››› ⚠.**

Things to note if using a child seat on the front passenger seat:

- The front passenger front airbag **must** be disabled ⚠ when using a rear-facing child seat ››› page 60.
- The seat backrest of the front passenger seat must be upright.
- The front passenger seat must be moved as far back as possible.
- A height-adjustable front passenger seat must be raised to its highest point.

---

[1] ECE-R: **E**conomic **C**omission for **E**urope Regulation.

[2] Compliance with current national legislation and the manufacturer's instructions is required when using or installing child seats.

Suitable child seats

The child seat must be authorised by the manufacturer especially for use on a front passenger seat with a front or side airbag.

Universal seats for children can be fitted in the front passenger seat, in groups 0, 0+, 1, 2 or 3 according to the ECE-R 44 regulation.

⚠ WARNING

If a child seat is mounted on the front passenger seat, the risk of the child sustaining severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident increases. Rear-facing child seats must never be mounted on the front passenger seat when the front passenger front airbag is enabled. This is life-threatening to the child should the front airbag deploy, as the child seat would be struck by the inflated airbag and thrown against the seat backrest.

⚠ WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, a child must be transported in a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat, strictly observe the following:

- **Always disable the front passenger front airbag and leave it disabled.**
- **The child seat must be approved by the manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with front and side airbag.**
- **Follow the installation instructions of the child seat manufacturer and observe the warnings.**
- **Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible and adjust it to its highest position to keep as far away as possible from the front airbag.**
- **Move the seat backrest to the upright position.**
- **Children must always be protected with an approved child restraint system suited to their height and weight.**

Use of the child seat on the rear seat

If a child seat is mounted on the rear seat, adapt the position of the front passenger seat so that the child has enough space. Therefore, adapt the front passenger seat to the size of the child seat and the height of the child. Ensure the passenger is in the correct position ⚠ ››› page 49.

Suitable child seats

The manufacturer must authorise the child seat for use in the rear seats with side airbags.

Universal seats for children can be fitted in the passenger seat, in groups 0, 0+, 1, 2 or 3 according to the ECE-R 44 regulation.

The rear seats are suitable for child seats with the **ISOFIX system** specially designed for this type of vehicle in accordance with regulation ECE-R 44.

ISOFIX child seats approved for rear seats

ISOFIX child seats are divided into the following certified categories: “universal”, “semi-universal” or “specific categories for the vehicle”.

- If the ISOFIX child seat is certified “universal”, it must be supported by the lower anchor points and the Top Tether retaining strap.
- If the ISOFIX child seat is certified “semi-universal” or “specific categories for the vehicle”, check that the child seat is certified for the vehicle before employing it. The child seat manufacturer supplies, in addition to the ISOFIX child seat, a list of vehicles for which the corresponding ISOFIX child seat has been certified. If necessary, contact the child seat manufacturer for an updated list of vehicles.

Emergencies

Self-help

In case of emergency

First aid kit, warning triangle and fire extinguishers*

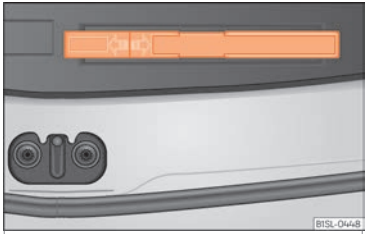


Fig. 77 In the boot: storage compartment for the warning triangle

Warning triangle

In some vehicle equipment it is possible to store the warning triangle model shown in a storage compartment of the luggage compartment ››› Fig. 77.

First-aid kit

The first aid kit must comply with legal requirements. Check the expiry date of the contents of the first aid kit.

Fire extinguisher

A fire extinguisher can be stored in a holder in the passenger seat footwell.

The fire extinguisher must conform to legal requirements, be ready for use and be checked regularly. Check the certification seal on the extinguisher.

⚠ WARNING

Loose objects in the vehicle interior can be violently thrown in case of a sudden manoeuvre or braking and especially in accidents causing serious injury.

- **Secure or store fire extinguishers, first aid kit, reflective vests and warning triangle securely in the vehicle.**

Vehicle tool kit*

Introduction

When securing the vehicle in case of a breakdown, please note the legal requirements for each country.

Vehicle tool kit

For vehicles with a factory-fitted spare wheel or temporary spare wheel, in addition to winter wheels, the luggage compartment may contain additional vehicle tools ››› page 71.

⚠ WARNING

When the vehicle tool kit, tyre mobility set and spare wheel are loose in the interior they can be violently thrown in case of a sudden manoeuvre or braking and especially in accidents, causing serious injury.

- **Ensure that the vehicle tool kit, the tyre mobility set and the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel are safely secured in the luggage compartment.**

⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable or damaged vehicle tools can cause injury or accidents.

- **Never work with inappropriate or damaged tools.**

Location

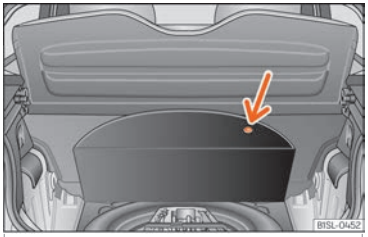


Fig. 78 In the boot: carpet raised.

The vehicle tool kit, spare wheel, temporary spare wheel and the tyre mobility set are stored in the luggage compartment under the carpeted floor panel ››› Fig. 78.

- If necessary, remove the boot variable floor ››› page 122.
- Raise the carpet at the recess (arrow) ››› Fig. 78.

Note

After use, return the jack to its initial position using the handle in order to securely store it in the vehicle.

Accessing the vehicle tool kit and tyre mobility system in vehicles fitted with the SEAT SOUND 7 speaker system (with subwoofer)*

- Open the boot hatch and lift the shelf.
- If necessary, remove the boot variable floor ››› page 125.
- Lift up the carpet from the recess and remove it from the luggage compartment.
- Disconnect the subwoofer's speaker cable.
- Completely remove the hand-controlled wheel from the centre of the subwoofer speaker by turning it anti-clockwise.
- Take out the subwoofer, which is on top of the tools and tyre mobility system.
- When finished, place the tools and system back in the same way and place as before to ensure the speaker sits properly in its housing.
- Place the subwoofer in the direction of the arrow and with the word "FRONT" facing forward.
- Reconnect the speaker cable and firmly rotate the securing wheel clockwise so that the subwoofer is firmly in place.

Components

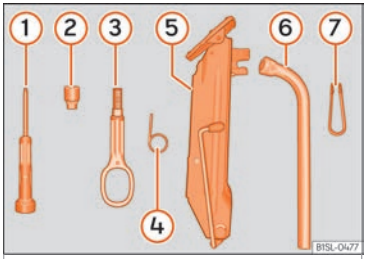


Fig. 79 Components of the vehicle tool kit

The vehicle tool kit depends on the vehicle equipment. The following is a description for a vehicle with all options.

Individual elements of the vehicle tool kit ››› Fig. 79

1. Screwdriver with hexagon socket in the handle for screwing and unscrewing the wheel bolts. The screwdriver bit is interchangeable. The screwdriver may be found underneath the wheel spanner.
2. Adapter for anti-theft bolt. SEAT recommend you carry the wheel bolt adapter in the vehicle tool kit at all times. The **code number** of the anti-theft wheel bolt is stamped on the front of the adapter. In »

case it is lost, another adapter can be ordered using this number. Note the anti-theft bolt code for the wheels and keep it in a place other than the vehicle.

③ Towline anchorage, removable.

④ Wire hook for pulling off the wheel cover, integral hubcaps and the wheel bolt caps.

⑤ Jack. Before storing the jack in the tool kit, fold its hook. The crank must then be folded tight against the side of the jack in order for it to be safely stored.

⑥ Wheel spanner.

⑦ Wheel bolt cap clips.

Note

The jack does not generally require any maintenance. If required, it should be greased using universal type grease.

Changing a wheel

Introduction

Read the additional information carefully
››› page 37

Some vehicle versions and models do not have a factory-fitted jack or box spanner. In this case, we recommend consulting a Specialised workshop to change the wheel.

You should only change the wheels yourself if the vehicle is parked in a safe place, you are familiar with the procedure and safety standards and you have all the necessary tools! Otherwise, you should seek professional assistance.

⚠ WARNING

Changing a wheel can be dangerous, especially on the hard shoulder. Please observe the following rules to minimise the risk of injury:

- **Stop the vehicle safely as soon as possible. Park at a safe distance from surrounding traffic to change a wheel.**
- **When changing a wheel, keep all passengers, and particularly children, a safe distance away from the work area.**
- **Turn on the hazard warning lights to warn other road users.**
- **Ensure the ground on which you park is flat and solid. If necessary, support the jack on a wide solid base.**
- **If you are changing a wheel yourself, you should be familiar with the required procedure. Otherwise, you should seek professional assistance.**
- **Only use suitable tools that are not damaged when changing a wheel.**
- **Always stop the engine, apply the handbrake lever firmly and place the selector lever in position N, or engage a gear for a manual gearbox to reduce the risk of the vehicle moving accidentally.**
- **Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts checked as soon as possible with a reliable torque wrench.**

⚠ WARNING

If the wheel trims are not appropriate or not fitted correctly, they could cause major accidents or damage.

- **Incorrectly mounted wheel trims may come off while driving and endanger other road users.**
- **Damaged trims must never be mounted on the wheels.**
- **Always ensure that the brake ventilation and cooling is not cut off or blocked. This is also valid if hubcaps are fitted later. If there is not enough air, you may require significantly longer braking distances.**

CAUTION

Remove and remount wheel trims taking care to avoid damage to the vehicle.

Tyre repair

TMS (Tyre Mobility System)*

Read the additional information carefully
››› page 36

The Anti-puncture kit* (Tyre Mobility System) will reliably seal punctures caused by the penetration of a foreign body of up to about **4 mm** in diameter. **Do not remove foreign objects, e.g. screws or nails, from the tyre.**

After inserting the sealant residue in the tyre, you must again check the tyre pressure about 10 minutes after starting the engine.

You should only use the tyre mobility set if the vehicle is parked in a safe place, you are familiar with the procedure and you have the necessary tyre mobility set! Otherwise, you should seek professional assistance.

Do not use the tyre sealant in the following cases:

- If the wheel rim has been damaged.
- In outside temperatures below -20°C (-4°F).
- In the event of cuts or perforations in the tyre greater than 4 mm.
- If you have been driving with very low pressure or a completely flat tyre.
- If the sealant bottle has passed its use by date.

⚠ WARNING

Using the tyre mobility system can be dangerous, especially when filling the tyre at the roadside. Please observe the following rules to minimise the risk of injury:

- **Stop the vehicle safely as soon as possible. Park it at a safe distance from surrounding traffic to fill the tyre.**
- **Ensure the ground on which you park is flat and solid.**
- **All passengers and particularly children must keep a safe distance from the work area.**
- **Turn on the hazard warning lights to warn other road users.**
- **Use the tyre mobility system only if you are familiar with the necessary procedures. Otherwise, you should seek professional assistance.**
- **The tyre mobility set is intended for temporary emergency use only until you can reach the nearest specialised workshop.**
- **Replace the repaired tyre with the tyre mobility set as soon as possible.**
- **The sealant is a health hazard and must be cleaned immediately if it comes into contact with the skin.**
- **Always keep the tyre mobility set out of the reach of small children.**
- **Never use an equivalent jack, even if it has been approved for your vehicle.**
- **Always stop the engine, apply the handbrake lever firmly and engage gear if using a manual gearbox, in order to reduce the risk of vehicle involuntary movement.**

⚠ WARNING

A tyre filled with sealant does not have the same performance properties as a conventional tyre.

- **Never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).**
- **Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering.**
- **Drive for only 10 minutes at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) and then check the tyre.**

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of used or expired sealant observing any legal requirements.

Note

- **A new bottle of sealant can be purchased at SEAT dealerships.**
- **Take into account the separate instruction manual of the tyre mobility set* manufacturer.**

Contents of the tyre mobility system*

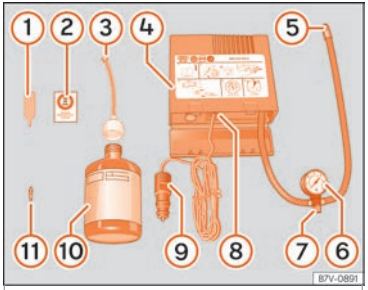


Fig. 80 Standard display: contents of the anti-puncture kit.

The anti-puncture kit is located underneath the floor covering in the luggage compartment. It includes the following components ››› Fig. 80:

1. Tyre valve remover
2. A sticker to be adhered to the instrument cluster, within the driver's visual field, to remind that the maximum advisable speed "max. 80 km/h" or "max. 50 mph"
3. Filler tube with cap
4. Air compressor
5. Tube for inflating tyres
6. Warning provided by tyre pressure monitoring system[1)]
7. Air bleed screw[2)]
8. ON/OFF switch
9. 12 volt connector
10. Bottle of sealant
11. Spare tyre valve

The **valve insert remover** (1) has a gap at the lower end for a valve insert. The valve insert can only be screwed or unscrewed in this way. This also applies to its replacement part (11).

⚠ WARNING

When inflating the wheel, the air compressor and the inflator tube may become hot.

- **Protect hands and skin from hot parts.**
- **Do not place the hot flexible inflator tube or hot air compressor on flammable material.**
- **Allow them to cool before storing the device.**
- **If it is not possible to inflate the tyre to at least 2.0 bars (29 psi / 200 kPa), the tyre is too badly damaged. The sealant is not in a good condition to seal the tyre. Do not continue driving. Seek specialist assistance.**

ⓘ CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor after a maximum of 8 operational minutes to avoid overheating! Before switching on the air compressor again, let it cool for several minutes.

Check after 10 minutes of driving

Screw in the inflator tube ››› Fig. 80 (5) again and check the pressure on the gauge (6).

1.3 bar (19 psi / 130 kPa) and lower:

- **Stop the vehicle!** The tyre cannot be sealed sufficiently with the tyre mobility set.
- You should obtain professional assistance ››› ⚠.

1.4 bar (20 psi / 140 kPa) and higher:

- Set the tyre pressure to the correct value again ››› page 206.
- Carefully resume your journey until you reach the nearest specialised workshop without exceeding 80 km/h (50 mph).

---

1) It can also be integrated in the compressor.

2) In its place, the compressor may have a button.

- Have the damaged tyre replaced.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with an unsealed tyre is dangerous and can cause accidents and serious injury.

- **Do not continue driving if the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar (19 psi / 130 kPa) and lower.**
- **Seek specialist assistance.**

Changing the windscreen wiper blades

Changing the windscreen and rear window wiper blades

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 47.

The windscreen wiper blades are supplied as standard with a layer of graphite. This layer is responsible for ensuring that the wipe is silent. If the graphite layer is damaged, the noise of the water as it is wiped across the windscreen will be louder.

Check the condition of the wiper blades regularly. **If the wipers scrape across the glass** they should be changed if they are damaged, or cleaned if they are dirty ››› ❶.

Damaged wiper blades should be replaced immediately. These are available from qualified workshops.

⚠ WARNING

Worn or dirty windscreen wiper blades reduce visibility and increase the risk of accident and serious injury.

- **Always replace damaged or worn windscreen wiper blades or blades that no longer clean the windscreen properly.**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **Damaged or dirty windscreen wipers could scratch the glass.**
- **If products containing solvents, rough sponges or sharp objects are used to clean the blades, the graphite layer will be damaged.**
- **Never use fuel, nail varnish remover, paint thinner or similar products to clean the windows.**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **To prevent damage to the bonnet and the wiper arms, only leave them in the service position.**
- **Before driving, always lower the wiper arms.**

ⓘ Note

If wax deposits, other cleaning products from the automatic car wash, or other care products, are left on the windscreen and the rear window, the blades can scratch the glass. Remove wax deposits with a special product or cleaning cloths.

Tow-starting and towing

Instructions for tow-starting

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 43.

When towing or tow starting, respect the legal requirements.

For technical reasons, it is not possible to tow a vehicle if the battery is flat.

In general, the vehicle should not be started by towing. Jump-starting is much more preferable ››› page 44.

For technical reasons, the following vehicles can **not** be tow started:

- Vehicles with an automatic gearbox.
- If the vehicle battery is flat, it is possible that the engine control unit does not operate correctly.

»

However, if your vehicle must absolutely be tow-started (manual gearbox):

- Put it into second or third gear.
- Keep the clutch pressed down.
- Switch on the ignition and the hazard warning lights.
- Release the clutch when both vehicles are moving.
- As soon as the engine starts, press the clutch and move the gear lever into neutral. This helps to prevent a collision with the towing vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

A vehicle with a flat battery should never be towed.

- **Never remove the key from the ignition lock. Otherwise, the steering wheel lock could suddenly lock. The vehicle would not be controlled and a serious accident could ensue.**

⚠ WARNING

When towing the vehicle, the handling and braking efficiency change considerably. Please observe the following instructions to minimise the risk of serious accidents and injury:

- **As the driver of the vehicle being towed:**
  - **The brake must be depressed must harder as the brake servo does not operate. Always remain aware to avoid collision with the towing vehicle.**
  - **More strength is required at the steering wheel as the power steering does not operate when the engine is switched off.**
- **As the driver of the towing vehicle:**
  - **Accelerate gently and carefully.**
  - **Avoid sudden braking and manoeuvres.**
  - **Brake well in advance than usual and brake gently.**

CAUTION

- **When tow-starting, fuel could enter the catalytic converter and damage it.**
- **Carefully fit and remove the towline anchorage and its cover to avoid damage to the vehicle (e.g. paintwork).**
- **When towing, fuel could enter the catalytic converter and cause damage!**

Note

Fitting a towline anchorage to the rear bumper is not possible. The vehicle is not suitable for towing other vehicles.

Advice for towing the vehicle

Towing vehicles with an automatic gearbox

Note the following for a towed vehicle:

- Make sure the gear selector lever is in the **N** position.
- Do not drive faster than 50 km/h (30 mph) when towing a vehicle.
- Do not tow further than 50 km (30 miles).
- If a breakdown truck is used, the vehicle must be towed with the front wheels raised.

Situations in which a vehicle should not be towed

In the following cases, the vehicle should not be towed but transported on a trailer or special vehicle:

- If the vehicle gearbox does not contain lubricant due to a fault.
- If the battery is flat and the steering cannot be unlocked as a result, the electronic steering lock and electronic parking brake cannot be disengaged.
- If the vehicle to be towed has an automatic gearbox and the distance to be covered is greater than 50 km (30 miles).

Note

The vehicle can only be towed if the steering lock electronic gearbox lock is deactivated. If the vehicle has no power supply or there is an electric system fault, the engine must be started using jump leads to deactivate the steering column electronic gearbox lock.

Fitting the front towline anchorage

Fig. 81 On the right-hand side of the front bumper: remove the lid.

Fig. 82 On the right-hand side of the front bumper: screw the anchorage.

The location for the removable tow ring is on the right-hand side of the front bumper behind a cover ››› Fig. 81.

The towline anchorage should always be kept in the vehicle.

Note the instructions for towing ››› page 76.

Fitting the towline anchorage

- Take the towline anchorage from the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment ››› page 70.
- Press the upper part of the cover ››› Fig. 81 (arrow) to disengage and release the cover.
- Remove the cover and leave it hanging from the vehicle.
- Screw in the tow ring into its housing **anticlockwise** as far as it will go ››› Fig. 82 ››› ❗. Use a suitable tool to firmly tighten the towline anchorage in its location.
- After towing, remove the tow ring by turning it **clockwise**.
- Place the cover's upper tab on the opening of the bumper and carefully guide the lower tab on the edge of the opening. If necessary, press the lower tab from below.
- Press the lower area of the cover until the lower tab engages in the bumper.

CAUTION

The towline anchorage must always be completely and firmly tightened. Otherwise, it could be released while towing and tow-starting.

Emergency locking and unlocking

Introduction

The doors and rear lid can be locked manually and partially opened, for example if the key or the central locking is damaged.

WARNING

Opening and closing doors carelessly can cause serious injury.

- **If the vehicle is locked from outside, the doors and windows cannot be opened from the inside.**

»

- Never leave children or disabled people alone in the car. They could be trapped in the car in an emergency and will not be able to get themselves to safety.
- Depending on the time of the year, temperatures inside a locked and closed vehicle can be extremely high or extremely low resulting in serious injuries and illness or even death, particularly for young children.

⚠ WARNING

Getting in the way of the doors and the rear lid is dangerous and can lead to serious injury.

- Open and close the doors and the rear lid only when there is nobody in the way.

CAUTION

When opening and closing in an emergency, carefully disassemble components and then reassemble them carefully to avoid damage to the vehicle.

Fuses and bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

Due to the constant updating of vehicles, fuse assignments based on equipment and the use of the same fuse for various electrical components, it is not possible to provide an up-to-date summary of the fuse positions for the electrical components at the time of printing this manual. For detailed information about the fuse positions, please consult a technical service.

In general, a fuse can be assigned to various electrical components. Likewise, an electrical component can be protected by several fuses.

Only replace fuses when the cause of the problem has been solved. If a newly inserted fuse blows after a short time, you must have the electrical system checked by a specialised workshop as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

The high voltages in the electrical system can give serious electrical shocks, causing burns and even death!

- Never touch the electrical wiring of the ignition system.
- Take care not to cause short circuits in the electrical system.

⚠ WARNING

Using unsuitable fuses, repairing fuses or bridging a current circuit without fuses can cause a fire and serious injury.

- Never use a fuse with a higher value. Only replace fuses with a fuse of the same amperage (same colour and markings) and size.
- Never repair a fuse.
- Never replace a fuse by a metal strip, staple or similar.

CAUTION

- To prevent damage to the vehicle's electric system, before replacing a fuse always turn off the ignition, the lights and all electrical elements and remove the key from the ignition.
- If you replace a fuse with higher-rating fuse, you could cause damage to another part of the electrical system.
- Protect the fuse boxes when open to prevent the entry of dust or humidity as they can damage the electrical system.

Note

- One component may have more than one fuse.

- **Several components may run on a single fuse.**

Vehicle fuses

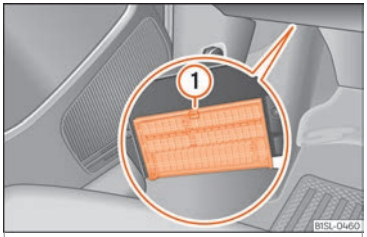


Fig. 83 Under the dashboard on the driver side: lid of the fuse box.

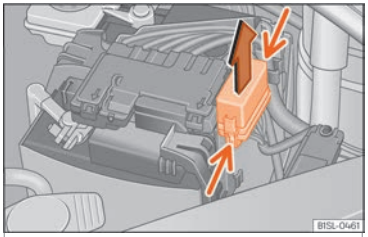


Fig. 84 In the engine compartment: lid of the fuse box.

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 35

Only replace fuses with a fuse of the same amperage (same colour and markings) and size.

Opening and closing the fuse box situated below the dash panel

- *Open:* Press the unlock button ››› Fig. 83 ① until it is possible to open the cover. Fold the cover down.
- *Close:* Fold the cover up in the opposite direction to the arrow until it clicks into the locking lever ①.

To open the engine compartment fuse box

- Open the bonnet ⚠ ››› page 193.
- Press the attachment tabs in the direction indicated by the arrow (thin arrows) to release the fuse box cover ››› Fig. 84.
- Then lift the cover out.
- To **fit** the cover, place it on the fuse box. Push the attachment tabs down, in the opposite direction indicated by the arrow until they click audibly into place.

CAUTION

- **Always carefully remove the fuse box covers and refit them correctly to avoid problems with your vehicle.**
- **Protect the fuse boxes when open to avoid the entry of dust or humidity. Dirt and humidity inside fuse boxes can cause damage to the electrical system.**

Note

In the vehicle, there are more fuses than those indicated in this chapter. These should only be changed by a specialised workshop.

Changing bulbs

Introduction

Changing bulbs requires a certain amount of manual skill. If you are unsure, SEAT recommends that you consult a technical service or request assistance from a specialist. In general a specialist is needed if, in addition to the bulbs, other vehicle components require removal.

You should store spare light bulbs in the vehicle for safety-relevant lights. Spare bulbs may be obtained from the technical services. In some countries, it is a legal requirement to carry spare bulbs in the vehicle.

Driving with faults and blown bulbs on the vehicle exterior lighting is against the law. »

Additional bulb specifications

The specifications of some headlamp bulbs and bulbs for the rear lamps fitted at the factory may be different to those of conventional bulbs. Bulb information is displayed on the bulb socket or on the bulb itself.

⚠ WARNING

If the road is not well-lit and the vehicle is not clearly visible to other drivers, there is a risk of accident.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to replace bulbs correctly may cause serious accidents.

- **Before carrying out any work in the engine compartment please read and observe the warnings** **››› page 193****. In any vehicle, the engine compartment is a hazardous area and could cause severe injury.**
- **The bulbs H4, HB4 and H7 are pressurised and might explode on changing them.**
- **Only replace the bulbs concerned when they have cooled.**
- **Never replace bulbs alone if you are not familiar with the operations necessary. If you are not sure about procedures then visit a specialised workshop to carry out the necessary work.**
- **Never touch the bulb glass directly. Fingerprints will be evaporated by the heat of the operating bulb thus "fogging" up the reflector.**
- **The headlamp frameworks in the engine compartment and the rear lamps contain sharp elements. Always protect your hands when changing bulbs.**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **After changing a bulb, if the rubber covers are not replaced correctly on the headlamp framework, the electrical installation may be damaged, especially if water is allowed to enter.**
- **Remove the ignition key before working on the electric system. Otherwise, a short circuit could occur.**
- **Switch off the lights and the parking light before changing a bulb.**
- **Take good care to avoid damaging any components.**

Replacing the bulbs in the headlights

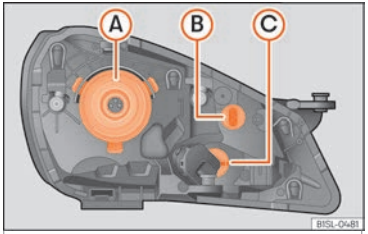


Fig. 85 In the engine compartment: Rear view of the front left headlight with rubber cover: Ⓐ dipped beam and main beam headlights, Ⓑ side lights and daytime driving lights and Ⓒ turn signal

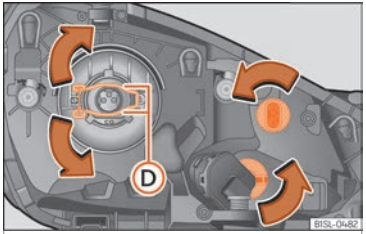


Fig. 86 Left headlight

There is no need to remove the headlight to replace bulbs.

Complete operations only in the sequence given:

Dipped beam and main beam headlights Fig. 85 Ⓐ	
1.	Open the bonnet ⚠ ››› page 193.
2.	Remove the bulb connector H4. Remove the rubber cover using the tabs.
	Press the retaining clip ››› Fig. 86 Ⓓ downwards in the direction of the arrow, unclip sideways, and remove it.
3.	Remove the bulb from the holder. If necessary, press the lock on the bulb holder.
4.	Replace the faulty bulb with a new identical bulb.
5.	Insert the bulb, return it to its position and insert the retaining clip ››› Fig. 86 Ⓓ
6.	Place the rubber cover and check that is in the correct position. Insert the connector to the bulb H4.

Side light and daytime lights Fig. 85 Ⓑ / Front turn indicator Fig. 85 Ⓒ	
1.	Open the bonnet ⚠ ››› page 193.
2.	Turn the bulb holder **in an anticlockwise direction** as far as it will go and remove it, along with the bulb, pulling backwards.
3.	Remove the bulb from the holder. If necessary, press the lock on the bulb holder.

Side light and daytime lights Fig. 85 Ⓑ / Front turn indicator Fig. 85 Ⓒ	
4.	Replace the faulty bulb with a new identical bulb.
5.	Insert the bulb holder in the headlight and turn it **clockwise** as far as the stop.

Note

The images show the left hand headlight from behind. The structure of the right hand side headlight is symmetric.

Replacing the front bumper bulbs

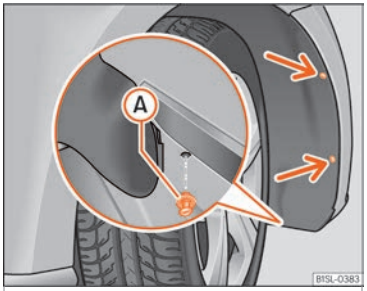


Fig. 87 In the front right arch trim: remove the retaining screws (arrows) and take out the expansive rivet Ⓐ.

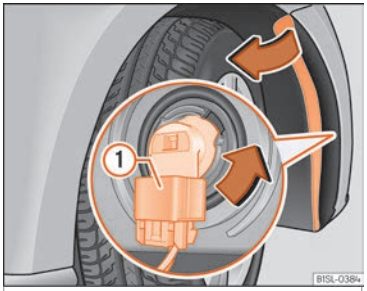


Fig. 88 Changing the bulbs in the headlights

Complete operations only in the sequence given:	
1.	Unscrew the 2 retaining screws of the wheel arch trim ››› Fig. 87 (arrows) with the screwdriver from the vehicle took kit ››› page 70.
2.	Unscrew the expansive rivet in the lower front part of the wheel arch trim Ⓐ with the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit and completely remove it ››› page 70.
3.	Carefully fold the wheel arch trim to the side.
4.	Release the connector ››› Fig. 88 ① and remove it.
5.	Turn the bulb holder ››› Fig. 88 in the direction of the arrow, **in an anticlockwise direction** as far as it will go and remove it, along with the bulb, pulling backwards.

»

Complete operations only in the sequence given:

6.	Replace the faulty bulb with a new identical bulb.
7.	Insert the bulb holder in the headlight and turn it **clockwise** as far as the stop.
8.	Plug the connector (1) into the bulb holder. The connector must audibly click into place.
9.	Replace the wheel arch trim into its position.
10.	Place the expansive rivet in the wheel arch trim and bumper and press it completely inwards ››› Fig. 87 (A).
11.	Securely screw the 2 retaining screws ››› Fig. 87 (arrows) with a screwdriver.

Changing the bulbs in the rear lights

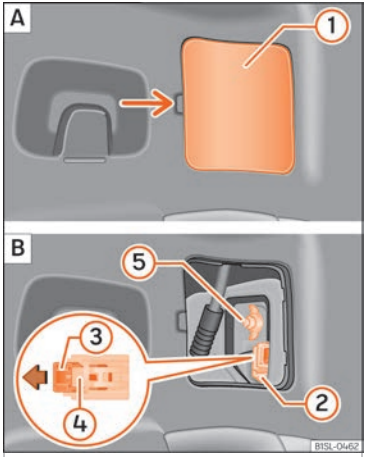


Fig. 89 On the side of the luggage compartment: A: remove the cover, B: remove the tail lights.

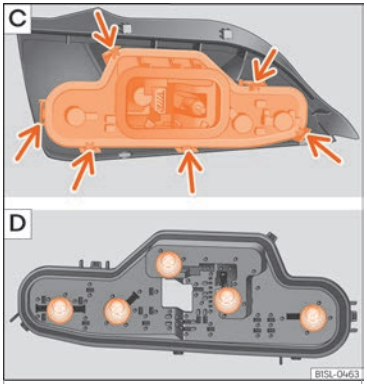


Fig. 90 Tail light unit: C: remove the bulb holder, D: remove the bulbs.

Complete operations only in the sequence given.

Removing the rear light units

1.	Open the rear lid ››› page 99.
2.	Carefully remove the cover (1) towards the lever ››› Fig. 89 **A**.
3.	Pull from the lock (3) in the connector (2) in the direction of the arrow ››› Fig. 89 **B**. Use the screwdriver from the on-board tools.
4.	Press position (4) and remove the connector (2) ››› Fig. 89 **B**.

5. Unscrew the wing nut (5) ››› Fig. 89 **B**.

6. Remove the tail light from the bodywork by carefully pulling backwards.

7. Disassemble the tail light unit and place it on a flat, clean surface.

To change the bulb

8. Unlock the bulb holder locking tab (arrow) ››› Fig. 90 **C** and remove the bulb holder from the tail light.

9. Replace the faulty bulb by a new identical bulb ››› Fig. 90 **D**.

10. Place the bulb holder in the tail light unit. The attachment tabs (arrow) should audibly click into place ››› Fig. 90 **C**.

Assembling the rear light units

11. Carefully insert the tail light unit into the opening in the bodywork.

12. Support the tail light with one hand in the assembly position and securely screw the wing nut with the other (5) ››› Fig. 89 **B**.

13. Ensure that the tail light unit has been correctly fitted and is firmly secured.

14. Insert the connector (2) into the bulb holder and press the lock (3) on the connector in the opposite direction to the arrow ››› Fig. 89 **B**.

15. Insert the cover. The cover should lock into place.

16. Close the rear lid ››› page 99.

Changing the number plate light

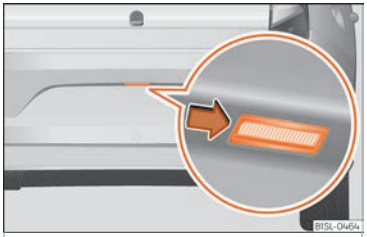


Fig. 91 In the rear bumper: remove the plate light.

Fig. 92 Number plate light: detach the bulb holder.

Complete operations only in the sequence given:

1. With one hand, press on the number plate light from left to right and remove it from the bumper ››› Fig. 91.

2. Detach the number plate light carefully from the bumper.

3. Turn the bulb holder with the bulb **anticlockwise** and remove it in the direction of the arrow ››› Fig. 92.

4. Replace the faulty bulb with a new identical bulb.

5. Place the bulb holder in the number plate light and press in the opposite direction to the arrow as far as possible ››› Fig. 92.

6. Insert the number plate light carefully into the left edge of the opening on the bumper. During this process, check that the assembly direction of the number plate light is correct, i.e. the spring must be on the right.

7. Insert the number plate light into the bumper until it audibly clicks into place.

Changing the side turn signal bulb

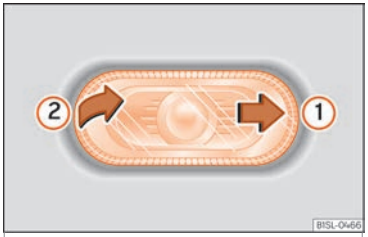


Fig. 93 Removing the side turn signal

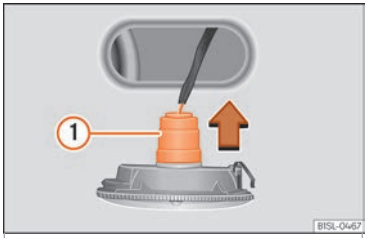


Fig. 94 Side turn light: bulb change.

Complete operations only in the sequence given:

1. With one hand move the side turn signal backwards ››› Fig. 93 (1).
2. Remove the side turn signal from the chassis by leverage (2).

Complete operations only in the sequence given:

3. Remove the bulb holder with the bulb in the direction of the arrow ››› Fig. 94 (1).
4. Remove the bulb holder bulb in a straight direction.
5. Replace the faulty bulb with a new identical bulb.
6. Install the bulb holder.
7. Place the side turn signal on the chassis on the side situated towards the rear of the vehicle until the spring clicks into the other side of the side turn signal.

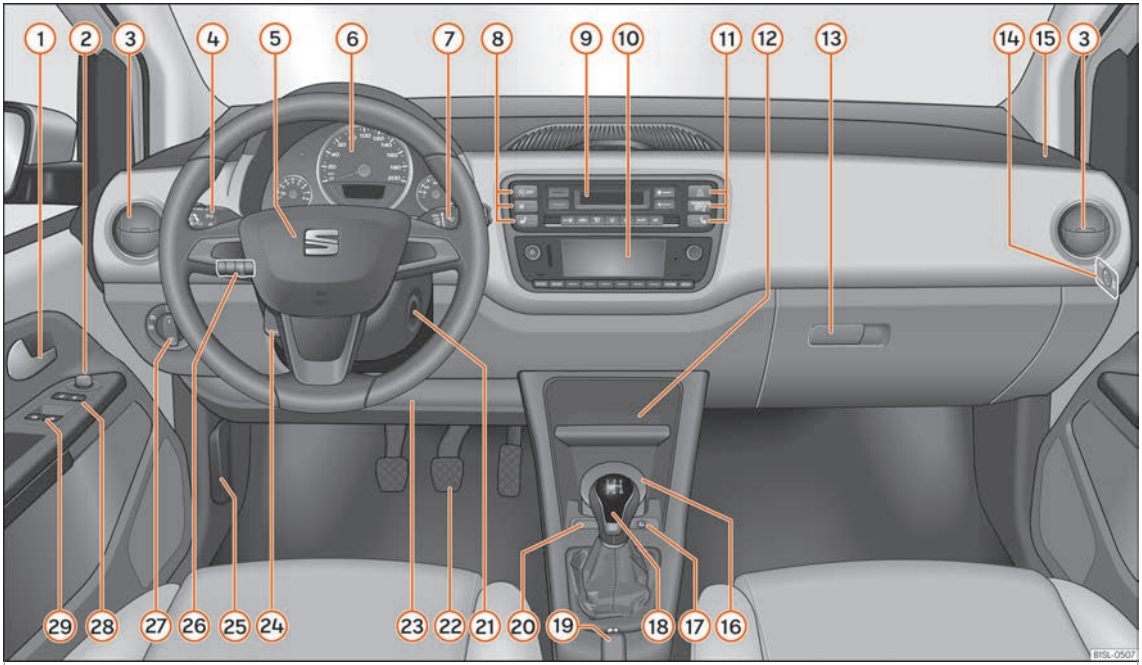


Fig. 95 Dash panel

Operation

General instrument panel

Instrument panel

Key to Fig. 95:

1. Door release lever 98
2. Turn switch for adjusting the exterior mirrors 110
   - Exterior mirror adjustment
   - Exterior mirror heating
3. Air vents 129
4. Lever for 103
   - Turn signals and main beam headlights
   - Cruise control system (CCS) 171
5. Steering wheel with horn and
   - Driver airbag 16
6. Instrument panel..... 88, 27
7. Windscreen wiper/ windscreen wash lever 108
   - Windscreen wipers
   - Rear window wiper
   - Lever with buttons for controlling the SEAT information system - , / 24
8. Controls for:
   - Start-Stop system button 170
   - Rear window heating button 129
   - Left seat heating controls 113
9. Switches for:
   - Heating and fresh air system 129
   - Manual air conditioning 129
   - Climatronic 129
10. Radio (factory fitted) 133
11. Controls for:
    - Hazard warning lights switch 70
    - Passenger front airbag off warning lamp 60
    - Right seat heating controls or rear window heating button (alternative position) 113, 129
12. Storage compartment with drink holder in the centre console 119
13. Handle of the storage compartment or storage compartment open[1] 115
14. In the side of the dash panel: Key switch for switching off the front passenger airbag[1] 60
15. Position of passenger front airbag on the dash panel 60
16. Ashtray* 119
17. 12 volt socket or cigarette lighter* 120, 120
18. Lever for:
    - Manual gearbox 159
    - Automatic gearbox 160
19. Handbrake 151
20. Button for:
    - City Safety Assist function 174
21. Ignition lock 149
22. Pedals 158
23. Storage compartment 115
24. Steering column adjustment lever 49
25. Open bonnet lever 193
26. Headlight range control 103
27. Light switch 103
28. Central locking button 94
29. Buttons for operating the front electric windows 101

[1] According to version

Instruments

View of instrument panel

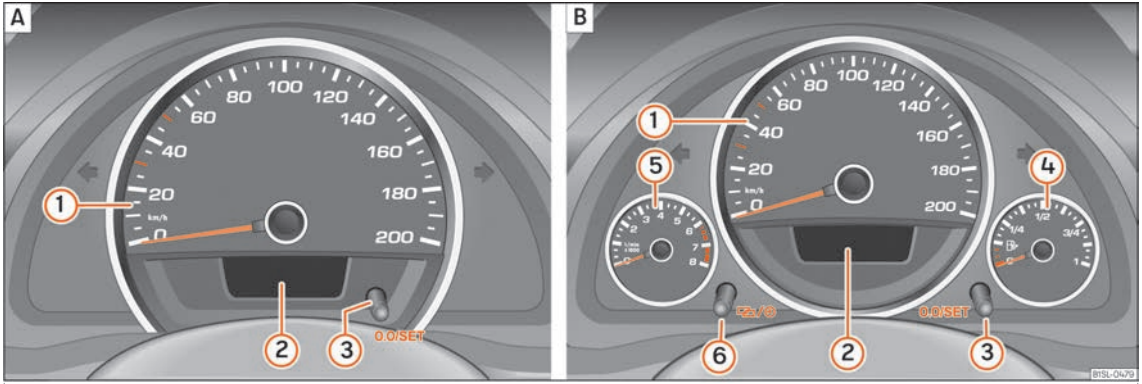


Fig. 96 Instrument panel, on the instrument panel: variant 1 (A) and variant 2 (B).

Details of the instruments ››› Fig. 96:

① **Speedometer**. Depending on the vehicle in km/h or in mph.

② **Displays on the screen**. 89

③ **Reset knob** for trip recorder (`trip`).

– Press the button 0.0/SET *briefly* to switch the trip odometer and odometer.

– Press the 0.0/SET *for 5 seconds* to reset the odometer to zero and, where necessary, other indicators on the multifunction display. 24

④ **Fuel reserve display**. 189

⑤ **Revolution counter** (with the engine running, in thousands of revolutions per minute).

The beginning of the red zone of the rev counter indicates the maximum speed in any gear after running-in and with the engine hot. However, it is advisable to change up a gear or move the selector lever to **D** (or lift your foot off the accelerator) before the needle reaches the red zone ››› ❶.

⑥ **Clock set button**.

– If necessary, change the time display by pressing the top and

bottom buttons of the rocker switch ››› Fig. 34 Ⓑ.

– Press the button to change the hour, so that it is flashing.

– To continue setting the time, press button 0.0/SET. Hold button down to scroll through the numbers quickly.

– Press the button again to change the minutes, so that it flashes.

– To continue setting the time, press button 0.0/SET. Hold button down to scroll through the numbers quickly.

– Press the button again to end the clock setting.

CAUTION

- **When the engine is cold, avoid high revs and heavy acceleration and do not make the engine work hard.**
- **To prevent damage to the engine, the rev counter needle should only remain in the red zone for a short period of time.**

For the sake of the environment

Changing up a gear in time reduces fuel consumption and noise.

Indications on the display

A variety of information can be viewed on the instrument panel display ››› Fig. 96 ②, depending on the vehicle equipment:

- Warning and information messages.
- Odometer.
- Time.
- Outside temperature.
- Selector lever positions ››› page 158.
- Recommended gear (manual gearbox) ››› page 158.
- Multifunction display (MFI) ››› page 24
- Service interval display ››› page 90.
- Start-Stop system status display ››› page 170.
- Fuel gauge ››› page 189.
- Seat belt status display for rear seats ››› page 53.

Warning and information messages

The system runs a check on certain components and functions when the ignition is switched on and while the vehicle is moving. Faults in the operation are displayed on the screen using red and yellow symbols on the instrument panel display (››› page 27) and, in some cases, with audible warnings. The display may vary according to the type of instrument panel fitted.

Priority 1 warning (red symbols)

Symbol flashing or lit; partly combined with audible warnings.
Stop the vehicle! It is dangerous ››› ⚠!
Check the function that is faulty and repair it. If necessary, request assistance from specialised personnel.

Priority 2 warning (yellow symbols)

Symbol flashing or lit; partly combined with audible warnings.
A faulty function, or fluids which are below the correct levels may cause damage to the vehicle! ››› ❗
Check the faulty function as soon as possible. If necessary, request assistance from specialised personnel.

Odometer

The *odometer* registers the total distance travelled by the car.

The *odometer* (`trip`) shows the distance travelled since the last odometer reset. The last figure indicates 100 m.

Outside temperature indicator!

When the outside temperature is below +4°C (+39°F), the "ice crystal" symbol (warning of risk of freezing) is also displayed next to the temperature. At first this symbol flashes and then it remains lit until the outside temperature rises above +6°C (+43°F) ››› ⚠.

»

When the vehicle is stationary or travelling at very low speeds, the temperature displayed may be slightly higher than the actual outside temperature as a result of heat coming from the engine.

The temperatures measured range from -40°C to +50°C (-40°F to +122°F).

Selector lever position

The range of engaged gears of the selector lever is shown on the side of the lever, and on the instrument panel display. In positions **D** and **M**, and with the Tiptronic, the corresponding gear is also indicated on the display.

Recommended gear* (manual gearbox)

The recommended gear to save fuel can be displayed on the instrument panel display while you are driving ››› page 158.

Seat belt status display for the rear seats*

The seat belt status display on the instrument panel display informs the driver, when the ignition is switched on, whether any passengers in the rear seats have fastened their seat belts ››› page 53.

Start-Stop system status display

The instrument panel display shows information on the current status ››› page 170.

⚠ WARNING

If the warning lamps are ignored, the vehicle may stall in traffic, or may cause accidents and severe injuries.

- **Never ignore the warning lamps.**
- **Stop the vehicle safely as soon as possible.**
- **A faulty vehicle represents a risk of accident for the driver and for other road users. If necessary, switch on the hazard warning lamps and put out the warning triangle to advise other drivers.**
- **Park the vehicle away from traffic and ensure that no highly flammable materials are under the vehicle that could come into contact with the exhaust system (e.g. dry grass, fuel).**

⚠ WARNING

Even though outside temperatures are above freezing, some roads and bridges may be icy.

- **At outside temperatures above +4°C (+39°F), even when the "ice crystal symbol" is not visible, there may still be patches of ice on the road.**
- **Do not rely on the outside temperature indicator!**

ⓘ CAUTION

Failure to heed the warning lamps when they appear may result in faults in the vehicle.

Note

- **Different versions of the instrument panel are available and therefore the versions and instructions on the display may vary.**
- **When several warnings are active at the same time, the symbols are shown successively for a few seconds and will stay on until the fault is rectified.**

Service interval display

The inspection message appears on the instrument panel display ››› Fig. 96 ②.

SEAT distinguishes between services *with* engine oil change (Oil Change Service) and services *without* engine oil change (Inspection Service). The service interval display only gives information for service dates which involve an engine oil change. The dates of the remaining services (e.g. the next Inspection Service or change of brake fluid) are listed on the label attached to the door strut, or in the Maintenance Programme.

The set service intervals have been specified with **the service dependent on time/distance travelled**.

Inspection reminder

If the inspection period is due to expire shortly, **Inspection reminder** appears when starting the ignition abbreviated to InSP and a warning in km. The number of kilometres shown is the maximum number that may be driven until the next service.

Service due

After **the service date**, an audible warning is given when the ignition is switched on and the abbreviation InSP displayed on the screen flashes for a few seconds.

Inspection of compressed natural gas tanks (CNG) reminder

When less than 90 days for the review of the compressed natural gas tanks (CNG), when the ignition is switched on, the instrument panel display will a **reminder for review of the gas tanks** and an audible warning will be emitted.

As approaches the service date of inspection of the gas tanks, the message and the audible warning will stop modify accordingly.

Note

- **The service message disappears after a few seconds, when the engine is started or when OK is pressed on the windscreen wiper lever.**
- **In vehicles whose batteries have been disconnected for a long period of time, it will not be possible to calculate the next service date. Therefore the service interval display may not be correct. In this case, bear in mind the maximum service intervals permitted** **›››** page 217**.**
- **If the period of 48 months for an inspection at a specialised workshop of compressed natural gas tanks (CNG) is exceeded, the vehicle may not working in this mode.**

Opening and closing

Vehicle key set

Remote control vehicle key*

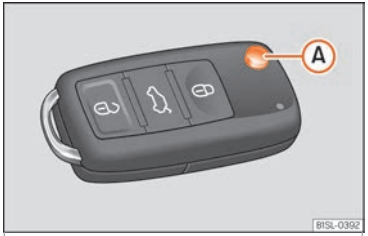


Fig. 97 Remote control key

Remote control key

With the vehicle key the vehicle may be locked or unlocked remotely ››› page 94.

The vehicle key includes an emitter and battery. The receiver is in the interior of the vehicle. The range of the vehicle key with remote control and new battery is several metres around the vehicle.

If it is not possible to open or close the vehicle using the remote control key, this should be re-synchronised ››› page 94 or the battery changed ››› page 93.

Different keys belonging to the vehicle may be used.

Folding the key shaft in and out

When the button is pressed ››› Fig. 97 (A), the key shaft is released and unfolds.

To *fold it* press the button and fold the key shaft in until it locks in place.

Spare key

To obtain a spare key and other vehicle keys, the vehicle chassis number is required.

Each new key must contain a microchip and be coded with the data from the vehicle electronic immobiliser. A vehicle key will not work if it does not contain a microchip or the microchip has not been encoded. This is also true for keys cut for the vehicle.

The vehicle keys or new spare keys can be obtained from a SEAT dealership, a Specialised workshop or approved key service qualified to create this kind of key.

New keys or spare keys must be synchronised before use ››› page 94.

⚠ WARNING

Careless or incorrect use of vehicle keys may result in severe injury and accident.

- **Always take all the keys with you whenever you leave the vehicle. Children and unauthorised individuals could lock the doors or the boot hatch, start the engine or turn on the ignition, activating electrical systems, the electric windows, for example.**
- **Never leave children or disabled people alone in the car. They could be trapped in the car in an emergency and will not be able to get themselves to safety. For example, depending on the time of the year, temperatures inside a locked and closed vehicle can be extremely high or extremely low resulting in serious injuries and illness or even death, particularly for young children.**
- **Never remove the key from the ignition if the vehicle is in motion. The steering may lock and it will not be possible to turn the steering wheel.**

CAUTION

The remote control key contains electronic components. Protect them from damage, impacts and humidity.

Note

- **Only use the key button when you require the corresponding function. Pushing the button unnecessarily could accidentally unlock the vehicle or trigger the alarm. It is also possible even when you are outside the radius of action.**
- **Remote control key operation can be greatly influenced by overlapping radio signals around the vehicle working in the**

same range of frequencies (for example, radio transmitters, mobile telephones).

- **Obstacles between the remote control and the vehicle, bad weather conditions and draining batteries can considerably reduce the range of the remote control.**
- **If the buttons of the vehicle key are pressed ››› Fig. 97 or one of the central locking buttons ››› page 94 is pressed repeatedly in quick succession, the central locking briefly disconnects as protection against overloading. The vehicle is then unlocked. Lock it if necessary.**

Mechanical vehicle key

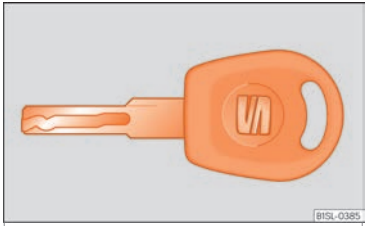


Fig. 98 Vehicle mechanical key

The vehicle key set may include a mechanical key ››› Fig. 98.

Duplicate keys

To obtain a spare key and other vehicle keys, the vehicle chassis number is required.

Each new key must contain a microchip and be coded with the data from the vehicle electronic immobiliser. A vehicle key will not work if it does not contain a microchip or the microchip has not been encoded. This is also true for keys cut for the vehicle.

The vehicle keys or new spare keys can be obtained from a SEAT dealership, a specialised workshop or an approved locksmith qualified to create them.

Control lamp on the vehicle key

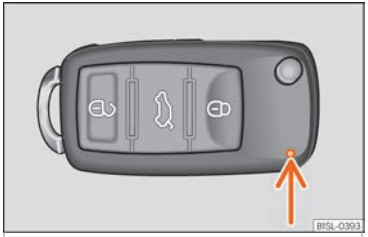


Fig. 99 Control lamp on the vehicle key

When a button on the vehicle key is pressed, the control lamp flashes ››› Fig. 99 (arrow) once briefly. If the button is pressed and held, the indicator blinks several times, for example: for the convenience opening function.

When the control lamp does not light upon pushing a button, the vehicle key batteries must be changed ››› page 93.

Replacing the battery

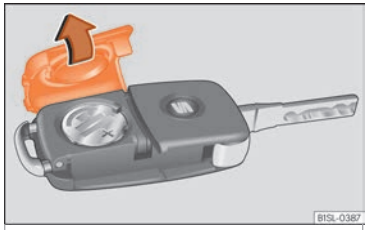


Fig. 100 Vehicle key: battery compartment cover.

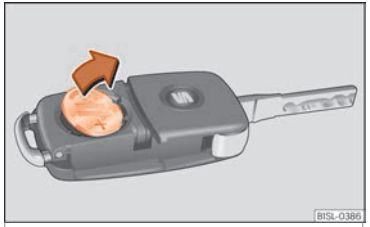


Fig. 101 Vehicle key: remove the battery.

»

SEAT recommend having the batteries changed in a specialised workshop.

The battery is located to the rear of the vehicle key, under a cover.

Changing the battery

- Unfold the vehicle key blade ››› page 92.
- Remove the cover from the back of the vehicle key ››› Fig. 100 in the direction of the arrow ››› ❗.
- Extract the battery from the compartment using a suitable thin object ››› Fig. 101.
- Place the new battery in the compartment, pressing in the direction of the arrow as shown ››› Fig. 101 ››› ❗.
- Fit the battery compartment cover, pressing in the direction of the arrow as shown ››› Fig. 100 until it clicks into place.

CAUTION

- **If the battery is not changed correctly, the vehicle key may be damaged.**
- **Use of unsuitable batteries may damage the vehicle key. For this reason, always replace the dead battery with another of the same voltage, size and specifications.**
- **When fitting the battery, check that the polarity is correct.**

For the sake of the environment

Please dispose of your used batteries correctly and with respect for the environment.

Synchronising the vehicle key

If the 🔒 button is pressed frequently outside of the vehicle range, it is possible that the vehicle can no longer be locked or unlocked using the key. In this case, the vehicle key must be synchronised once more as follows:

- Unfold the vehicle key blade ››› page 92.
- Press the 🔒 button on the vehicle key. For this, it must remain with the vehicle.
- Open the vehicle within one minute using the key shaft.
- Turn on the ignition using the vehicle key. The key has been synchronised.
- If necessary, fit the cap.

Central locking* and locking system

Introduction

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 10

Central locking functions correctly when all the doors and the rear lid are correctly shut. If the driver door is open, the vehicle *cannot* be locked with the key.

The battery of an unlocked vehicle parked for a long period (e.g. in a private garage) may run down and fail to start the motor.

⚠ WARNING

The incorrect use of the central locking system may cause serious injuries.

- **The central locking system will lock all doors. A vehicle locked from the inside can prevent any non-authorised individual from opening the doors and accessing the vehicle. Nevertheless, in case of emergency or accident, locked doors will complicate access to the vehicle interior to help the passengers.**
- **Never leave children or disabled people alone in the vehicle. The central locking button can be used to lock all the doors from within. Therefore, passengers will be locked inside the vehicle. Individuals locked in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.**
- **Depending on the time of the year, temperatures inside a locked and closed vehicle can be extremely high or extremely low resulting in serious injuries and illness or even death, particularly for young children.**
- **Never leave individuals locked in a closed and locked vehicle. In case of emergency,**

they may not be able to exit the vehicle by themselves or get help.

Description of the central locking system

The central locking system allows all doors and the rear lid to be locked and unlocked centrally.

- From outside, using the vehicle key.
- From inside, by pushing the central locking button ››› page 97.

The central locking system can be activated or deactivated at a specialised workshop.

In case of a vehicle key fault or central locking system fault, all doors can be locked or unlocked manually.

Locking the vehicle after the airbags have been deployed

If the airbags are deployed due to an accident, the vehicle will be automatically and completely unlocked. Depending on the amount of damage, it can be locked following an accident in the following ways:

Function	Necessary operations
Lock the vehicle, **by pushing the central locking button**:	– Turn off the ignition and turn it on again. – Push the central locking button 🔒.
Use the key to lock the vehicle:	– Turn off the ignition and turn it on again. **OR:** Remove the key from the ignition. – Open any door just once. – Lock the vehicle with the key.

Note

If the buttons of the vehicle key are pressed ››› **page 92** **or one of the central locking buttons ›››** **Fig. 104** **is pressed repeatedly in short succession, the central locking briefly disconnects as protection against overloading. In this case, the vehicle remains unlocked for about 30 seconds. If no door nor the rear lid is opened during this time, the vehicle will then automatically lock.**

Unlocking and locking the vehicle from outside

Fig. 102 Buttons on the vehicle key

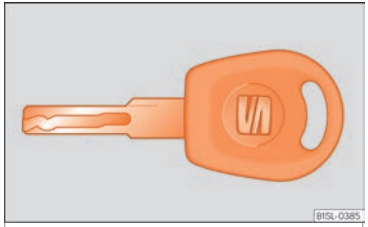


Fig. 103 Vehicle mechanical key

Central locking

Function	Handling the buttons on the vehicle ››› Fig. 102
Unlocking the vehicle.	Press button 🔓.

»

Function	Handling the buttons on the vehicle ››› Fig. 102
Lock the vehicle.	Press button 🔒.
Unlocking the rear lid.	Press button 🚗.
Locking the rear lid.	Press button 🚗.

Function	Handling the vehicle key ››› Fig. 102 in the lock cylinder or with the vehicle mechanical key ››› Fig. 103.
Unlocking the vehicle.	Insert the vehicle key into the lock cylinder of the driver door and turn the key **in an anticlockwise direction**.
Lock the vehicle.	Insert the vehicle key into the lock cylinder of the driver door and turn the key **in a clockwise direction**.
Unlocking the rear lid.	Insert the vehicle key into the lock cylinder of the driver door and turn the key **in an anticlockwise direction**.
Locking the rear lid.	Insert the vehicle key into the lock cylinder of the driver door and turn the key **in a clockwise direction**.

Warning: in accordance with the central locking function set by a specialised workshop, in order to unlock all the doors and the rear lid, press the 🔓 button twice.

The vehicle key only locks and unlocks the vehicle if it is within range of the vehicle and if the battery has enough power.

- Upon locking the vehicle, all turn signals will flash *once* in confirmation.
- Upon unlocking the vehicle, all turn signals will flash *twice* in confirmation.

If the turn signals *do not* flash in confirmation, at least one of the doors or the rear lid has been left unlocked.

If the driver door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked with the key. If you unlock the vehicle without opening any doors or the rear lid, it will lock again automatically after a few seconds. This function prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked if the unlocking button is pressed by mistake.

Mechanical locking

Function	Using the vehicle's mechanical key ››› Fig. 103 in the lock cylinder
Locking the driver door manually.	To *unlock*, insert the vehicle key into the lock cylinder of the driver door and turn the key **in an anticlockwise direction**.
	To *lock*, insert the vehicle key into the lock cylinder of the driver door and turn the key **in a clockwise direction**.

Function	Using the vehicle's mechanical key ››› Fig. 103 in the lock cylinder
Locking and unlocking the rear lid.	To *unlock*, insert the vehicle key into the lock cylinder of the driver door and turn the key **in an anticlockwise direction**.
	To *lock*, insert the vehicle key into the lock cylinder of the driver door and turn the key **in a clockwise direction**.

If the driver's door is open, it cannot be locked with the vehicle key.

Locking or unlocking the vehicle from the inside

Fig. 104 On the driver's door: central locking button.

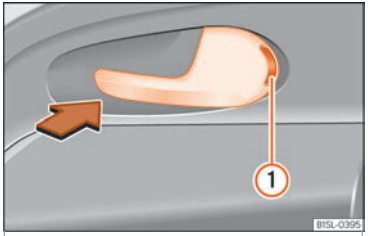


Fig. 105 On the passenger door: door handle for mechanical locking.

Central locking

Push the button ››› Fig. 104:	
	Unlocking the vehicle.
	Locking the vehicle.

The central locking button is still operative when the ignition is switched off.

If the vehicle has been locked with the vehicle key, the central locking button does not operate.

Please note the following when you use the central locking button to lock your vehicle:

- The "Safe" security system **will not** activate ››› page 97.
- It will not be possible to open the doors or the rear lid from the *outside*. This may offer extra safety, for example when stopped at traffic lights.
- The doors can be opened and unlocked individually from the inside by pulling the door handle. If necessary, pull the door release lever twice.
- The driver door cannot be locked when open. This avoids locking the vehicle key inside the vehicle when there is nobody inside.

Mechanical locking

The doors are locked by pressing the door lever, so that the red mark becomes visible ››› Fig. 105 ①.

To unlock a door, pull its corresponding door lever.

If the vehicle becomes locked, take note of the following:

- The "Safe" security system **will not** activate ››› page 97.
- It will not be possible to open the doors from the *outside*, when stopped at traffic lights for example.
- The doors can be opened and unlocked individually from the inside by pulling the door handle.
- The driver door cannot be locked using the central locking system when it is still open. This avoids locking the vehicle key inside the vehicle when there is nobody inside.

Safe security system "Safe"*

Function	Necessary operations
Lock the vehicle and activate the "Safe" security system.	Press the button *once* on the vehicle key.

»

Function	Necessary operations
Lock the vehicle without activating the "Safe" security system.	Press the button on the vehicle key *twice*.
	Press the central locking button on the driver door once.

When the vehicle is locked, the "Safe" security system deactivates the door handles, preventing people from opening the vehicle. The doors cannot be opened from inside ››› ⚠.

Upon switching off the ignition, the instrument panel display will show that the "deadlock" is activated or (**SAFELOCK** or **SAFELOCK**).

When the "Safe" security system is deactivated, the following occurs:

- The vehicle can be opened and unlocked from the inside using an inside door handle.

Control lamp on the driver door

When the vehicle is locked:	Meaning
The red LED flashes for approximately 2 seconds at short intervals and then more slowly.	The "Safe" security system is switched on.
The red LED flashes for about two seconds then turns off. After 30 seconds, the LED flashes again.	The "Safe" security system is switched off.
The red LED flashes for about two seconds at short intervals. Subsequently, the light will remain switched on for about 30 seconds.	There is a fault in the locking system. Contact a specialised workshop.

⚠ WARNING

Careless use of the "Safe" security system can cause serious injury.

- **Never leave anybody inside the vehicle if it has been locked using the key. When the "Safe" security system is activated, doors cannot be opened from the inside!**
- **When the doors are locked, it is difficult to get to passengers in the vehicle interior in case of an emergency. Passengers could remain trapped inside and unable to unlock the doors in case of an emergency.**

Doors

Introduction

⚠ WARNING

If a door is not correctly closed, it could open unexpectedly when driving and cause serious injuries.

- **Always stop immediately and close the door.**
- **When closing, ensure that the door has closed correctly. A closed door should be flush with the corresponding parts of the bodywork.**
- **Open and close doors only when nobody is in the way of the door.**

⚠ WARNING

A door held open by its retainer could be blown closed by the wind or close if the vehicle is on a hill, causing injury.

- **When opening and closing doors, always use the door handle.**

Childproof lock

Fig. 106 Childproof lock on the left hand side door

The childproof lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside. This system prevents minors from opening a door accidentally while the vehicle is running.

This function is independent of the vehicle electronic opening and locking systems. It only affects rear doors. It can only be activated and deactivated manually, as described below:

Activating the childproof lock

– Unlock the vehicle and open the door in which you wish to activate the childproof lock.

– With the door open, rotate the groove in the door using the ignition key, anti-clockwise for the left-hand side doors ››› Fig. 106 and clockwise for the right-hand side doors.

Deactivating the childproof lock

– Unlock the vehicle and open the door whose childproof lock you want to deactivate.

– With the door open, rotate the groove in the door using the ignition key, anti-clockwise for the right-hand side doors, and clockwise for the left-hand side doors ››› Fig. 106.

Once the childproof lock is activated, the door can only be opened from the outside. The childproof lock can be activated or deactivated by inserting the key in the groove when the door is open, as described above.

Rear lid

Introduction

⚠ WARNING

Careless and unsuitable locking, opening and closing of the rear lid can cause accidents and serious injury.

- **Open and close the rear lid only when nobody is in the way.**
- **Do not close the rear lid by pushing it down with your hand on the rear window. This could break and cause injury.**
- **Ensure the rear lid is locked after closing, otherwise, it may open unexpectedly while driving. A closed rear lid should be flush with the corresponding parts of the bodywork.**
- **Always keep the rear lid closed while driving to avoid toxic gases entering the vehicle interior.**
- **Do not open the rear lid when there is a load installed, for example a carrier system. Likewise, the boot hatch cannot be opened when a load is attached to it, for example bicycles. An open rear lid could close itself if there is an additional weight on it. If necessary, press down on the rear lid and remove the load.**
- **Close and lock both the rear lid and all the other doors when you are not using the vehicle. Ensure that nobody remains inside the vehicle.**
- **Never allow children to play inside or around the vehicle without supervision, especially if the rear lid is open. Children could enter the luggage compartment, close the rear lid and become trapped. Depending on the time of the year, temperatures inside a locked and closed vehicle can be extremely high or extremely low resulting in serious injuries and illness or even death, particularly for young children.**
- **Never leave children or disabled people alone in the vehicle. If the vehicle key or the central locking button is used, they may be locked in the vehicle.**

ⓘ CAUTION

Before opening the rear lid, ensure that there is sufficient free space to open and close it, for example if you are in a garage.

Opening the rear lid

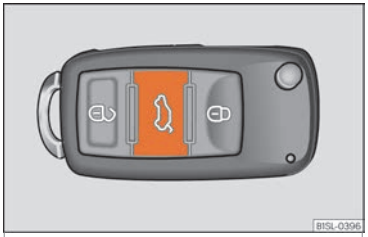


Fig. 107 On the vehicle key: button to unlock and open the boot hatch.

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 11

If bicycles are attached to a rack on the boot hatch, for example, in some cases, it may not open automatically ››› ⚠. Remove the load from the carrier and support the open rear lid.

Opening with central locking

- Press the button on the vehicle key ››› Fig. 107 for about one second to unlock the rear lid.
- **OR:** Press the button on the vehicle key until the rear lid opens automatically several centimetres.
- Opening the rear lid with the button.

Opening with the vehicle mechanical key

- Insert the vehicle key into the lock cylinder of the driver door and turn the key **in an anti-clockwise direction** ››› page 94.
- Opening the rear lid with the button.

⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable or careless unlocking and opening of the rear lid could cause serious injuries.

- **If there is a loaded luggage carrier on the rear lid, it could be unlocked or open but not recognised as such. An unlocked or open rear lid could open unexpectedly while driving.**

Note

At outside temperatures of less than 0°C (+32°F), the pressurised gas struts cannot always automatically lift the rear lid. In this case, open the rear lid manually.

Closing the rear lid

Fig. 108 Rear lid open: space for pulling.

Closing the rear lid

- Grab the handgrip inside the rear lid ››› Fig. 108 (arrow).
- Push the rear lid downwards until it locks into place in the lock.
- Ensure that it is correctly closed by pulling on it firmly.

Locking the rear lid with central locking*

If you unlock the vehicle without opening any doors or the rear lid, it will lock again automatically after about 30 seconds. This function prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked if the unlocking button is pressed by mistake.

Locking is only possible when the rear lid is correctly and fully closed.

- The rear lid is also locked by a central locking.
- If the vehicle rear lid is locked or unlocked using the button of the vehicle key, when it is closed again it will lock automatically.
- A closed but not locked rear lid will lock automatically at a speed above about 9 km/h (6 mph).

Locking the rear lid with the vehicle mechanical key

Locking is only possible when the rear lid is correctly and fully closed.

- Insert the vehicle key into the lock cylinder of the driver door and turn the key **in a clockwise direction** ››› page 94.

⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable or careless closing and locking of the rear lid could cause serious injuries.

- **Never leave the vehicle unattended, or allow children to play inside or around the vehicle without supervision, especially if the rear lid is open. Children could enter the luggage compartment, close the rear lid and become trapped. A locked vehicle can be subjected to extremely high and low temperatures, depending on the time of year, thus causing serious injuries/illness and even death.**

Note

Before closing the rear lid, make sure that the key has not been left inside the luggage compartment.

Controls for the windows

Opening and closing the windows electrically

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 13

⚠ WARNING

Careless use of the electric windows can cause serious injury.

- **Only operate the electric windows when nobody is in the way.**
- **Never leave children or disabled people alone in the vehicle if the doors are to be locked. The windows cannot be opened in case of an emergency.**
- **Always take all the keys with you whenever you leave the vehicle. After turning off the ignition, the windows can be opened and closed for a short time using the buttons on the door as long as the driver door or passenger side door is not open.**

CAUTION

When the windows are open, rain can enter the vehicle, dampening the interior equipment and causing damage to the vehicle.

Side-opening rear windows

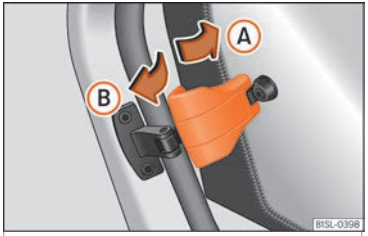


Fig. 109 Lever to open and close the rear window

Opening

Pull the release lever in the direction of arrow (A) and press outward until the lever engages.

Closing

Pull the release lever in the direction of arrow (B) and then press the lever backward until it engages.

Sliding/tilting electric panoramic sunroof

Opening and closing the panoramic sunroof

Read the additional information carefully
››› page 13

The sliding/tilting sunroof only works when switched on. After switching off, it is still possible to open or close the sliding/tilting sunroof during a short space of time provided that neither the driver nor passenger door is opened.

All operations are interrupted when the rotary knob is actuated.

If it were not possible to close the sliding/tilting sunroof electrically, it would need to be closed manually. It is not possible to do an emergency close of the sliding/tilting sunroof without removing components of the vehicle. In such a case, obtain professional assistance.

Sliding blind

With the roof grab handle situated in the rear part of the roof opening, it is possible to move the sliding blind to the required position.

⚠ WARNING

If the sliding/tilting electric panoramic sunroof is used negligently or without paying due attention, it can cause serious injury.

- **The sliding/tilting sunroof should only be opened or closed when no one is blocking its path.**
- **After switching off, it is still possible to open or close the sliding/tilting sunroof during a short space of time provided that neither the driver nor passenger door is opened.**

CAUTION

- **To prevent damage, when there are winter temperatures any ice or snow that there may be on the roof of the vehicle must be removed before opening or raising the sliding/tilting electric panoramic sunroof.**
- **Before leaving the vehicle or in the case of heavy rain, the sliding/tilting sunroof must always be closed. With the sliding/tilting sunroof open or raised, water can enter the passenger compartment and can cause considerable damage to the electrical system. As a result, other damage can occur in the vehicle.**
- **In the case of heavy rain, if the sliding/tilting sunroof is open, the interior equipment of the vehicle may get wet, destroying the seat heating and damaging the electrical system of the vehicle.**

Note

- **Leaves and other loose objects that land in the guides of the sliding/tilting sunroof should be removed periodically by hand or using a vacuum cleaner.**
- **If the sliding/tilting sunroof does not work correctly, the anti-trap function will not work either. In this case, you should take the vehicle to a specialised workshop.**
- **The convenience position permits sufficient ventilation with a level of sound produced by low wind.**

Anti-trap function of the sliding/tilting electric panoramic sunroof

The anti-trap function can reduce the risk of injury when closing the sliding/tilting electric panoramic sunroof ››› ⚠. If the sliding/tilting sunroof encounters resistance or an obstacle when closing, it will immediately reopen.

- Check why the sliding/tilting sunroof has not closed.
- Try to close it again.
- If it is still not possible to close it due to an obstacle or resistance, it will remain in the corresponding position. Close it without the anti-trap function.

Closing the sliding/tilting electric panoramic sunroof without the anti-trap function

- Within about 5 seconds of activating the anti-trap function, pull knob ››› Fig. 13 (5) until the sliding/tilting sunroof is fully closed.
- **As such, the sliding/tilting sunroof will close without the anti-trap function!**
- If the sunroof still cannot be closed, visit a specialised workshop.

If the knob is released during the closing operation, the sliding/tilting electric panoramic sunroof opens automatically.

⚠ WARNING

Closing the sliding/tilting electric panoramic sunroof without the anti-trap function can result in serious injury.

- **The sliding/tilting sunroof should always be closed carefully.**
- **No person should ever remain in the way of the sliding/tilting sunroof, especially when closing without the anti-trap function.**
- **The anti-trap function does not prevent fingers or other parts of the body from becoming trapped against the roof frame and injuries occurring.**

Lights and visibility

Lights

Control lamps

It lights up

Rear fog light switched on ››› page 22.

It lights up

Left or right turn signal.

The control lamp flashes twice as fast when a vehicle turn signal is faulty. If necessary, check the vehicle's lights.

It lights up

Main beam on or flasher on ››› page 105.

Several warning and control lamps light up for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, signalling that the function is being verified. They will switch off after a few seconds.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the safety warnings ››› ⚠ in Control and warning lamps on page 27.

Switching lights on and off

Fig. 110 On the side of the steering wheel: diagram of some of the types of light switch

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 22

The driver is personally responsible for the correct use and adjustment of the lights in all situations.

Audible warnings to advise the driver that the lights have not been switched off

If the key is not in the ignition and the driver door is open, an audible warning signal is heard in the following cases: this will remind you to turn the light off.

- When the light switch is in position .
- When the light switch is in position .

»

⚠ WARNING

The side lights or daytime running lights are not bright enough to illuminate the road ahead and to ensure that other road users are able to see you.

- **Always use your dipped beam head lights if it is raining or if visibility is poor.**

⚠ WARNING

If the headlights are set too high and not used correctly, there is a risk of dazzling or distracting other road users. This could result in a serious accident.

- **Always make sure that the headlights are correctly adjusted.**

Note

The legal requirements regarding the use of vehicle lights in each country must be observed.

Light and visibility: functions

Parking light remains on both sides

If when switching off the ignition, the light control remains in the position ⇒ and the vehicle is closed from outside, both headlights, in addition to the side lights and the rear lights will light up.

Daytime running lights

The daytime driving light consists of individual lights in the front headlamps.

When the daytime driving light is switched on, only the individual lights come on ››› ⚠.

The daytime lights are switched on each time the ignition is turned on if the light setting is in position **0** or in position **AUTO**.

⚠ WARNING

If the road is not well-lit and the vehicle is not clearly visible to other drivers, an accident may occur.

- **Never use the daytime driving light if the road is not well-lit as a result of the weather conditions and poor visibility. The daytime driving lights are not bright enough to illuminate the road ahead and to ensure that other road users are able to see you.**
- **The rear lights do not come on with the daytime driving light. A vehicle which does not have the rear lights on may not be visible to other drivers in the darkness, if it is raining or in conditions of poor visibility.**

Note

The headlights, rear lights and turn signals may mist up temporarily on the inside in cool or damp weather. This is normal and in no way effects the useful life of the vehicle lighting system.

Automatic dipped beam control AUTO*

The automatic dipped beam control is merely intended as an aid and is not able to recognise all driving situations.

When the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the vehicle lights and the instrument panel and switch lighting switch on and off automatically in the following situations ››› ⚠ **in Light and visibility: functions on page 104**:

Automatic switching on	Automatic switching off
The photo sensor detects *darkness*, for example, when driving through a tunnel.	When adequate lighting is detected.
The rain sensor detects rain and activates the windscreen wipers.	When the windscreen wipers have been inactive for a few minutes.

⚠ WARNING

If the road is not well lit and other road users cannot see the vehicle well enough or at all, accidents may occur.

- **The automatic dipped beam control (AUTO) only switches on the dipped beam when there are no changes in brightness, and not, for example when it is foggy.**

"Coming home" and "Leaving home" function (guidance lights)

The "Coming Home" and "Leaving Home" function lights up the vehicle's immediate proximity when getting into and out of it in the dark.

The "Coming home" function is switched on manually. However, the "Leaving home" function is automatically controlled by a rain and light sensor.

Activating the "Coming Home" function

- Switch the ignition off.
- Activates the headlight flasher for approx. 1 second ››› page 23.

When the driver door is opened, the "Coming Home" lighting comes on. The *delay in switching off the headlights* is counted from when the last door or rear lid of the vehicle is closed.

Deactivating the "Coming Home" function

- It is automatically deactivated once the time set for the light switch-off delay has elapsed.
- **OR:** it is automatically deactivated if, 30 seconds after the function has been activated, any vehicle door or the rear lid is still open.
- **OR:** rotate the light switch to position **0**.
- **OR:** switch on the ignition.

Activating the "Leaving Home" function

- Unlock the vehicle (the light switch must be at the **AUTO** position and the rain and light sensor must detect *darkness*).

Deactivating the "Leaving Home" function

- It is automatically deactivated once the light switch-off delay time has elapsed.
- **OR:** lock the vehicle.
- **OR:** rotate the light switch to position **0**.
- **OR:** switch on the ignition.

Turn signal and main beam lever

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 23

Convenience turn signals

For the convenience turn signals, move the lever as far as possible upwards or downwards and release the lever. The turn signal will flash 3 times.

The convenience indicators can be deactivated at a Specialised workshop.

⚠ WARNING

Improper or lack of use of the turn signals, or forgetting to deactivate them can confuse other road users. This could result in a serious accident.

- **Always give warning when you are going to change lane, overtake or when turning, activating the turn signal in good time.**
- **As soon as you have finished changing lane, overtaking or turning, switch the turn signal off.**

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the headlights may cause accidents and serious injury, as the main beam may distract or dazzle other drivers.

Note

- **If the convenience turn signals are operating (three flashes) and the other convenience turn signals are switched on, the active part stops flashing and only flashes once in the new part selected.**
- **The turn signal only works when the ignition is switched on. The hazard warning lights also work when the ignition is switched off** ››› page 70.
- **If any of both turn signals fails, the warning lamp will start flashing twice faster than normal.**
- **The *main beam headlights* can only be switched on if the dipped beam headlights are already on.**

Hazard warning lights

Fig. 111 Instrument panel: button for switching the hazard lights warning system on and off.

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 23

Always fulfil legal requirements for securing a broken down vehicle. In a number of countries it is now obligatory, for example, to turn on the hazard warning lights and use a reflective safety vest ››› page 70.

If your vehicle breaks down:

1. Park the vehicle a safe distance from traffic and on suitable ground ›››.
2. Turn on the hazard warning lights with the button ››› Fig. 111.
3. Apply the handbrake firmly ››› page 151.
4. Put the gearbox lever in neutral or the selector lever in position **N** ››› page 158.
5. Switch off the engine and remove the key from the ignition.
6. Have all occupants leave the vehicle and move to safety, for example behind a guard rail.
7. When leaving the vehicle, take all keys with you.
8. Place an emergency warning triangle to indicate the position of your vehicle to other road users.
9. Allow the engine to cool and check if a specialist is required.

When being towed with the hazard warning lights on, a change in direction or traffic lane can be indicated as usual using the turn signal lever. The hazard lights will be interrupted temporarily.

If the hazard warning lights are not working, you must use an alternative method of drawing attention to your vehicle. This method must comply with traffic legislation.

⚠ WARNING

A faulty vehicle in traffic represents a risk of accident for the driver and for other road users.

- **Stop the vehicle safely as soon as possible. Park the vehicle a safe distance from surrounding traffic to lock all the doors in case of an emergency. Turn on the hazard warning lights to warn other road users.**
- **Never leave children or disabled people alone in the vehicle if the doors are to be locked. In case of an emergency, passengers will be trapped inside the vehicle. Individuals locked in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.**

⚠ WARNING

The components of the exhaust system reach very high temperatures. This could cause a fire and considerable damage.

- **Always park your vehicle so that no part of the exhaust system can come in contact with flammable materials (such as dried grass or fuel).**

Note

- **The vehicle battery will discharge and run down if the hazard warning lights remain on for too long (even with the ignition turned off).**
- **In some vehicles, the brake lights will flash when braking abruptly at speeds of approximately 80 km/h (50 mph) to warn vehicles travelling behind. If braking continues, the hazard warning lights system will automatically be turned on at a speed of less than approximately 10 km/h (6 mph). The brake lights remain lit. Upon accelerating, the hazard warning lights will be automatically turned off.**

Adjusting the headlights

In those countries where vehicles drive on the other side of the road to the home country, the asymmetric dipped beam may dazzle drivers of oncoming vehicles.

For this reason, stickers may be needed to cover the headlights when driving abroad. For further information, please refer to a specialised workshop. SEAT recommends visiting a technical service.

Note

The use of stickers to cover headlights is only permitted over a short period. To modify the direction of the headlamps more permanently, please take the vehicle to a specialised workshop. SEAT recommends taking your car in for technical service.

Headlight range control, lighting of the instrument panel and controls

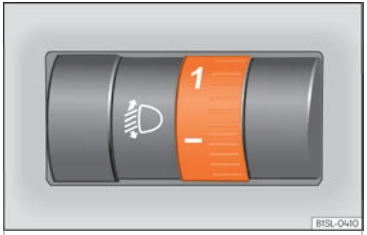


Fig. 112 Next to the steering wheel: Headlight range control

Headlamp height adjustment

The headlight range control ››› Fig. 112 is modified according to the value of the headlight beam and the vehicle load status. This offers the driver optimum visibility and the headlights do not dazzle oncoming drivers ››› ⚠.

The headlights can only be adjusted when the dipped beam is switched on.

To reset, turn switch ››› Fig. 112:	
Value	**Vehicle load status[a]**
–	Two front occupants, luggage compartment empty
1	All seats occupied, luggage compartment empty
2	All seats occupied, luggage compartment full.
3	Driver only, luggage compartment full

[a] If the vehicle load does not correspond to those shown in the table, it is possible to select intermediary positions.

Instrument and switch lighting

When the side lights or dipped beam headlights are switched on, the lighting for instruments and controls lights up at a constant brightness.

⚠ WARNING

Heavy objects in the back of vehicle may cause headlight dazzle and distract other drivers. This could result in a serious accident.

- **Adjust the light beam to the vehicle load status so that it does not blind other drivers.**

Luggage compartment light

The light is activated when the rear lid is open, even when the ignition and lights are turned off. For this reason, ensure that the rear lid is always closed.

Visibility

Sun visors

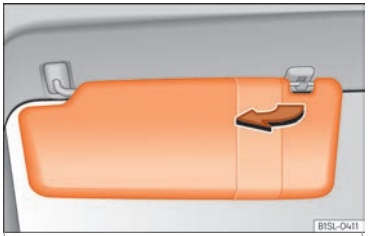


Fig. 113 Sun visor

Options for adjusting driver and front passenger sun visors:

- Lower the sun visor towards the windscreen.
- The sun visor can be pulled out of its mounting and turned towards the door.
- Swing the sun visor towards the door, longitudinally backwards.

Vanity mirror*

There may be a vanity mirror in the folded sun visor on the passenger side and a cardholder in the driver sun visor.

⚠ WARNING

Folded sun blinds can reduce visibility.

- **Always roll or fold sun blinds and visors away when not in use.**

Heat-insulating glass windscreen

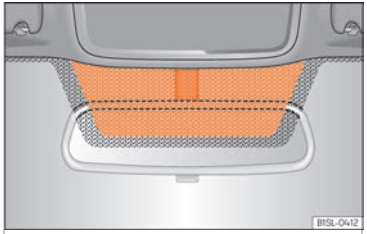


Fig. 114 Windscreen with reflective infrared and metal coating and small window (red surface)

The heat-insulating windscreens include a reflective infrared coating. The section above the rear vision mirror has been left uncoated (communication window) to allow electric components from the accessories shop to operate correctly ››› Fig. 114.

⚠ CAUTION

When the uncoated surface is covered or has a sticker on the interior or exterior, malfunctions in the electronic components may occur. Never cover the uncoated surface on the interior or exterior.

Windscreen wiper and window wiper systems

Window wiper lever

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 24

⚠ WARNING

Water from the windscreen washer water bottle may freeze on the windscreen if it does not contain enough anti-freeze, reducing forward visibility.

- **In winter, ensure the windscreen washer contains enough anti-freeze.**
- **In cold conditions, you should not use the wash/wipe system unless you have warmed the windscreen with the ventilation system. The antifreeze could freeze on the windscreen and reduce visibility.**

⚠ WARNING

Worn or dirty wiper blades reduce visibility and increase the risk of accident and serious injury.

- Always replace damaged or worn blades or blades which do not clean the windscreen correctly.

CAUTION

In icy conditions, always check that the wiper blades are not frozen to the glass before using the wipers for the first time. In cold weather, it may help to leave the vehicle parked with the wipers in service position ››› page 46.

CAUTION

If the ignition is switched off while the windscreen wipers are on, the windscreen wipers carry on wiping at the same level when the ignition is switched back on. Ice, snow and other obstacles may damage the windscreen wiper and the respective motor.

- If necessary, remove snow and ice from the windscreen wipers before starting your journey.
- Carefully lift the frozen windscreen wipers from the glass. SEAT recommends a de-icer spray for this operation.

Note

- The windscreen wipers will only work when the ignition is switched on.
- The interval wipe speed varies according to the vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle is moving, the more often the windscreen is cleaned.
- The rear wiper is automatically switched on when the windscreen wiper is on and the car is in reverse gear.

Windscreen wiper functions

Windscreen wipers performance in different situations	
If the vehicle is at a standstill	The activated position provisionally changes to the previous position.
For intermittent wipers	Intervals between wipes depend on the vehicle's speed. The higher the vehicle speed the shorter the intervals.

Note

The wiper will try to wipe away any obstacles that are on the windscreen. The wiper will stop moving if the obstacle blocks its path. Remove the obstacle and switch the wiper back on again.

Rain and light sensor

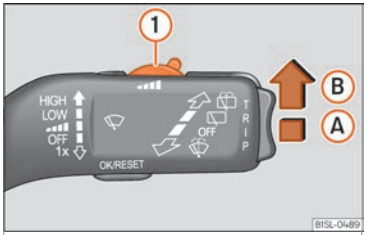


Fig. 115 Windscreen wipers lever: adjust the rain sensor (1).

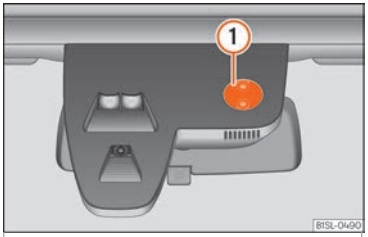


Fig. 116 Rain sensor reference surface.

When activated, the rain and light sensor automatically controls the windscreen washer intervals depending on the intensity of the rainfall. »

When the rain and light sensor is deactivated, the duration of the intervals is adjusted to set levels.

Activating and deactivating the rain and light sensor

Move the lever to the required position ››› Fig. 115:

- Position Ⓐ - The rain and light sensor is deactivated.
- Position Ⓑ - The rain and light sensor is activated will wipe automatically as needed.

When the ignition is switched off and then back on again, the rain sensor stays on and starts operating again when the windscreen wipers are in position Ⓑ and the vehicle is travelling at more than 4 km/h (2 mph).

Setting the sensitivity level of the rain and light sensor

The sensitivity of the rain and light sensor can be adjusted manually with the control ① on the windscreen wiper lever ››› ❗.

- Move the control to the right: high sensitivity.
- Move the control to the left: low sensitivity.

Malfunction of the rain and light sensor

Some examples of possible causes of faults and mistaken readings *on the reference surface* ››› Fig. 116 ① of the rain and light sensor:

- **Wiper blades in poor condition:** the presence of a film or strips of water caused by damaged blades may cause the windscreen wipers to be slower taking effect, shorten wiping intervals or cause wiping to be fast and continuous.
- **Insects:** mosquitoes impacting the windscreen can activate the windscreen wiper.
- **Traces of salt:** in winter, the windscreen wiper may work for longer than usual due to the presence of traces of salt on the almost dry windscreen.
- **Dirt:** the presence of dry dust, wax, coating films (Lotus effect) or traces of detergent (car wash) etc., on the windscreen may cause the rain and light sensor to be less sensitive, react more slowly, later or not at all.
- **Crack on the windscreen:** the impact of a stone will trigger a single wipe cycle if the rain and light sensor is activated. Subsequently, the sensor detects the reduction in the reference surface area and adapts accordingly. The behaviour of the sensor will vary with the size of the damage.

Clean the reference surface area of the rain and light sensor ① regularly and check that the windscreen wiper blades have not been damaged.

CAUTION

The rain and light sensor does not always detect rainfall with sufficient accuracy so does not always switch on the windscreen wiper at the right moment.

- **If necessary, switch on the windscreen wipers manually when water on the windscreen obstructs visibility.**

Note

We recommend the use of a glass cleaning product containing alcohol to remove traces of wax or polish.

Mirror

Interior rear vision mirror

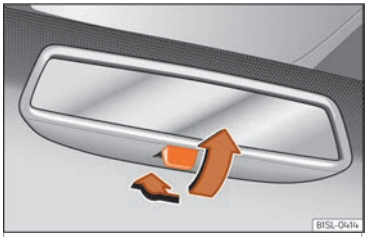


Fig. 117 Manual anti-dazzle function for rear vision mirror

The driver should always adjust the rear vision mirror to permit adequate visibility through the rear window.

Manual anti-dazzle function for interior rear vision mirror

- Basic position: point the lever at the bottom of the mirror forwards.
- Pull the lever to the back to select the anti-dazzle function ››› Fig. 117.

Exterior mirrors

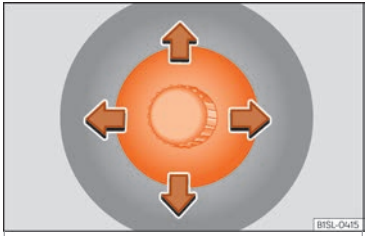


Fig. 118 On the front doors: button to adjust the mechanical exterior rear vision mirror

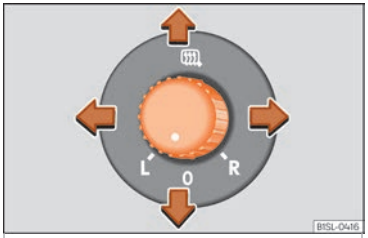


Fig. 119 On the driver door: rotating control for electric windows.

Read the additional information carefully
››› page 15

Adjust the exterior mirrors by pressing the adjust button ››› Fig. 118 or the rotary control* ››› Fig. 119.

Folding in the exterior mirrors and returning them to their original position is possible through a mechanical system. Carefully fold the exterior rear vision mirror casing towards the side window or pull it away from the window until it clicks into place.

⚠ WARNING

Fold and unfold the exterior mirror, taking care to avoid injuries.

- **Only fold or unfold the exterior mirror when there is no-one in the way of the mirror.**
- **When moving the mirror, take care not to trap fingers between the mirror and the mirror bracket.**

⚠ WARNING

Failure to correctly estimate the distance of the vehicle behind could lead to serious accident.

- **Rear-view convex or aspheric mirrors increase the field of vision, however objects appear smaller and further away in the mirrors.**
- **The use of these mirrors to estimate the distance to the next vehicle when changing lane is imprecise and could result in serious accident.**
- **If possible, use the rear vision mirror to estimate distances to vehicles behind you or in other circumstances.**
- **Make sure that the rear visibility is adequate.**

For the sake of the environment

The exterior mirror heating should be switched off when it is no longer needed. Otherwise, it is an unnecessary fuel waste.

Note

In the event of a fault, the electric exterior mirrors can be adjusted manually by pressing the edge of the mirror surface.

Seats and head restraints

Adjusting the seat and head restraints

Manual front seat adjustment

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 14

⚠ WARNING

The safe driving chapter contains important information, tips, suggestions and warnings that you should read and observe for your own safety and the safety of your passengers ››› page 49.

⚠ WARNING

- **Adjust the front seats only when the vehicle is stationary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in an accident.**
- **Be careful when adjusting the seat height. Careless or uncontrolled adjustment can cause injuries.**
- **The front seat backrests must not be reclined for driving. Otherwise, seat belts and the airbag system might not protect as they should in case of an accident, increasing risk of injury.**

Removing and fitting the rear head restraints

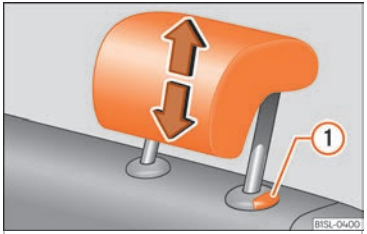


Fig. 120 Removing the rear head restraint

The rear seats are equipped with a head restraint.

Removing the rear head restraint.

- Unlock the seat backrest and fold it forward ››› page 122.
- Push the head restraint up as far as it will go ››› ⚠.
- Pull the head restraint out of the fitting without releasing the button ››› Fig. 120 (1).
- Fold the backrest of the rear seat backward again until it is engaged.
- Safely store the removed head restraints.

Fitting the rear head restraint

- Unlock the seat backrest and fold it forward ››› page 122.
- Insert the head restraint into the guides on the seat backrest.
- Push the head restraint down as far as it will go while pressing button (1).
- Fold the backrest of the rear seat backward again until it is engaged.
- Adjust the head restraint to the correct position ››› page 52.

⚠ WARNING

Travelling with the head restraints removed or improperly adjusted increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries in the event of accidents and sudden braking or manoeuvres.

- **Always fit and adjust the head restraint properly whenever a person is occupying a seat.**
- **Refit any removed head restraints immediately so that passengers are properly protected.**

ⓘ CAUTION

When removing and fitting the head restraint, make sure it does not hit the headliner of the vehicle or the front seat backrest. Otherwise, the interior roof and other parts of the vehicle could be damaged.

Seat functions

Seat heating*

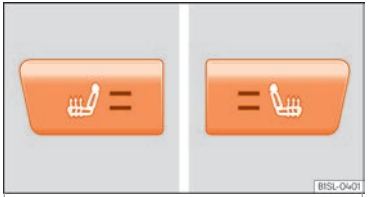


Fig. 121 In the centre console: Front seats heating switch

With the engine on, the seat cushion and the seat backrest can be heated electrically.

- *Enable:* Press the button at the top of the centre console. Seat heating operates at full power. All the control lamps light up.
- *Adjust:* press the or button repeatedly to adjust it to the required level.
- *Disable:* press the or button as many times as necessary until no control lamp remains on.

When heat seating is at maximum level, after approximately 15 minutes it goes back to the first level automatically.

Cases in which the heat seating should not be switched on

Do not switch the seat heating on if any of the following conditions are met:

- The seat is not occupied.
- The seat has a cover.
- A child seat has been installed on the seat.
- The seat cushion is wet or damp.
- The outdoor or indoor temperature is greater than +25°C (77°F).

⚠ WARNING

People whose pain or temperature threshold has been affected by some kind of medicine, paralysis or chronic illness (e.g. diabetes) could sustain burns to the back, buttocks or legs. These burns could take a long time to heal or never fully heal. Seek medical advice if you have any doubts regarding your health.

- **People with a limited pain or temperature threshold should never use the seat heating.**

⚠ WARNING

If the upholstery gets soaked, the heat seating could stop working properly and the risk of burns could increase.

- **Before using the seat heater, make sure that the seat cushion is dry.**
- **Do not sit on the seat if your clothes are damp or wet.**
- **Do not leave wet or damp objects or clothing on the seat.**
- **Do not spill liquid on the seat.**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **To avoid damaging the heating elements, refrain from kneeling on the seat or applying sharp pressure at a single point to the seat cushion or backrest.**
- **If liquids are spilled on the seats, sharp objects are left on them or insulating materials are fitted (such as a cover or a child seat) on them, the heating could get damaged.**
- **If you notice any odour, switch off the seat heating immediately and have the unit inspected by a specialised workshop.**

For the sake of the environment

The seat heating should be switched off when it is no longer needed. Otherwise, it is an unnecessary fuel waste.

Transport and practical equipment

Transporting objects

Introduction

Always transport heavy loads in the luggage compartment and place the seat backs in a vertical position. Never overload the vehicle. Both the carrying capacity as well as the distribution of the load in the vehicle affect driving behaviour and braking ability ››› ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Unsecured or incorrectly secured objects can cause serious injury in case of a sudden manoeuvring or breaking or in case of an accident. This is especially true when objects are struck by a detonating airbag and fired through the vehicle interior. To reduce the risks, please note the following:

- **Secure all objects in the vehicle. Always keep equipment and heavy objects in the luggage compartment.**
- **Always secure objects with suitable rope or slings so that they cannot enter the deployment areas around the frontal or side airbags in case of sudden braking or an accident.**
- **Always ensure that objects inside the vehicle cannot move into the deployment area of the bags while driving.**
- **While driving, always keep object compartments closed.**
- **Remove all objects from the front passenger seat when it is folded down. When the seat backrest is folded down, it presses on small and light objects and these are detected by the weight sensor on the seat; this sends false information to the airbag control unit.**
- **While the backrest of the front passenger seat is folded, the frontal airbag must remain disconnected and the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF light on.**
- **Objects secured in the vehicle should never be placed in such a way as to make passengers sit in an incorrect position.**
- **If secured objects occupy a seat, this seat should not be occupied or used by anyone.**

⚠ WARNING

The driving behaviour and braking ability change when transporting heavy and large objects.

- **Adjust your speed and driving style to visibility, road, traffic and weather conditions.**
- **Accelerate gently and carefully.**
- **Avoid sudden braking and manoeuvres.**
- **Brake early.**

Transporting the load

Secure all objects in the vehicle

- Distribute the load throughout the vehicle and on the roof as uniformly as possible.
- Transport heavy objects as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment and lock the seat backs in the vertical position.
- Check the headlight adjustment ››› page 103.
- Use the suitable tyre pressure according to the load being transported. Read the tyre inflation information label ››› page 206.

CAUTION

Objects on the shelf could chafe against the wires of the heating element in the heated rear window and cause damage.

Note

Please refer to the notes on loading the roof carrier ››› page 127.

Driving with the rear lid open

Driving with the rear lid open creates an additional risk. Secure all objects and secure the rear lid correctly and take all measures possible to reduce toxic gases from entering the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with the rear lid unlocked or open could cause serious injuries.

- Always drive with the rear lid closed.
- Secure all objects in the vehicle. Loose items could fall out of the vehicle and injure other road users or damage other vehicles.
- Drive particularly carefully and think ahead.
- Avoid sudden manoeuvres and braking given that this could cause an uncontrolled movement of the open rear lid.
- When transporting objects that protrude out of the luggage compartment, indicate them suitably. Observe legal requirements.
- If objects must project out of the luggage compartment, the rear lid must never be used to "secure" or "attach" objects.
- If a baggage rack is fitted on the rear lid, it should be removed before travelling with the rear lid open.

⚠ WARNING

Toxic gases may enter the vehicle interior when the rear lid is open. This could cause loss of consciousness, carbon monoxide poisoning, serious injury and accidents.

- To avoid toxic gases entering the vehicle always drive with the rear lid closed.
- In exceptional circumstances, if you must drive with the rear lid open, observe the following to reduce the entry of toxic gases inside the vehicle:
  - Close all windows.
  - Disable air recirculation mode.
  - Open all of the air outlets on the instrument panel.
  - Switch on the blower to maximum.

CAUTION

An open boot hatch changes the length and height of the vehicle.

Driving a loaded vehicle

For the best handling when driving a loaded vehicle, note the following:

- Secure all objects ››› page 114.
- Accelerate gently and carefully.
- Avoid sudden braking and manoeuvres.
- Brake early.
- If necessary, read the instructions for driving with a roof carrier system ››› page 127.

⚠ WARNING

A sliding load could considerably affect the stability and safety of the vehicle resulting in an accident with serious consequences.

- Secure loads correctly so they do not move.
- When transporting heavy objects, use suitable ropes or straps.
- Lock the seat backs in vertical position.

Practical equipment

Introduction

Storage compartments must only be used to store light or small objects.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of sudden braking movements or turns, loose objects may be thrown around the vehicle interior. This could cause serious injuries to passengers and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

- Do not carry animals or store hard, heavy or sharp objects in the vehicle in: open storage compartments, instrument panel, items of clothing or bags.
- While driving, always keep object compartments closed.

⚠ WARNING

Objects falling into the driver's footwell could prevent use of the pedals. This could »

lead the driver to lose control of the vehicle, increasing the risk of a serious accident.

- Make sure the pedals can be used at all times, with no objects rolling underneath them.
- The floor mat should always be secured to the floor.
- Never place other mats or rugs on top of the original mat supplied by the factory.
- Make sure that no objects can fall into the driver's footwell while the vehicle is in motion.

CAUTION

- Objects on the shelf could chafe against the wires of the heating element in the heated rear window and cause damage.
- Do not keep temperature-sensitive objects, food or medicines inside the vehicle. Heat and cold could damage them or render them useless.
- Light-transparent objects placed inside the vehicle, such as lenses, magnifying glasses or transparent suction caps on the windows, may concentrate the sun's rays and cause damage to the vehicle.

Note

The ventilating slits between the heated rear window and the rear shelf must not be covered so that used air can escape from the vehicle.

Storage compartment on the driver side

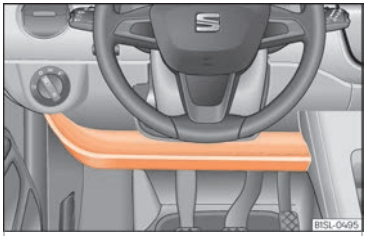


Fig. 122 On the driver side: storage compartment.

There may be a storage compartment on the driver side.

Compartment on the centre console

Fig. 123 In the front part of the centre console: storage compartment.

The storage compartment ››› Fig. 123 may be used as a drink holder ››› page 119 or as an ashtray* ››› page 119 or to store small objects.

Note

A 12 volt electrical socket ››› page 120 can be found in the storage compartment.

Storage compartment with cover on the passenger side*

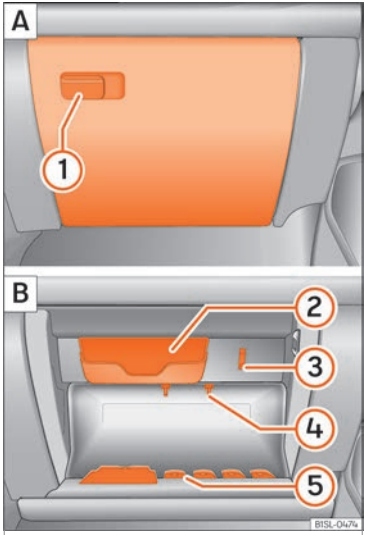


Fig. 124 Storage compartment with cover on the passenger side

There may be a storage compartment with cover on the passenger side.

Opening and closing the storage compartment cover

Pull the lever to *open* ››› Fig. 124 ①.

To *close*, press the cover upwards until it clicks into place.

Sunglasses storage compartment.

Sunglasses can be stored in the passenger side storage compartment.

The sunglasses storage compartment is in the upper area of the storage compartment ②.

Supports

Next to the eyeglass storage compartment is a notebook holder ③ and in the interior of the storage compartment there is a pen holder ④, a map storage area and a coin tray ⑤.

CAUTION

For structural reasons, some model versions will have gaps behind the glove compartment into which small objects may fall. This could lead to strange noises and damage to the vehicle. Therefore, do not store small objects in the glove compartment, apart from those stored in the spaces provided.

Bag support*

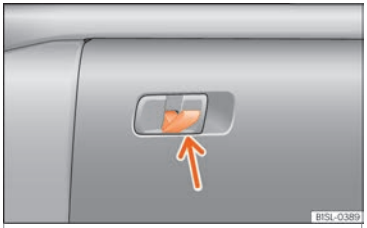


Fig. 125 Storage on front passenger side: folding hook.

On the opening lever of the glove compartment on the passenger side there is a folding hook ››› Fig. 125 for hanging small items of luggage, e.g. bags, etc.

CAUTION

- **The maximum weight for the hook is 1.5 kg.**
- **With the hook folded forward, it automatically draws up when the compartment is opened.**
- **We recommend removing hanging bags from the hook before opening the glove compartment.**

Storage compartment in the back of the centre console

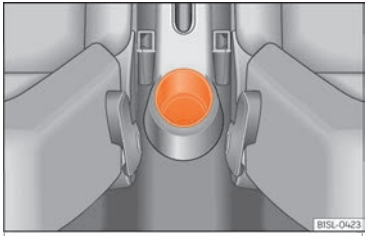


Fig. 126 In the rear part of the centre console: storage compartment.

The drink holder at the back of the centre console can be used as a storage compartment.

Other storage compartments

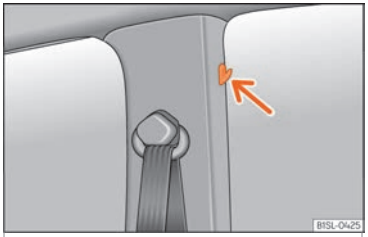


Fig. 127 The centre pillars contain garment hooks.

Coat hooks

The centre pillars contain garment hooks ››› Fig. 127 (arrow).

Other storage compartments:

- In the front door trims ››› page 86.
- Rear shelf for light items of clothing*.
- Bag hook in the luggage compartment ››› page 122.
- In the upper part of the centre console, instead of the radio ››› Fig. 95 (10).

⚠ WARNING

Clothing hung on the coat hooks could restrict the driver's view and lead to serious accidents.

- **Hang the clothes from the hooks so that driver's view is not restricted.**
- **The coat hook is suitable for light items of clothing. Never place heavy, hard or sharp objects in the bags.**

Drink holders

The drink holders are in the open storage compartments in the driver and passenger doors.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the drink holders can cause injury.

- **Do not place containers with hot drinks in a drink holder. During sudden braking or driving manoeuvres, the hot drink could be spilled and lead to scalding.**
- **Ensure that no bottles or other object are dropped in the driver footwell, as they could get under the pedals and obstruct their working.**
- **Never place heavy containers, food or other heavy objects in the drink holder. In the event of an accident, these heavy objects could be "thrown around" the vehicle interior and cause serious injuries.**

⚠ WARNING

Closed bottles inside the vehicle could explode or crack due to the heat or the cold.

- **Never leave a closed bottle in the vehicle if the inside temperature is too high or too low.**

CAUTION

Do not leave open drinks containers in the drink holders when the vehicle is in motion. They could spill during braking, for example, and cause damage to the vehicle and the electrical system.

Centre console drink holders

Fig. 128 In the front part of the centre console: drink holder.

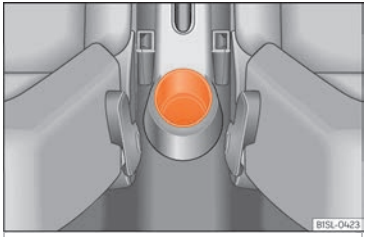


Fig. 129 In the rear part of the centre console:

There are drink holders in the front and rear parts of the centre console.

Securing the drink container in the front drink holder

Fold the drink holder ››› **Fig. 128** forward.

Place the drink container in the drink holder so that it is securely surrounded.

Ashtray*

Fig. 130 In the front part of the centre console: open the ashtray.

Opening and closing the ashtray

To *open*, lift the lid of the ashtray in the direction of the arrow ››› **Fig. 130**.

To *close*, push the ashtray lid down.

Emptying the ashtray

- Remove the ashtray from the storage compartment lifting it up.
- After emptying the ashtray, insert it into the drink holder from above.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the ashtray may cause a fire or burns and other serious injuries.

- **Never put paper or other flammable objects in the ashtray.**

Cigarette lighter*

Fig. 131 In the front part of the centre console: lighter.

- Push the button on the cigarette lighter inward with the ignition on ››› Fig. 131.
- Wait for the lighter to pop out slightly.
- Pull out the cigarette lighter and light the cigarette on the glowing coil ››› ⚠.
- Replace the cigarette lighter in its insert.

⚠ WARNING

Undue use of the cigarette lighter may cause a fire or burns and other serious injuries.

- **The cigarette lighter must only be used to light cigarettes or similar.**
- **Never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle. The cigarette lighter can be used when the ignition is switched on.**

Note

The cigarette lighter can also be used with the 12 Volt socket.

Power outlet and USB socket*

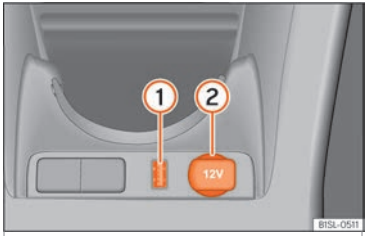


Fig. 132 Front centre console: 12-volt power outlet on the storage compartment and USB interface.

Electrical equipment can be connected to the socket in the vehicle.

All connected appliances should be in perfect working order without any faults.

Maximum power consumption

Power socket	Maximum power consumption
12 Volts	120 Watts

The maximum capacity of the socket must not be exceeded. The power consumption is indicated on the rating plate of each appliance.

Where 2 or more appliances are connected at the same time, the total rating of all the connected devices must never exceed 190 Watts ››› ❗.

12 volt power socket

The 12 volt socket is found in the storage compartment at the front of the centre console ››› Fig. 132 ② and only functions when the ignition is switched on.

Using electrical appliances with the engine stopped and the ignition switched on will drain the battery. Therefore, electrical devices connected to the power socket can only be used when the engine is running.

To prevent voltage variations from causing damage, switch off the electrical device connected to the 12 Volt power socket before switching the ignition on or off and before starting the engine.

USB Interface

The factory-fitted USB interface is in the storage compartment of the front part of the centre console ①.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the socket or electrical devices could lead to a fire and cause serious injuries.

- Never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle. The socket and equipment connected to it can be used when the ignition is switched on.
- Should a connected electrical device overheat, switch it off and unplug it immediately.

CAUTION

- Always follow the operating instructions for the appliances to be connected!
- Never exceed the maximum power rating as this could damage the vehicle's general electrical system.
- 12 volt power socket:
  - Only use accessories with approved electromagnetic compatibility according to current regulations.
  - Never power the socket.

CAUTION

- To avoid damage to the vehicle's electrical system, never connect equipment that generates electrical current, such as solar panels or battery chargers, to the 12 volt power sockets in order to charge the vehicle's battery.
- Only use accessories with approved electromagnetic compatibility according to current regulations.
- To avoid damage due to voltage variations, switch off all devices connected to the 12 V socket before switching the ignition on or off and before starting the engine.
- Never connect an appliance to the 12 volt power socket that consumes more than the power indicated in watts. Exceeding the maximum power absorption could damage the vehicle's electrical system.

For the sake of the environment

Do not leave the engine running when the vehicle is at a standstill.

Note

- Using devices with the engine stopped and the ignition switched on will drain the battery.
- Unshielded equipment can cause interference on the radio equipment and the vehicle's electrical system.
- Interference can occur on the radio's AM waveband if electrical appliances are used near the aerial.

Portable smartphone holder

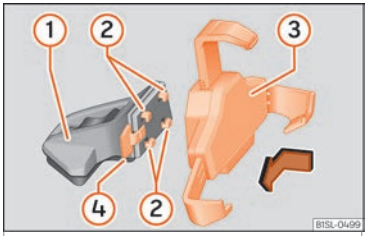


Fig. 133 Assembling the universal support and the holding arm.

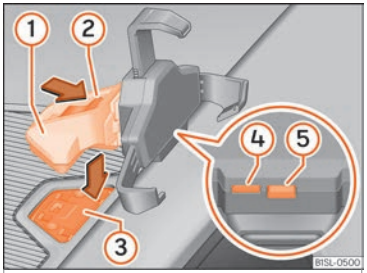


Fig. 134 On the centre console: close the compartment where the infotainment system is housed.

Removing the smartphone

- Grip the smartphone firmly with one hand. »

- Press the release button ››› Fig. 134 ⑤ until the top arm of the universal holder disengages.
- Remove the smart phone and, as the case may be, unplug any cables.

Inserting a smart phone

- If necessary, install the smartphone housing ››› ⚠.
- Connect the smartphone.
- Place the smartphone on the bottom mountings. To adjust the bottom mountings, press button ››› Fig. 134 ④.
- Press the top arm of the universal holder until the smartphone is securely held in place.

Disassembling the housing

- If necessary, remove the smartphone.
- Grip the universal holder ››› Fig. 133 ③ and press the release button ››› Fig. 133 ④.
- Push the universal holder to the right (anti-clockwise) and remove it.
- Grip the holder arm and ››› Fig. 134 ① and press the release button ››› Fig. 134 ④ in the direction of the arrow.
- Remove the holder from the dash panel upwards.

Install the housing

- Insert the universal holder ››› Fig. 133 ③ into the slots ② on the holder ①.
- Move the universal holder to the side in the locking direction ④ until it engages audibly ››› ⚠.
- Place the holder arm ››› Fig. 134 ① in the anchoring plate ››› Fig. 134 ③ from above and press down on it until you hear it engage ››› ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

If a smartphone is not secured or is incorrectly secured in the vehicle, it could be flung though the interior during a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or in the event of an accident, and could cause injuries.

- **The infotainment system holder must be properly secured in the corresponding gap in the dash panel.**
- **The infotainment system must always be properly secured in its holder or stored safely in the vehicle.**

ⓘ CAUTION

If tilt and angle of visibility are not properly adjusted the smart phone could be damaged.

- **When adjusting the smartphone, move it with care and never beyond its limits.**

ⓘ CAUTION

At very high or very low temperatures the smartphone might not operate properly, or the actual device could get damaged.

- **Take your smart phone with you when you get out of the vehicle to protect it from very high or very low temperatures, and from intense solar radiation.**

ⓘ CAUTION

Humidity can damage the electrical contacts for the smartphone on the instrument panel.

- **Do not wet the smartphone's housing when cleaning it. Use only a dry cloth.**

ⓘ Note

SEAT recommends that you always take your smart phone with you when you get out of the vehicle to avoid possible thefts.

Luggage compartment

Introduction

Always transport heavy loads in the luggage compartment and place the seat backs in a vertical position. Never overload the vehicle. Both the carrying capacity as well as the distribution of the load in the vehicle have

effects on the driving behaviour and braking ability ››› ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

When the vehicle is not in use or being watched, always lock the doors and the rear lid to reduce the risk of serious injury or death.

- Do not leave children unwatched, especially when the boot is open. Children could climb into the luggage compartment, close the rear lid from inside and be unable to escape themselves. This could lead to serious injury or death.
- Never allow children to play in or around the vehicle.
- Never transport people in the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

Unsecured or incorrectly secured objects can cause serious injury in case of a sudden manoeuvring or breaking or in case of an accident. This is especially true when objects are struck by a detonating airbag and fired through the vehicle interior. To reduce the risks, please note the following:

- Secure all objects in the vehicle. Always place equipment and heavy objects in the boot.
- Always secure objects to the fastening rings with suitable rope or straps to prevent them from being thrown around the interior and moving to the airbag deployment area in the event of sudden movements or accidents.
- While driving, always keep object compartments closed.
- Do not place hard, heavy or sharp objects inside the vehicle interior, in open storage compartments, the rear shelf of the boot or on the dash panel.
- Remove hard, heavy and sharp objects from clothes and pockets inside the vehicle and store securely.

⚠ WARNING

The transport of heavy object changes vehicle handling and increases braking distance. Heavy loads that have not been stored or secured correctly could cause loss of control and result in serious injury.

- Vehicle handling changes when transporting heavy objects due to a change in the centre of gravity.
- Distribute the load as uniformly and as low down on the vehicle as possible.
- Store heavy objects in the luggage compartment as far from the rear axle as possible.

⓵ CAUTION

Hard objects on the rear shelf could chafe against the wires of the heating element in the heated rear window and cause damage.

ⓘ Note

The ventilating slits between the heated rear window and the rear shelf must not be covered so that used air can escape from the vehicle.

Folding and lifting up the rear seat bench backrest

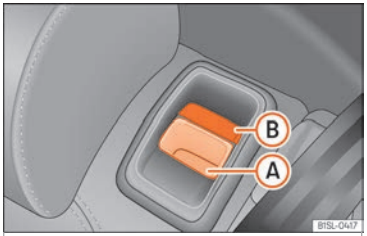


Fig. 135 Back seat: unlock button (A); red marking (B)

The rear seat backrest can be folded forward to extend the luggage compartment. »

Folding the rear seat backrest forwards

- Push the head restraint down as far as it will go or remove it if necessary ››› page 49 and store it in a safe place.
- Pull the unlock switch ››› Fig. 135 Ⓐ forwards whilst simultaneously lifting the rear seat backrest.
- The rear seat backrest is not engaged when the red marking of the button Ⓑ is visible.
- If the rear seat backrest is folded, people (including children) are not permitted to travel in the rear folded seats.

Folding up the rear seat backrest

- Lift back the backrest of the rear seat and push it firmly into the lock until it clicks securely into place ››› ⚠.
- The red marking on the unlock button Ⓑ must not be seen.
- Make sure that the backrest of the rear seat is securely locked in position so that the seat belts can provide proper protection in the rear seats.
- If necessary, reinstall and readjust the head restraints ››› page 112.

⚠ WARNING

Folding and lifting the backrests of the rear seats carelessly without paying attention could cause serious injury.

- **Never fold or lift the seats while driving.**
- **Do no trap or damage seat belts when raising the seat backrest.**
- **Keep hands, fingers, feet and other limbs away from the range of the rear seat backrests when folding and lifting them.**
- **All seat backrests must engage correctly for the seat belts on the rear seats to work properly. When the backrest of an occupied seat is not correctly locked in place, the passenger can be thrust forward with the rear seat backrest in case of sudden braking, sudden manoeuvres or an accident.**
- **A red signal on the button Ⓑ warns that the backrest is not engaged. Always check to make sure that the red mark is not visible when the backrest of the rear seat is in the upright position.**
- **No seat must be occupied if the backrest of the rear seat is folded or not correctly engaged.**

ⓘ CAUTION

Before folding the rear seat backrest, adjust the front seats so that neither the head restraint or backrest hit them when folded. If necessary, remove the head restraints ››› page 112 and store them safely.

Luggage compartment shelf*

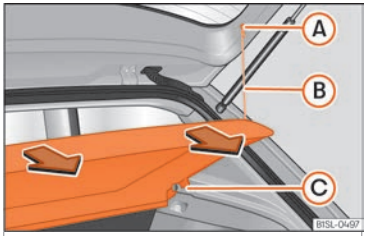


Fig. 136 In the boot: removing and installing the rear shelf.

You may put light items of clothing on the rear shelf. Check that the rear view is not limited.

Removing the shelf

- Unhook the loops ››› Fig. 136 Ⓑ from housings Ⓐ.
- Extract the shelf from its housing Ⓒ upwards and then pull it out.

⚠ WARNING

Unsecured or incorrectly secured objects or animals on the rear shelf could cause serious injuries in case of a sudden manoeuvre, sudden braking or an accident.

- **Do not leave hard, heavy or sharp objects (loose or in bags) on the rear shelf.**
- **Never transport animals on the rear shelf.**

- Never drive with the rear shelf raised. Always lower it or remove it before the journey.

CAUTION

To prevent the rear shelf from being damaged:

- Always check that the side supports are firmly engaged.
- Regulate the height of the load in the luggage compartment to ensure the rear shelf does not press down on the load with the rear lid closed.

Luggage compartment variable floor

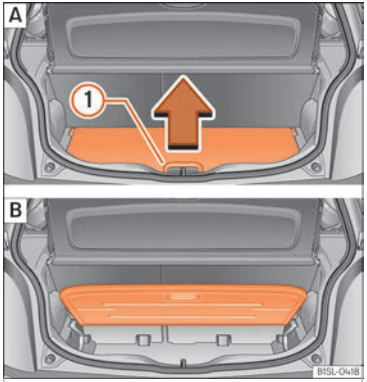


Fig. 137 A: open the boot variable floor. B: raised boot variable floor.

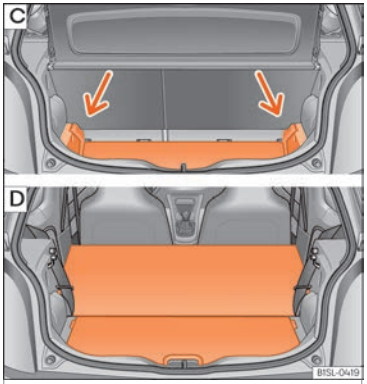


Fig. 138 C: extend the boot downward. D: extend the boot forward.

Raise and lower the boot floor

- To *raise* the floor, raise handle ››› Fig. 137 (1) in the direction of the arrow and pull from the floor all the way up ››› Fig. 137 **B**.
- To *lower it*, guide the floor downward.

Extend the boot downward

- Raise the boot floor and push it downward in the rail ››› Fig. 138 **C** (arrows)
- Place the variable floor over the floor lining.
- If necessary, fold the backrest of the rear seat forward ››› page 123.

»

Extending the luggage compartment forward

- Disassemble the luggage compartment tray ››› page 124.
- Disassemble the rear headrests ››› page 49.
- Fold the backrest of the rear seat forward ››› page 123.
- If necessary, expand the boot downward.

CAUTION

Do not let the luggage compartment floor fall when closing it. Always carefully guide it downward in a controlled manner. Otherwise, the lining and the floor of the boot could be damaged.

Class N1 (commercial) vehicles

For safe vehicle operation, the electrical system must work perfectly. Special attention should be paid so it is not damaged during adjustment, loading and unloading of transported objects.

Fastening rings*

In the front part of the luggage compartment, there may be fastening rings to secure the luggage.

In order to use the fastening rings, they must be lifted beforehand.

WARNING

If unsuitable or damaged belts or retaining straps are used, they may break in the event of braking or an accident. Objects could then be launched across the passenger compartment and cause serious or fatal injuries.

- **It is important to always use belts or retaining straps that are suitable and in a good condition.**
- **Belts and retaining straps should be securely fastened to the fastening rings.**
- **Objects in the luggage compartment that are unsecured could move suddenly and modify the handling of the vehicle.**
- **Small light objects should also be fixed in place.**
- **A child seat should never be secured with the fastening rings.**

Note

- **The maximum tensile load that the fastening rings can support is 3.5 kN.**
- **Belts and securing systems for the appropriate load can be obtained from specialised dealerships. SEAT recommends visiting a SEAT dealership for this.**

Retaining hooks

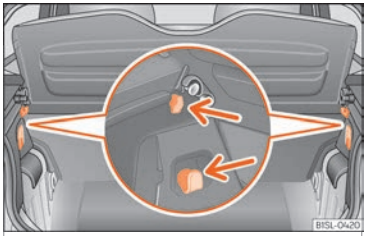


Fig. 139 In the boot: retaining hooks.

There may be hooks in the upper left and right part of the luggage compartment.

WARNING

Never use these hooks to secure objects. In case of sudden braking or an accident, they could rupture.

CAUTION

The hooks can support a maximum of 2.5 kg each.

Roof carrier

Introduction

The vehicle roof has been designed to optimise aerodynamics. For this reason, conventional roof carrier systems cannot be secured to the water drains.

Given that the water drains have been incorporated into the roof for aerodynamic reasons, only the SEAT approved basic supports and roof carrier systems can be used.

When the roof carrier system should be removed:

- When they are not used.
- When the vehicle is being washed in a car wash.
- When the vehicle height exceeds the maximum height, for example, in some garages.

⚠ WARNING

The risk of an accident is increased by transporting heavy or bulky loads on the roof, which affects the car's handling by shifting the centre of gravity and increasing susceptibility to cross winds.

- **Always secure loads correctly with suitable and undamaged attachment rope or straps.**
- **Large, heavy, wide and flat loads negatively affect the vehicle aerodynamics, centre of gravity and handling.**
- **Avoid brusque manoeuvres and sudden braking.**
- **Adjust your speed and driving style to visibility, road, traffic and weather conditions.**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **Always remove the roof carrier system from the roof before entering a car wash.**
- **The height of your vehicle is changed by the installation of the roof carrier and the load secured on it. Compare the vehicle height with the passage height, for example in underground car parks or for garage doors.**
- **The roof antenna and the range of the rear lid should not be affected by the roof carrier system or the load being transported.**
- **Take extra care not to let the hatch strike the roof load when opening.**

❀ For the sake of the environment

The vehicle uses more fuel when the roof carrier system is fitted.

Fastening the base supports and the roof carrier system

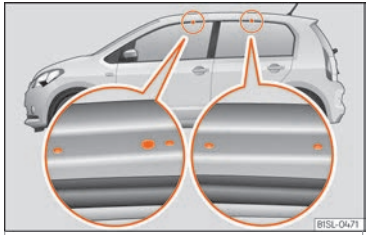


Fig. 140 Attachment points for the basic supports and the roof carrier system in four-door vehicles.

The mounts are the basis of a complete roof carrier system. Special fixtures must be added in order to safely transport luggage, bicycles, skis, surf boards or boats on the roof. The suitable accessories can be acquired at SEAT dealerships.

Securing the base supports and roof carrier system

The roof carrier system must always be installed exactly according to the instructions provided.

The holes or marks indicating the fitting points for base supports are in the lower half of the roof struts and can only be seen with the door open ››› Fig. 140.

»

The base support should **only** be fitted to the points indicated in the diagram.

⚠ WARNING

If the base supports and the roof carrier system are incorrectly fitted or used in an unsuitable manner, the entire system could break free causing accident and injury.

- **Always take the manufacturer assembly instructions into account.**
- **Only use base supports and roof carrier systems that are not damaged and are correctly fitted.**
- **The base support should only be fitted to the points indicated in the diagram ››› Fig. 140.**
- **Secure the base supports and roof carrier system correctly.**
- **Check the screws and attachments before driving and after a short distance. During each long journey, check the attachments during every break.**
- **Always fit the roof carrier system correctly for wheels, skis and surfboards, etc.**
- **Never modify or repair the basic supports or roof carrier system.**

Note

Read and take into account the instructions included with the roof carrier system fitted and keep them in the vehicle.

Loading the roof carrier

Loads can only be correctly secured when the roof carrier system is correctly fitted ››› ⚠.

Maximum authorised roof load

The maximum authorised roof load is **50 kg**. The roof load includes the weight of the base support, the roof carrier system and the load being transported ››› ⚠.

Always check the weight of the base support, the roof carrier system and the weight of the load to be transported and, if necessary, weigh them. Never exceed the maximum authorised roof load.

If you are using a roof carrier with a lower weight rating, you cannot transport the maximum roof load. Do not exceed the maximum weight limit for the roof carrier given in the fitting instructions.

Distributing a load

Uniformly distribute loads and secure them correctly ››› ⚠.

Check attachments

After fitting the base supports and the roof carrier system, always check the attachments after a short trip and at regular intervals.

⚠ WARNING

Exceeding the maximum authorised roof load can result in accidents and/or vehicle damage.

- **Never surpass the maximum authorised weight for the roof, the maximum authorised weight on the axles and the total maximum authorised weight of the vehicle.**
- **Never exceed the capacity of the roof carrier system even if this is less than the maximum authorised roof load.**
- **Secure heavy items as far forward as possible and distribute the vehicle load uniformly.**

⚠ WARNING

Loose and incorrectly secured loads can fall from the roof carrier system causing accidents and injury.

- **Always use suitable ropes and straps in good condition.**
- **Always secure loads correctly.**

Air conditioning

Heating, ventilation and air conditioning

Introduction

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 29

One of the following systems can be installed in the vehicle:

- Heating and fresh air system
- Manual air conditioning
- Climatronic

The **heating and fresh air system** heats and ventilates the interior. The heating and fresh air system cannot cool.

The **manual air conditioning** and the **Climatronic** cool and dehumidify the air. They operate most effectively with the windows and the sunroof closed. If a great deal of heat accumulates in the interior, ventilating it can accelerate the cooling process.

Display of active functions

The LEDs that light up on the rotary controls on the buttons indicate that the function in question is activated.

In the case of the Climatronic, the control panel screen shows the functions that are currently activated.

⚠ WARNING

When visibility through the window display is poor, the risk of collisions and accidents which may cause serious injury increases.

- **To guarantee good visibility, keep all windows free of ice and snow and properly demisted.**
- **Adjust the heating, air conditioning and the heated rear window so that the windows do not mist up.**
- **Drive off only when you have good visibility through the windows.**
- **Do not use the air recirculation for long periods of time. When the cooling is switched off and the air recirculation is on, the windows can mist over very quickly and seriously impair visibility.**
- **Switch the air recirculation off when you do not need it.**

⚠ WARNING

Used air can quickly cause driver tiredness and reduce their attention span, which could lead to collisions, accidents and serious injury.

- **Never switch off the fan for a long time or leave the air recirculation on for too long, since no exterior air enters the interior during that time.**

ⓘ CAUTION

If the air conditioning is not working, switch it off immediately, together with the defrost/demist function (in the case of manual air conditioning) and have a specialised workshop check it out. This may help to avoid other possible damage.

ⓘ CAUTION

To avoid damaging the heated rear window, never affix adhesives to the electric filaments on the inside of it.

Air recirculation

In air recirculation mode, no fresh air enters the vehicle interior.

To switch on the air recirculation, turn the adjuster to the right or press the button.

To switch off the air recirculation, turn the adjuster to the left or press the button again ››› ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Used air can quickly cause driver tiredness and reduce their attention span, which »

could lead to collisions, accidents and serious injury.

- Never use the air recirculation for too long, since no exterior air enters the interior during that time.
- When the cooling is switched off and the air recirculation is on, the windows can mist over very quickly and seriously impair visibility.
- Switch the air recirculation off when you do not need it.

CAUTION

In vehicles with an air conditioner, do not smoke when air recirculation is switched on. The smoke taken in could impregnate the cooling vaporiser and the activated charcoal cartridge of the dust and pollen filter, leading to permanent unpleasant odours.

Note

- *Climatronic:* When reverse gear is engaged, the air recirculation switches on briefly to prevent exhaust gas from entering the interior.
- When the outside temperature is very high, it is recommendable to switch the air recirculation on briefly to cool down the interior faster.

Air vents

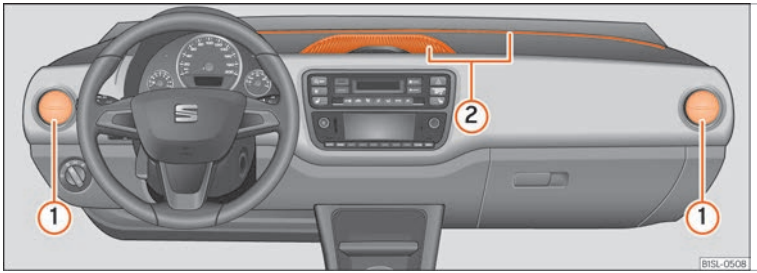


Fig. 141 On the dash panel air vents.

To achieve sufficient heating power, cooling and ventilation in the interior, the vents should be left open.

Key to the Fig. 141:

① Adjustable air vents: the vent slats can be used to open and close the vents and to adjust air direction. For the air to reach the windows as best as possible, open the corresponding vent and turn it to the defrost/demist position, where it will engage.

② Non-adjustable air vents

There are more vents in the footwell areas and at the back of the interior.

CAUTION

Never place food, medicines or other temperature-sensitive objects close to the air vents. Food, medicines and other objects sensitive to heat or cold may be damaged or made unsuitable for use by the air coming from the vents.

Tips and instructions for use

Fig. 142 In the centre console, top section: Climatronic control panel.

The following tips and instructions for use will help you to use the systems properly.

Reasons why the cooling switches off automatically or will not switch on

- The engine is not running.
- The fan is switched off.
- The air conditioner fuse has blown.
- The outside temperature is lower than around +3°C (+38°F).
- The cooling system compressor has been temporarily switched off because the engine coolant temperature is too high.
- Another fault in the vehicle. Have the air conditioner checked by a specialised workshop.

How to optimise visibility

- To improve heating or cooling performance and to prevent the windows from misting over, keep the air intake slots in front of the windscreen free of snow, ice and leaves.
- To allow the air to move freely through the interior from the front to the rear, keep the ventilation slits located at the back of the luggage compartment free.

»

- The highest possible heating power will only be reached and ice removed from the windows as quickly as possible when the coolant is at its operating temperature.

Recommended settings for the heating and fresh air system and the manual air conditioning

- Switch off the air recirculation.
- Set fan speed **1** or **2**.
- Turn the temperature control to the intermediate position.
- Open and direct all the air outlets in the dash panel.
- Turn the air distribution control to the required position.
- *Manual air conditioning:* press the **A/C** button in the control panel to switch on the cooling. The air is dehumidified in cooling mode.

Recommended Climatronic settings

- Press the AUTO button in the control panel.
- Set the temperature to +22°C (+72°F).
- Open and direct the air outlets in the dash panel.

Maximum cooling power or heating power in the case of Climatronic

When driving, the maximum cooling power or heating power can be adjusted by pressing the 1 or 2 ››› Fig. 142 button repeatedly. The temperature is not regulated.

- *Maximum cooling potency:* set the temperature below +16°C (+60°F). The display then shows **LO**.
- *Maximum heating potency:* set the temperature above +29°C (+84°F). The display then shows **HI**.

Dust and pollen filter

The dust and pollen filter should be changed regularly in order to maintain air conditioner performance.

If the vehicle is used frequently in areas where the outside air is highly polluted, it may be necessary to change the filter before the next scheduled service.

Water under the vehicle

If the humidity and temperature outside the vehicle are high, **condensation** can drip off the evaporator in the cooling system and form a small pool underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak!

Infotainment System

Introduction

Safety warnings

Safety warnings regarding the Infotainment system

⚠ WARNING

Distracting the driver in any way can lead to an accident and cause injuries. Operating the radio system while driving can distract your attention from the traffic.

- Always drive as carefully and responsibly as possible.
- Select volume settings that allow you to easily hear signals from outside the vehicle at all times (e.g. emergency services sirens and horns).
- Hearing may be impaired if using too high a volume setting, even if only for short periods of time.

⚠ WARNING

The volume level may suddenly change when you switch audio source or connect a new audio source.

- Lower the base volume before connecting or switching the audio source.

⚠ WARNING

Connecting, inserting or removing a data medium while driving can distract your attention from the traffic and cause an accident.

⚠ WARNING

Connecting leads for external devices may obstruct the driver.

- Arrange the connecting leads so that they do not obstruct the driver.

⚠ WARNING

External devices that are loose or not properly secured could move around the passenger compartment during a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or an accident and cause damage or injury.

- Never place external devices on the doors, the windscreen, on or close to the zone marked with the "AIRBAG" word of the steering wheel, the instrument panel or the backrests, or between these zones and the passengers. External devices can cause serious injury in an accident, especially when the airbags inflate.

⚠ WARNING

Opening a CD player's housing can lead to injuries from invisible laser radiation.

- Have CD players repaired only by qualified workshops.

ⓘ CAUTION

The system can be damaged by the incorrect insertion of a data storage device or the insertion of an incompatible data storage device.

- When inserting and removing CDs, always hold them at right angles to the front of the CD drive without tilting so as not to scratch them.
- If a CD or DVD is inserted while another is already in the unit or being ejected, the DVD drive may be irreparably damaged. Always wait until the data medium is completely ejected.

ⓘ CAUTION

Any foreign objects stuck to a data storage device and non-round media may damage the CD player.

- Only use clean, standard 12-cm CDs.
  - Do not affix stickers or other items to the data medium. Stickers may peel off and damage the drive.
  - Do not use printable data media. Printed labels and coverings may peel off and damage the CD drive.
  - Do not insert 8-cm single CDs or irregularly shaped or non-round CDs.

»

– Do not insert DVD-Plus discs, Dual Discs or Flip Discs, as these are thicker than normal CDs.

CAUTION

The vehicle loudspeakers may be damaged if the volume is too high or the sound is distorted.

Overview of the unit

You&Mii Music

Fig. 143 Overview of the controls

1. Arrow buttons (radio/media mode) ››› page 139, ››› page 141
2. Slot for SD cards ››› page 142
3. CD slot
4. Screen
5. AUX-IN multimedia socket ››› page 144
6. Eject the CD
7. Sound settings
8. Volume. Off and on ››› page 137, ››› page 138
9. Radio mode (change of band frequency) ››› page 139
10. Media mode (audio sources) ››› page 141
11. Function buttons ››› page 137
12. Go back to the previous menu
13. Settings menu
14. Settings button (search and selection) ››› page 137

You&Mii Colour Connection

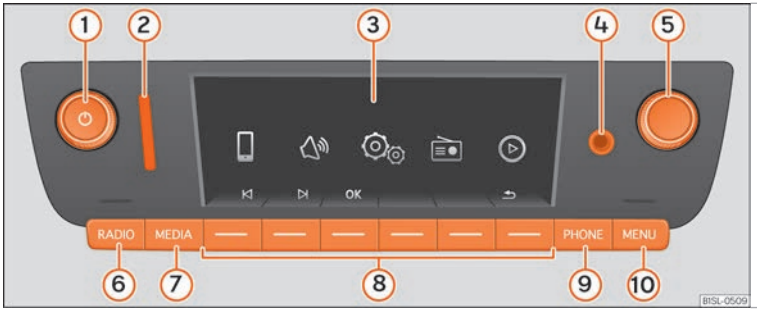


Fig. 144 Overview of the controls

① Volume. Off and on ››› page 137, ››› page 137

② Slot for SD cards ››› page 142

③ Screen

④ AUX-IN multimedia socket ››› page 144

⑤ Settings button (search and selection) ››› page 137

⑥ Radio mode (change of band frequency) ››› page 139

⑦ Media mode (audio sources) ››› page 141

⑧ Function buttons ››› page 137

⑨ Telephone mode ››› page 145

⑩ Selecting the main menu ››› page 136

Main menus

- To access the main menu, press button MENU.
- To select a function, rotate the setting Button ⑤ until it is highlighted and press the button.

General operating information

Additional instructions

Depending on the vehicle, notifications of the factory-fitted driving assistance systems are shown on the display. The notifications close automatically when they are no longer useful.

All notifications are only displayed after completely rebooting the radio system.

Note

- **Pushing the buttons gently is enough to use the equipment.**
- **Due to country-specific legislation, certain functions may not be available when the vehicle is travelling above a certain speed.**
- **Using a mobile telephone inside the vehicle may provoke noise in the speakers.**
- **On some vehicles with ParkPilot, the volume of the active audio source is automatically lowered when reverse gear is selected.**

Thumbwheels, equipment and function buttons

Overview

- Rotary/push knobs.
- **Equipment buttons** named (physical buttons).
- **Function buttons** (virtual buttons).

Rotary/push knobs

The left-hand rotary knob is known as volume control or the on/off button.

The right-hand rotary knob is known as the settings button.

Equipment buttons and function buttons

The named buttons of the equipment are known as "equipment buttons" and are shown with a button symbol inside a rectangle, for instance, equipment button MEDIA.

Unnamed equipment buttons are located below the screen. These equipment buttons are known as "function buttons" as their purpose depends on the active function mode.

The function assigned to a function button is explained on the bottom of the display, above the corresponding button.

Switching on and off

- To manually switch the system on and off, briefly press the rotary knob.

When the unit is switched on the system starts up. The last active audio source will be played with the volume set, as long this does not exceed the maximum, predefined "switch-on" volume (Volume).

Depending on the equipment and country, when switching off the engine or removing the key from the ignition, the system switches off automatically. If the system is switched on again without switching on the ignition, it will switch off automatically after approximately 30 minutes (switch-off delay).

Power management

If the charge of the battery goes below the minimum onboard charge with the ignition switched off and the system active, an audible warning will be emitted and the **LOW BATTERY** message will be displayed. If this happens, you should turn off the equipment.

Anti-theft password

The anti-theft password of the system is stored in the system after entering it for the first time (radio comfort password). If you have to enter the anti-theft password manually, for »

instance, because the system has been installed in a different vehicle, please go to a SEAT authorised service.

If only the battery was disconnected, switch on the ignition before turning the system on again.

Change base volume

Function	Operation
Turn volume up.	Turn the volume control clockwise.
Turn volume down.	Turn the volume control anti-clockwise.

Changes in base volume are indicated by a "volume bar" on the screen, which is displayed briefly.

It is possible to preset certain volume settings and adjustments.

Mute system sound

- Turn the volume control anti-clockwise until it displays .
- **OR:** press the volume switch briefly to mute or unmute the system.

While the sound of the system is muted (MUTE), the playback Media source stops.

Note

If the base volume has been considerably increased to play a certain audio source, lower the volume again before switching to another audio source.

Audio Mode

Radio Mode

Introduction

The radio system is supplied in different versions depending on the country and the features of the vehicle. Some systems also have a DAB radio receiver. The general dashboard contains the possible versions of the system ››› page 135.

Note

- **Bear in mind that being in underground parking lots, in tunnels, in areas with tall buildings or mountains can interfere with radio signals.**
- **Foil or metal-coated stickers attached to the windows may affect reception on vehicles with a window aerial.**

RADIO main menu

Fig. 145 RADIO Main Menu: select frequency band.

Fig. 146 RADIO main menu: Indication of preset buttons.

- Press RADIO so start the Radio mode.

After switching the Radio mode, the available frequency bands (FM, AM[1] and DAB[1]) will be shown on the bottom of the display. Press the RADIO equipment button gain to display more functions for the radio receiver.

The following options are available:

- Search next station.
- Access a previously saved station.
- Switching the TP function on and off
- Save current station ››› page 140.

The current station is shown in the middle of the screen. If the station allows for RDS and the connection is good, instead of the frequency, the name of the station will be shown, e.g. **RADIO 21**.

Change frequency band

The frequency band selected (FM, AM[1] or DAB[1]) is shown on the top left.

- In Radio mode, press the RADIO equipment button briefly to display the FM, AM[1] and DAB[1] function buttons ››› Fig. 145.
- Press one of the function buttons FM, AM or DAB to change the frequency band.
- **OR:** Press the RADIO equipment button a few times to cycle through the different lower function buttons.

[1] This depends on the country and unit in question.

Changing station

Fig. 147 Go to the next available station with the arrow buttons.

Fig. 148 Changing the stations with the arrow buttons is only possible for saved stations.

- Press the ◁ or ▷ arrow button on the system or the display.

Based on the mode selected for the search engine (**Button keys:**) you can cycle through either available or saved stations.

Manually tuning station frequency

- To select the desired frequency band ››› page 139.
- Press the function button of the frequency band ⊞.
- Rotate the setting switch until the desired frequency is shown on the display (e.g. **89.9 MHz**).
- **OR:** Press one of the double-arrow buttons ››› Fig. 150 until the frequency is shown on the screen.

Saving stations in preset buttons

Fig. 149 Station on the FM frequency band stored in preset button 6.

Fig. 150 Additional radio functions.

Stations that are already saved are overwritten if another station is stored in the same preset button.

Assigning different preset buttons manually

- Select the frequency band ››› page 139.
- Select station ››› page 140.
- Change to preset buttons. To do this, press button ▽ ››› Fig. 151
- **Press and hold** the desired preset button until an audible signal is heard.
- The current station (**RADIO 21**) will be saved in this preset button.

You can update the station list by pressing and holding the RADIO equipment button or using the ↻ function button ››› Fig. 150.

Choosing stored stations

Fig. 151 Radio mode notification: change of station using the arrow buttons.

Fig. 152 Saved stations.

- Select the frequency band on which the station is saved.
- Press the function button, ▽.
- **Press** the preset button in which the station is saved briefly.

Depending on the settings, you can cycle through the stations of a frequency band with the arrow buttons ◁ and ▷ (**`Arrow buttons:`**).

The stored stations can only be played if they can be received at the current location.

Media Mode

Introduction

"**Media sources**" are audio sources containing audio files on various different data storage devices (e.g. CD, external MP3 players). These audio files can be played with their corresponding applications or the radio's audio inputs.

Note

- **Do not use memory card adapters.**
- **SEAT assumes no liability for any deterioration or loss of files on data storage devices.**

Select a Media source

Fig. 153 Select a Media source

Press the MEDIA equipment button to switch to the Media mode.

When switching to the Media mode, the bottom of the screen shows the available Media sources for a few seconds. The Media source that is currently playing is highlighted.

Open the Media selection menu manually and select a Media source

- In the Media mode, press the MEDIA equipment button to display the *Media selection menu* again.
- Enable the Media source you want by pressing the corresponding function button.
- **OR:** Press the MEDIA equipment button again to cycle through the available Media sources. »

Function button: Media source	
SD	SD card in the slot for SD cards ››› page 142.
*	Audio or MP3 CD in the internal CD player.
	USB data storage in the USB socket ››› page 143. You can see the location of the connection in ››› page 120.
*	Smartphone paired through Bluetooth ››› page 143
	External audio source connected to the AUX-IN multimedia socket ››› page 144.

When a Media source that has already been played is selected again, playback is resumed from the point at which it ended (*except for:* **AUX** ››› page 144).

SD card playback

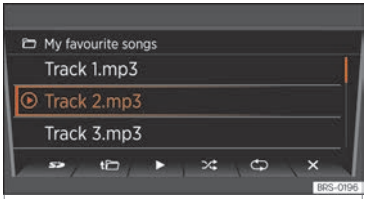


Fig. 154 SD card playback: List of tracks.

- Insert the SD card first with the cut corner facing up and the title on the left in the slot for SD cards.
- Press the button MEDIA.

Playback continues with the last Media source selected. To play the SD card press .

In the folder view, browse with the function button and the settings button. Press to access a higher golder level and rotate the settings switch to select the desired folder.

To switch to the previous or next track, press either or .

Hold one of the arrow buttons to fast-forward or rewind the track.

During playback, the following function buttons are available on the bottom of the screen. Active function buttons are highlighted.

Function button: Meaning[a)]	
	Playlist notification. Here you can also select a track directly with the settings button ››› Fig. 154.
◁	Previous track or rewind.
▷	Play. It can also be pressed to stop the playback. In this case, the symbol changes to ❚❚
▷	Next title or fast-forward

Function button: Meaning[a)]	
	Random play.
	To repeat a folder or track. The symbol indicates that the current track is on repeat.

[a)] Valid for Media sources: SD card, USB socket and Bluetooth audio

In the list of playlists (button) the following options are available:

Function button: Meaning	
	To change the main folder of the SD card.
	To access a higher folder level. In the folder list, you can select a different audio source with ››› page 141.
▷	Play. It can also be pressed to stop the playback.
	Random play.
	To repeat a folder or track. The symbol indicates that the current track is on repeat.

Ejecting the SD card

Connected data storage devices must be prepared before their disconnection in order to remove them without damaging it.

- Press the Infotainment button MENU and then press **System settings**.

- Select **Remove source safely** and then **SD Card**. After correctly ejecting the data storage device from the system, the function button becomes inactive (grey colour).
- Now you can remove the SD card.

External data storage device in the USB socket

Depending on the country and device, there might be one or several USB ports in the vehicle.

The location of the USB ports depends on the vehicle in question.

Audio files on an external data storage device connected to the USB port can be played and controlled via the Infotainment system.

Where this manual refers to external data storage devices, this means USB mass storage devices containing supported audio files, such as MP3 players, iPods™ and USB sticks.

Only compatible audio files are displayed. Other files are ignored.

The rest of operations to use the external data device storage (changing tracks, selecting tracks and enabling playback modes) are carried out similarly to other audio sources (e.g. "Playback from SD card" ››› page 142.

Instructions and restrictions

The number of USB ports and their compatibility with Apple™ devices as well as with other media players depends on the features.

The USB port supplies the usual USB voltage of 5 volts for a USB connection.

Due to the large number of different data storage devices and various iPod™ and iPhone™ generations available, it is not possible to guarantee fault-free operation of all functions described here.

Take into account all other instructions and limitations regarding requirements for media sources.

Disconnecting

Connected data storage devices **must** be prepared before their disconnection in order to remove them.

- Press the Infotainment button MENU and then press System settings.
- Select Remove source safely and then SD Card. After correctly ejecting the data storage device from the system, the function button becomes inactive (grey colour).
- Now the data storage device can be disconnected.

Playback over Bluetooth®*

Connection of a safe audio source through Bluetooth

Bluetooth® Audio mode allows you to listen to audio files being played on a Bluetooth® audio source (e.g., a mobile telephone) connected via Bluetooth® (audio playback by Bluetooth®) over the vehicle speakers.

Requirements

- The Bluetooth® audio source must support the A2DP Bluetooth® profile.
- In the Bluetooth Settings menu the ☑ BT Audio (A2DP/AVRCP) function must be on.

Starting Bluetooth® audio transmission

- Activate Bluetooth® visibility on the external Bluetooth® audio source (e.g., mobile telephone).
- Lower the base volume on the Infotainment system.
- Press the button MEDIA.
- Press the function button to select Bluetooth® as a media source.
- Start searching for the desired Bluetooth® device.
- Please refer to the instructions on the screen of the Infotainment system and on the Bluetooth® audio source regarding the rest of the procedure.

»

You may still need to manually start playback on the Bluetooth® source. When playback on the Bluetooth® audio source is stopped, the Infotainment system remains in Bluetooth® Audio mode.

Controlling playback

The extent to which the Bluetooth® audio source can be controlled via the Infotainment system depends on the connected Bluetooth® audio source.

With media players that support the AVRCP Bluetooth® profile, playback on the Bluetooth® audio source can be automatically started or stopped when the unit is switched to Bluetooth® Audio mode or to a different audio source. In addition, it is possible to view or change the track via the Infotainment system.

⚠ WARNING

Do not perform the pairing and connection process while driving. This may cause an accident!

Note

- **Due to the large number of possible Bluetooth® audio sources, it is not possible to guarantee fault-free operation of all described functions for all these sources.**
- **To operate the media and phone with the Bluetooth® device connected, please read the electronic Instructions Manual of the manufacturer.**
- **Only use compatible Bluetooth® devices. You can request information about compatible Bluetooth® products at a SEAT Authorised Service or online.**

External audio source connected to the AUX-IN multimedia socket

Depending on the version of the vehicle, there is an AUX-IN connection on the front of the radio ››› page 135, in the glove compartment on the passenger side, on the centre console or on the armrest between the front seats.

The AUX-IN multimedia connection can only be used with a 3.5 mm jack.

A connected external audio source is played over the vehicle speakers and **cannot** be controlled via the radio system controls.

The AUX-IN multimedia connection must be activated in the system settings so it can be displayed on the *Media selection menu* ››› page 141.

Connecting an external audio source to the AUX-IN multimedia socket

- Lower the base volume on radio.
- Connect the external audio source to the AUX-IN multimedia socket.
- Start playback on the external audio source.
- In the Media mode, press the MEDIA equipment button to display the Media source selection menu again ››› page 141.
- Press the function button.

The **output volume** of a connected external audio source should be adjusted to the volume of the other audio sources.

Adjusting the playback volume

If you need to increase the playback volume for the external audio source, first lower the base volume on the radio system.

If the sound from the external audio source is **too low**, increase the **output volume** on the external audio source, if possible. If this is not enough, adjust the **input volume** in the system settings to **Level 2** or **Level 3**.

If the sound from the connected external audio source is **too loud or distorted**, lower the **output volume** on the external audio source, if possible. If this is not enough, change the **input volume** to **Level 2** or **Level 1**.

Note

- **When the playback from the external audio source ends or the connection to the AUX-IN socket is interrupted, the radio goes back to the AUX menu.**

- **Interference noise may be heard if the external audio source is powered from the 12-volt power socket of the vehicle.**
- **Please read and observe the manufacturer's instruction manual for the external audio source.**

Phone management*

Connection and operation

Requirements for phone management:
Your mobile phone is connected to the Infotainment System through Bluetooth®.

Connection between the mobile phone and the Infotainment System

- Please observe the information on the **page 143, Playback over Bluetooth®***.
- Press the button PHONE.
- On the Bluetooth® menu of your mobile phone, search the name displayed on screen.
- If necessary, take into account the ››› **page 143** notifications.
- To complete the pairing process, respond to the requests of both devices.

Changing the volume

Media and phone call playback from a connected mobile phone will be conducted through the speaker of the vehicle.

If voice control is enabled on the mobile phone connected, voice communication will also take place through the vehicle speaker.

The playback volume can be modified with the volume control.

Moreover, the volume of navigation announcements can be adjusted in the **Sound settings** menu.

If the volume of the system is muted (notification:), media sources that are playing on the connected Smartphone are also interrupted.

⚠ WARNING

General, mandatory, legal and country-specific instructions and laws for the use of mobile phones inside the vehicle must always be considered.

Note

- **To operate the media and phone with your mobile phone plugged in, please read the electronic Instructions Manual of the manufacturer.**
- **Only use compatible Bluetooth® devices. You can request information about compatible Bluetooth® products at a SEAT Authorised Service or online.**

Functions of the phone

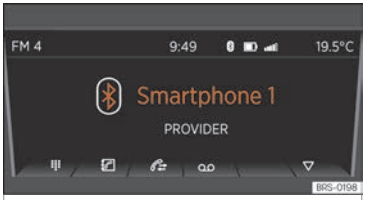


Fig. 155 Phone disconnected.

Fig. 156 Dial a number with the menu button.

After correctly connecting the phone, you cam manage the call functions of your paired mobile phone through the Infotainment System ››› Fig. 155.

»

Dial number:

Press the ⊞ ››› Fig. 155 function button to display the dial screen ››› Fig. 156. Here you can choose a number with the right switch and confirm it by pressing. If the number is correct, the call can be started through the speaker ✆ ››› Fig. 156.

Moreover, the following options are available here:

- SOS: calls the emergency number[1].
- 🔧: connects to a SEAT fault service[1].
- ℹ: connects to the SEAT information hotline[1].
- ∞: starts call to your voice mail. For this purpose, your mailbox number will be requested the first time you select it.

Phonebook:

Press the 📖 ››› Fig. 155 function button to display the phonebook. The phonebook contains all the contacts of your mobile phone, which you can select one by one with the right switch and establish a connection by pressing it, or either access a list with available numbers first. For this purpose, during the first connection, you have to confirm the transfer of your mobile phone contacts. With the star key you can save a contact as a fast-dial number.

Call log:

Press the ✆ ››› Fig. 155 function button to display call log. All the calls from your mobile phone will be shown here once you have confirmed the transfer of your contacts from your phone.

- **All**: shows all calls in chronological order.
- ✆: only shows missed calls.
- ✆: only shows received calls.
- ✆: only shows outgoing calls.

The ☆ function button bookmarks an entry.

Voice mail:

Press the ∞ ››› Fig. 155 function button to access your voice mail inbox. For this purpose, your mailbox number will be requested the first time you select it.

Emergency call:[1]

Press the SOS ››› Fig. 155 function button to make an emergency call.

Favourites

Fig. 157 Fast-dial

Fast-dial:

Press the ▽ ››› Fig. 155 function button to open the fast-dial list ››› Fig. 157. Select an empty slot of your fast-dial list to access the phonebook, where you can choose a contact as a fast-dial number. Select a used slot to dial its corresponding phone number.

[1] Not available in all countries.

Phone calls

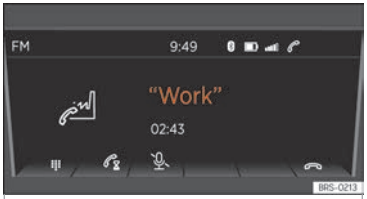


Fig. 158 Ongoing call.

Incoming call:

If you receive a call, you have three options:

- accepting the call with the function button.
- muting the ringtone with the function button.
- rejecting the call with the function button.

Active call:

If you accept the incoming call, you have the following options during the call ››› Fig. 158:

- Press the function key to emit DTMF tones (e.g. to operate an answering machine).
- Press the function button to pause the phone call.
- Press the function button to mute the microphone.
- Press to end the call.

Settings of a connected phone

Use the MENU equipment button to access the phone's settings: The following options are available:

Hands-free: If there is an ongoing call, you can continue the call on the mobile phone or transfer it back to the Infotainment System.	
Phone selection: Cycle through the phones recognised by the Infotainment System or search for new devices.	
User profile: Change the settings of the phone currently connected:	
	Manage your fast-dial numbers (e.g. delete one).
	Set or change voice mail numbers.
	Sort your phonebook.
	Download your contacts again.
	Activate/deactivate mobile phone notifications when turning off the engine.
	Select a ringtone (only if the phone is not emitting any sounds).
Bluetooth®: Here you can change the connection settings of the telephone. For instance, you can delete known devices.	

Note

- **A device connected through Bluetooth®, if it supports this profile, will always be used for calls and audio through Bluetooth®.**
- **To operate the media and phone with your mobile phone plugged in, please read the electronic Instructions Manual of the manufacturer.**

Drive Mii App*

Introduction

Fig. 159 Application connection main menu.

The connected smartphone offers the following options:

1. Navigation over the smartphone with navigation announcements on the radio.
2. ECOTRAINER display.
3. Driving data notifications.

»

④ Notifications from the odometer, etc.

⑤ Search in all fields.

You can also use the telephone function of your connected smartphone over the radio using the right switch.

Note

To operate the telephone and multimedia aspects and for navigation with the connected smartphone, read the instructions manual of the manufacturer.

Connection and operation

Requirement: Your smartphone is connected to the radio through USB ››› page 143 and the SEAT application to connect the smartphone to the radio is installed on your smartphone[1].

Place the smartphone in its socket and turn it on. Removal and installation of the equipment and the socket are described in ››› page 121.

Connection between smartphone and radio

- Press the button MENU to open the main menu.
- Afterwards, select and enable the **Connection of the application** function with the settings button.

Once the connection is established, you can manage radio music playback with the smartphone. You can start the navigation on the smartphone and listen to the navigation announcements on the audio system of the vehicle.

Instructions for navigation

Acoustic navigation announcements will be played on the speakers of the vehicle. Regarding this, take into account the instructions in **Adjusting the volume** ››› page 148.

You can manage this from the connected smartphone ››› page 148.

Changing the volume

Multimedia playback, navigation announcements and phone calls emitted by the connected smartphone will be played on the speakers of the vehicle.

The volume of the traffic announcement can be modified with the volume control.

You can also adjust the volume of the navigation announcements on the **Sound settings** menu.

When the volume of the system is muted (notification: 🔇), playback of multimedia sources played on the connected smartphone is also interrupted.

Note

- **For more information about the installation and use of the application, see the information provided with the vehicle.**
- **To operate the media and phone and to navigate with your Smartphone plugged in, please read the electronic Instructions Manual of the manufacturer.**
- **A device connected through Bluetooth®, if it supports this profile, will always be used for calls and audio through Bluetooth®. and connection for applications.**
- **Only use compatible Bluetooth® devices. You can request information about compatible Bluetooth® products at a SEAT Authorised Service or online.**

[1] For more information about the application regarding installation and use, take into account the information provided with the vehicle.

Driving

Start and driving

Stopping and starting the engine

Switching on the ignition and starting the engine

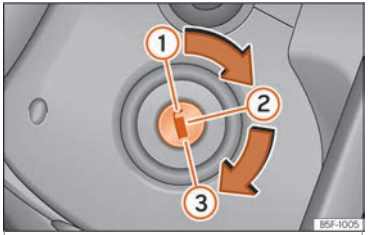


Fig. 160 Vehicle key positions

Read the additional information carefully
››› page 22

Immobiliser display

When an invalid key is used or in the event of a system fault, **SAFE** is displayed on the instrument panel. The engine cannot be started.

Pushing or towing

For technical reasons, the vehicle must **not** be push- or tow-started. Jump starting is preferable.

Key not authorised for the vehicle

If a key which is not authorised for this vehicle is inserted in the ignition lock, it can be removed as follows:

- *Automatic transmission:* the key cannot be removed from the ignition lock. Press and release the selector lever locking button. Key can be removed from the vehicle.
- *Manual transmission:* Remove the key from the ignition.

⚠ WARNING

Switching off the engine while driving makes stopping the vehicle difficult. As a consequence you may lose control of the vehicle and there is a risk of serious accident.

- **The assisted braking and steering systems, the airbag system, seat belts and certain safety equipment are only active while the engine is running.**
- **The engine should only be switched off when the vehicle is at a standstill.**

⚠ WARNING

While the engine is running or starting it could help reduce the risk of serious injury.

- **Never start or leave the engine running in poorly ventilated or closed spaces. Exhaust gas contains carbon monoxide, a toxic, colourless and odourless gas. Carbon monoxide can cause people to lose consciousness. It can also cause death.**
- **Never leave the vehicle unattended if the engine is running. The vehicle could move off suddenly or something unexpected could happen resulting in damage and serious injury.**
- **Never use start boosters. Cold start sprays could explode or increase the engine speed unexpectedly.**

⚠ WARNING

The components of the exhaust system reach very high temperatures. This could cause a fire and considerable damage.

- **Always park your vehicle so that no part of the exhaust system can come in contact with flammable materials (such as wood, leaves, spilled fuel, dried grass, etc.).**
- **Never apply additional underseal or anti-corrosion coatings to the exhaust pipes, catalytic converter or the heat shields on the exhaust system.**

»

⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable or careless use of the vehicle key could result in serious injury.

- Always take all the keys with you whenever you leave the vehicle. If not, the engine could accidentally be started and electrical equipment such as the windows could accidentally be operated resulting in serious injury.
- Never leave children or disabled people alone in the car. Passengers could be trapped in the car in an emergency and not be able to get themselves to safety. For example, depending on the time of the year, temperatures inside a locked and closed vehicle can be extremely high or extremely low resulting in serious injuries and illness or even death, particularly for young children.
- Never remove the key from the ignition if the vehicle is in motion. The steering may lock and it will not be possible to turn the steering wheel.

CAUTION

- An attempt to start the engine while driving or starting the engine immediately after turning it off can cause damage to the engine or starter motor.
- When the engine is cold, avoid high revs and heavy acceleration and do not make the engine work hard.
- Do not push or tow start the engine. Unburnt fuel could damage the catalytic converter.

For the sake of the environment

Do not warm the engine at idle speed; start driving immediately if the visibility is OK. This helps the engine reach operating temperature faster and reduces emissions.

Note

- If the key is left in the ignition lock with the engine off for long periods, the vehicle battery will run flat.
- For automatic gearbox vehicles, the key can only be removed from the ignition lock if the gear selector lever is in position P. If applicable, press and release the locking button of the selection lever.
- Electrical devices with a high power consumption are switched off temporarily when the engine starts.
- When the engine is started cold, there may be strong vibrations for a few moments for technical reasons. This is quite normal, and no cause for concern.
- Natural gas engines always start up with petrol, as a certain operating temperature is required for running with gas. Once the required operating temperature is reached, the engine will change to operate with natural gas.

Stopping the engine

Switching off the engine

– Stop the vehicle ››› ⚠.

– Turn the ignition key to position (1) ››› Fig. 160.

Engaging the steering wheel lock

In vehicles with automatic gearbox, the ignition key can only be removed when the selector lever is in position **N**[1].

– Remove the key from the ignition in position (1) ››› Fig. 160 ››› ⚠.

– Turn the steering wheel until you hear it engage.

Possible vehicle theft is prevented with the steering lock engaged.

[1] Depending upon country.

⚠ WARNING

Never switch off the engine while the vehicle is moving. You may lose control of the vehicle and there is a risk of serious accident.

- The airbags and belt tensioners do not work when the ignition is switched off.
- The brake servo does not work with the engine off. To stop, the brake pedal must be pressed with more force.
- As the power steering does not work if the engine is not running, you will need more strength to steer than normally.
- If the key is removed from the ignition, the steering may lock and it will not be possible to steer the vehicle.

CAUTION

If the engine has been driven at high speed for a prolonged period of time, it may overheat when turned off. To avoid engine damage, allow the engine to run for approximately 2 minutes in neutral before switching it off.

Note

After stopping the engine, the engine compartment fan may continue running for a few minutes, even when the ignition has been switched off or the key removed. The radiator fan is automatically switched off.

Electronic immobiliser

The gear lock prevents the engine from being started with an unauthorised key and the vehicle being moved.

The vehicle key has a built-in chip. It automatically deactivates the electronic immobiliser when the key is inserted into the ignition lock.

The electronic immobilizer will be activated again automatically as soon as you remove the key from the ignition lock.

For this reason, the vehicle can only be used with a genuine SEAT key with the correct code. Coded keys can be obtained from SEAT dealerships ››› page 92.

If an unauthorised key is used, the following signal appears on the instrument panel display **SAFE**. The vehicle cannot be started in this case

Note

The correct operation of the vehicle is only guaranteed when original SEAT keys are used.

Braking and parking

Introduction

⚠ WARNING

Driving with worn brake pads or a faulty brake system may lead to serious accident.

- If you believe the brake pads to be worn or the brake system to be faulty, immediately refer to a specialised workshop to check the brake pads and replace the worn ones.

⚠ WARNING

Careless parking can cause serious injury.

- Never remove the key from the ignition if the vehicle is in motion. The steering lock may engage and lock the steering wheel making the vehicle impossible to control.
- Always park your vehicle so that no part of the exhaust system can come in contact with flammable materials (such as wood, leaves, dried grass, spilled fuel, etc.).
- Always apply the handbrake when you leave your vehicle and when you park.
- Never leave children or disabled people alone in the vehicle. They could release the electronic parking brake, activate the selector lever or gear stick and start the vehicle moving. This could result in a serious accident.

»

- Always take all the keys with you whenever you leave the vehicle. The engine could accidentally be started and electrical equipment such as the windows could accidentally be operated resulting in serious injury.
- Never leave children or disabled people alone in the car. They could be trapped in the car in an emergency and will not be able to get themselves to safety. For example, depending on the time of the year, temperatures inside a locked and closed vehicle can be extremely high or extremely low resulting in serious injuries and illness or even death, particularly for young children.

CAUTION

- Special care should be taken when parking in areas with high kerbs or fixed barriers. Objects protruding from the ground may damage the bumper or other parts of the vehicle during manoeuvres. To avoid damage, stop before the wheels touch the barrier or kerb.
- Special attention is required when driving through entrances, over ramps, kerbs or other objects. The vehicle underbody, bumpers, mudguards and running gear, and the engine and exhaust system could be damaged as you drive over these objects.

Control and warning lamps

(P)	It lights up ››› ⚠
Handbrake applied ››› page 153.	

(!)	It lights up ››› ⚠
Fault in the brake system **Do not drive on!** Seek professional advice ››› page 154.	
Brake fluid level inadequate. **Do not drive on!** Check brake fluid level ››› page 201.	
Together with the ABS control lamp: ABS and EBV do not function. **Do not drive on!** Seek professional advice ››› page 154.	

Several warning and control lamps light up for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, signalling that the function is being verified. They will switch off after a few seconds.

WARNING

If the warning lamps are ignored, the vehicle may stall in traffic, or may cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Never ignore the warning lamps.
- Stop the vehicle safely as soon as possible.

WARNING

Driving with brakes in bad condition could result in a serious accident.

- If the brake warning lamp does not turn off or if it lights up when driving, the brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low or there is a fault in the brake system. Obtain professional assistance immediately ››› page 200, Checking the brake fluid level.
- If the brake warning lamp lights up together with the ABS warning lamp, the ABS regulation could be malfunctioning. As a result, the rear wheels can lock relatively easily when braking. If the rear wheels lock this could result in loss of vehicle control! If possible, reduce your speed and drive carefully to a specialised workshop close by to check the brake system. During the following journey, avoid sudden braking and manoeuvres.

CAUTION

Failure to heed the warning lamps when they appear may result in faults in the vehicle.

Handbrake

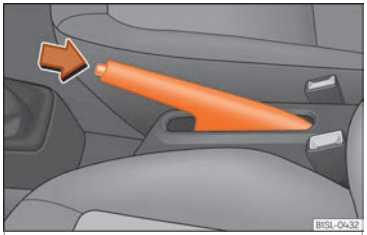


Fig. 161 Between the front seats: parking brake.

Using the handbrake

- Pull firmly in an upwards direction on the handbrake lever while pressing the button.
- The handbrake is applied when the control lamp (P) lights up on the instrument panel ››› page 152 when the ignition is switched on.

Releasing the handbrake

- Pull gently in an upwards direction on the handbrake lever and press the lock button ››› Fig. 161 (arrow).
- Move the handbrake lever downwards keeping the lock button pressed.

⚠ WARNING

The incorrect use of the handbrake may result in a serious accident.

- **Never use the handbrake to brake the vehicle except in an emergency. The braking distance is considerably longer, because braking is only applied to the rear wheels. Always use the foot brake.**
- **Never drive with the handbrake gently applied. This can overheat the brake, affecting the brakes system. This also causes premature wear on the rear brake pads.**
- **Never accelerate from the engine compartment with the engine running and a gear engaged. The vehicle could move, even if the handbrake is applied.**

ⓘ Note

If the vehicle moves at a speed superior to 6 km/h (4 mph) with the handbrake applied, an audible warning is sounded.

Parking

When parking your vehicle, all legal requirements should be observed.

To park the vehicle

Complete operations only in the sequence given.

- Park the vehicle on a suitable surface ››› ⚠.
- Press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle comes to a standstill.
- Apply the handbrake firmly ››› page 153.
- For an automatic gearbox, move the selector lever to position **N**.
- Switch off the engine and release the brake pedal.
- Remove the key from the ignition.
- If necessary, turn the steering wheel slightly to lock the steering.
- With a manual gearbox, engage 1st gear on flat ground and slopes, or even reverse gear on hills, and release the clutch pedal.
- Ensure that all passengers leave the vehicle, especially children.
- When leaving the vehicle, take all keys with you.
- Lock the vehicle.

Additional information for steep slopes and hills

Before switching off the engine, rotate the steering wheel so that if the vehicle should move, it will be held by the kerb.

- On slopes, turn the front wheels so that they are against the edge of the kerb.
- Uphill, turn the wheels towards the centre of the road. »

⚠ WARNING

The components of the exhaust system reach very high temperatures. This could cause a fire and considerable damage.

- **Always park your vehicle so that no part of the exhaust system can come in contact with flammable materials (such as wood, leaves,dried grass, or spilled fuel).**

CAUTION

- **Special care should be taken when parking in areas with high kerbs or fixed barriers. Objects protruding from the ground may damage the bumper or other parts of the vehicle during manoeuvres. To avoid damage, stop before the wheels touch the barrier or kerb.**
- **Special attention is required when driving through entrances, over ramps, kerbs or other objects. The vehicle underbody, bumpers, mudguards and running gear, and the engine and exhaust system could be damaged as you drive over these objects.**

Information on the brakes

For the first 200 to 300 km, the **new brake pads** have not yet reached their maximum braking capacity, and need to be "run in" first ››› ⚠. The slightly reduced braking effect can be compensated for by increasing pressure on the brake pedal. **While running in, the full braking distance or emergency braking distance is larger** then when the brake pads have been run in. While running in, avoid full power braking or situations requiring braking performance. For example, in heavy traffic.

The **rate of wear of the brake pads** depends to a great extent on the conditions in which the vehicle is used and the way the vehicle is driven. If the vehicle is used frequently in city traffic or for short trips or driven sport style, visit a specialised workshop regularly, more frequently than advised in the Maintenance Programme, to have the brake pads checked.

If you drive with **wet brakes**, for example, after crossing areas of water, in heavy rainfall or even after washing the car, the effect of the brakes is lessened as the brake discs are wet or even frozen (in winter). At higher speed, "dry" the brakes as quickly as possible by braking gently several times. Only do this without endangering vehicles behind you or any other road users ››› ⚠.

A **layer of salt on the discs and brake pads** will reduce the effectiveness of the brakes and increase braking distance. If you drive for a prolonged period on salted roads without braking then brake carefully several times to eliminate the layer of salt on the brakes ››› ⚠.

If the vehicle remains parked for considerable lengths of time, is used little, or if the brakes are not used, there may be **corrosion** on the brake discs and a build up of **dirt** on the brake pads. If the brakes are not used frequently, or if rust has formed on the discs, SEAT recommends cleaning the pads and discs by braking firmly a few times at a moderately high speed. Only do this without endangering vehicles behind you or any other road users ››› ⚠.

Faults in the brake system

During braking, if you notice that the vehicle does not react as usual (that the braking distance has increased suddenly) it may be possible that there is a fault in the braking system. This is indicated by the warning lamp (!). Take the vehicle to a specialised workshop immediately and have the fault repaired. Drive at a moderate speed and be prepared to use more pressure on the brake pedal, and allow for longer stopping distances.

Brake servo

The brake servo only operates when the engine is running and the pressure applied by the driver on the brake pedal increases.

If the brake servo does not operate or the vehicle must be towed, then the brake pedal will have to be pressed with more force given that the braking distance will be increased when the brake servo does not operate ››› ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

New brake pads do not brake to full efficiency.

- For the first 320 km, new brake pads have not yet reached their maximum braking capacity, and need to be "run in" first. For this, to compensate for reduced braking efficiency the brake pedal will have to be pressed with more force.
- To avoid losing control of the vehicle and causing serious accidents, always take great care when driving with new brake pads.
- When running in new brake pads, always respect the safety distances between you and other vehicles and do not cause situations requiring extreme braking performance.

⚠ WARNING

When brakes overheat, braking is less efficient and braking distances increase.

- When driving on slopes, brakes can be overloaded and overheat quickly.
- Reduce speed or change down a gear when faced with steep and long slopes. This allows you to use the engine braking effect and to reduce the strain on the brake system.
- Non-standard or damaged front spoilers could restrict the airflow to the brakes and cause them to overheat.

⚠ WARNING

Wet, frozen or salt-covered brakes take longer to engage and this increases braking distances.

- Test the brakes carefully.
- Dry the brakes, free them of ice and salt by braking gently several times, when visibility, weather, and road and traffic conditions permit.

⚠ WARNING

Driving without the brake servo may significantly increase the braking distance and result in a severe accident.

- Never allow the vehicle to move forwards when the engine is switched off.
- If the brake servo does not operate or the vehicle must be towed, then the brake pedal will have to be pressed with more force given that the braking distance will be increased when the brake servo does not operate.

⚠ CAUTION

- Never make the brakes "slip" by pressing the pedal gently, if it is not really necessary to brake. Continuously pressing on the brake pedal will heat the brakes. This could significantly reduce braking power, increase braking distance or even result in the total failure of the brake system.
- Reduce speed or change down a gear when faced with steep and long slopes. This allows you to use the engine braking effect and to reduce the strain on the brake system. Otherwise, the brakes may overheat and fail. Only use the brakes to reduce speed or to stop.

Note

Make use, when having the front brake pads checked, and have the rear pads checked also. The thickness of the brake pads should be checked visually and regularly, by looking through the openings in the wheel rims or from underneath the vehicle. If necessary, remove the wheels to check them thoroughly. SEAT recommends taking your car in for technical service.

Braking and stability systems

Warning and control lamps

It lights up ››› ⚠

ESC* disconnected by the system.
Turn the ignition on and off. If necessary, drive for a short distance.

Fault in the ESC*.
Go to a specialised workshop.

Along with the ABS control lamp: fault in the ABS.
Go to a specialised workshop. The vehicle can be braked without ABS.

The battery has been reconnected ››› page 202.

Flashes

ESC* or ASR regulating.
Stop pressing the gas pedal. Adjust your driving style to the road conditions.

It lights up ››› ⚠

Traction Control* faulty or switched off by the system.
Go to a specialised workshop.

Flashes

Traction Control* regulator in operation.
Lift off your fit from the gas pedal. Adjust your driving style to the road conditions.

It lights up ››› ⚠

Along with the ESC* control lamp: fault in the ABS.
Go to a specialised workshop. The vehicle can be braked without ABS.

Together with the warning lamp: ABS and EBV do not function.
Do not drive on!
Seek professional advice ››› page 154.

Several warning and control lamps light up for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, signalling that the function is being verified. They will switch off after a few seconds.

⚠ WARNING

If the warning lamps are ignored, the vehicle may stall in traffic, or may cause accidents and severe injuries.

- **Never ignore the warning lamps.**
- **Stop the vehicle safely as soon as possible.**

⚠ WARNING

- **If the ABS warning lamp does not go out or if it lights up while driving, the ABS is not working properly. The vehicle can only be stopped using normal braking without ABS. The protection provided by the ABS is not available. Visit a specialised workshop as soon as possible.**

CAUTION

Failure to heed the warning lamps when they appear may result in faults in the vehicle.

Brake assist systems

The **assisted brake systems** are the electronic distribution of braking force (EBV), the anti-lock brake system (ABS), the brake assist system (BAS), the electronic differential lock (EDL), traction control (TC)*, the traction control system (ASR) and the electronic stability control (ESC*).

The brake assistance systems only operate when the ignition is switched on. They contribute significantly to increasing active safety.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)*

ESC* reduces the risk of skidding and increases the vehicle stability by braking individual wheels under specific driving conditions. ESC* detects critical handling situations, such as understeer, oversteer and wheelspin on the driven wheels. The system stabilises

the vehicle by braking individual wheels or by reducing the engine torque.

The ESC* has limits. It is important to realise that ESC* is also subject to the laws of physics. ESC* will not be able to deal with all situations with which drivers may be faced. For example, if the road surface changes suddenly then ESC* will not be useful in all cases. If the vehicle suddenly enters a section covered by water, mud or snow then ESC* will not provide assistance in the same way as on dry ground. If the vehicle loses its grip on the ground and moves on a film of water ("aquaplaning"), the ESC* will not be able to help the driver control the vehicle due to the loss of adherence with the road surface preventing braking and steering. If the vehicle is driven through series of bends at high speed, the ESC* will not always be as effective: aggressive driving is not the same as slow driving.

Adjust your speed and driving style to suit visibility, and weather, road and traffic conditions. ESC* cannot push the limits of the laws of physics; improve the transmission available or maintain the vehicle on the road if a lack of driver attention creates an inevitable situation. Otherwise, ESC* assists in maintaining vehicle control in extreme situations and uses the movements of the steering made by the driver to maintain the vehicle moving in the desired direction. If the vehicle is driven at such a speed that it will leave the road before ESC* can intervene then the system cannot provide assistance.

The ABS, BAS, ASR and EDL systems are incorporated into the ESC*. The ESC* is always on[1].

Anti-lock system (ABS)

ABS can prevent the wheels from locking during braking until just before the vehicle stops thus helping the driver to steer the vehicle and maintain control. This means that, even during full braking, the risk of skidding is reduced:

- Press and hold the brake pedal fully. Do not remove your foot from the brake pedal or reduce braking force!
- Do not "pump" the brake pedal, or reduce braking force!
- Maintain vehicle direction when braking fully.
- When the brake pedal is released or when the brake force is reduced, ABS is turned off.

ABS control can be observed by **vibration of the brake pedal** and noise. You should never expect the ABS to reduce the braking distance under *any* circumstances. This distance will increase when driving on gravel, recent snow or on icy or slippery ground.

Brake assist system (BAS)

The brake assistance system may reduce the required braking distance. The brake assistance system boosts the braking force if you press the brake pedal quickly in an emergency. As a result, the braking pressure increases rapidly, the braking force is multiplied and the braking distance is reduced. This enables the ABS to be activated more quickly and effectively.

Do **not** lift your foot off the brake pedal! When the brake pedal is released or when the brake force is reduced, brake assist automatically turns off the brake servo.

Traction control system (ASR) or Traction Control (TC)*

In the event of wheelspin, the traction control system ASR or TC reduces the engine torque to match the amount of grip available. The ASR or TC makes some situations easier, for example, when starting, accelerating or going uphill, even in unfavourable road conditions. »

[1] Depending on the version.

Electronic differential lock (EDS)

EDL is available when driving in straight lines under normal conditions. When the EDL detects wheelspin, it brakes the spinning wheel and directs the power to the other one. To prevent the disc brake of the braked wheel from overheating, the EDL cuts out automatically if subjected to excessive loads. The EDL will switch on again automatically when the brake has cooled down.

⚠ WARNING

Driving at high speed on icy, slippery or wet ground can result in loss of vehicle control and serious injury to the driver and passengers.

- **Adjust your speed and driving style to visibility, road, traffic and weather conditions. Even though the brake assist systems, ABS, BAS, EDL, ASR and ESC* provide more security, do not take unnecessary risks while driving.**
- **Brake assistance systems can not overcome the laws of physics. Even with ESC* and other systems, slippery and wet roads will always be dangerous.**
- **Driving to quickly on wet ground can result in the wheels losing contact with the ground in an effect known as "aquaplaning". Without adherence, it is impossible to brake, steer or control the vehicle.**
- **Brake assistance systems cannot avoid accidents if, for example, the driver does not respect safety distances or drives to quickly in difficult conditions.**
- **Even though brake assistance systems are extremely effective and help control the vehicle in difficult situations, remember that the vehicle stability depends on tyre grip.**
- **When accelerating on a slippery surface, for example on ice or snow, press the accelerator carefully. The wheels can still slip even with brake assistance systems resulting in loss of vehicle control.**

⚠ WARNING

The effectiveness of the ESC* can be considerably reduced if other components and systems affecting driving dynamics are not maintained or are not functioning correctly. This includes, among others, brakes, tyres and other systems already mentioned.

- **Remember that changing and fitting other components to the vehicle can affect operation of the ABS, BAS, ASR TC, EDL and ESC*.**
- **Changes to the vehicle suspension or using unapproved wheel/tyre combinations can affect operation of the ABS, BAS, ASR, TC, EDL and ESC* and their effectiveness.**
- **Likewise, the effectiveness of ESC* depends on the use of suitable tyres** **››› page 206.**

ℹ Note

- **To ensure that the ESC*, ASR and TC work properly, all four wheels must be fitted with identical tyres. Any differences in the rolling radius of the tyres can cause the system to reduce engine power when this is not desired.**
- **If a malfunction should occur in the ABS, the ESC*, ASR, TC and EDL will also be affected.**
- **Noises may be heard while any of the above systems are operating.**

Changing gear

Introduction

When reverse gear is engaged and the ignition is switched on the following takes place:

- Reverse lights light up.
- The rear wiper blade performs one movement when the windscreen wiper is activated.
- If necessary, connect the parking distance warning system.

⚠ WARNING

Rapid acceleration can cause loss of traction and skidding, especially on slippery ground. This could cause loss of control of

the vehicle resulting in an accident and considerable damage.

- **Use rapid acceleration only when visibility, weather, road conditions and traffic permit.**

⚠ WARNING

Do not allow the brakes to "rub" for a prolonged period of time, or brake frequently or for long periods of time. Continuous braking heats up the brakes. This could significantly reduce braking power, increase braking distance or even result in the total failure of the brake system.

Control and warning lamps

It lights up

Place the automatic gearbox lever in the position **N** and do not press the brake pedal.
Press the brake pedal to select a list of gears.

Near the blinking display on the instrument panel display: the gearbox level of automatic transmission is not in position **N**, which is required to start the engine.
Move the gearbox lever to position **N** and start the engine.

Flashes

An automatic gearbox in the vehicle does not guarantee that the vehicle will not roll away.
Engage the handbrake.

N Flashes

On the instrument panel display, near the required control lamp, press the brake pedal: requirement to start the engine.
Move the gearshift lever to the **N** position and start the engine.

On the instrument panel display: while driving forward, try to move the gearbox level to position **R**.
Stop the vehicle and move the gearbox lever to position **N** in order to change the position afterwards **R**.

On the instrument panel display: the gearbox lever of an automatic transmission mas moved to position **R** or **D**, but the brake pedal was not operated.
Operate the brake pedal, move the gearbox lever to position **N** and then to the desired position **R** or **D**.

When switching on the ignition some warning and indication lamps light up for a short time to check the operations. They will switch off after a few seconds.

Manual gear change

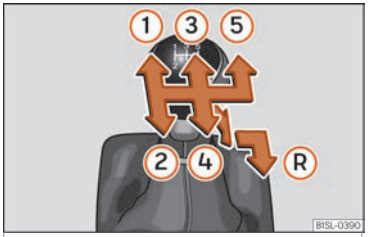


Fig. 162 Gear shift pattern of a 5-speed manual gearbox

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 28

Shifting down a gear

Shifting down a gear while driving must be carried out gear by gear, i.e. to the gear immediately preceding the current gear and at an engine speed that is not excessive ››› ⚠. At high speeds, or high engine speeds, skipping one or various gears when shifting down a gear can cause damage to the clutch and the gearbox, even if the clutch is not engaged during the process ››› ❗.

⚠ WARNING

When the engine is running, the vehicle will start to move as soon as a gear is engaged and the clutch released. »

- Never engage the reverse gear when a vehicle is moving forward.

⚠ WARNING

As a consequence of shifting down a gear incorrectly, you may lose control of the vehicle and cause an accident with serious consequences.

CAUTION

If, at high speeds or high engine speeds, the gear lever is shifted down to a gear that is too low, serious damage can be caused to the clutch and gearbox. This may also happen if you press the clutch pedal and it does not engage.

CAUTION

To prevent damage and avoid premature wear, please observe the following:

- **While driving, do not leave your hand resting on the gear stick. The pressure applied by your hand is transmitted to the gearbox selector forks.**
- **Always ensure that the vehicle is completely stopped before engaging the reverse gear.**
- **When changing gear, always make sure the clutch pedal is pushed right to the floor.**
- **Never hold the vehicle "on the clutch" on hills with the engine on.**

Automatic gear change

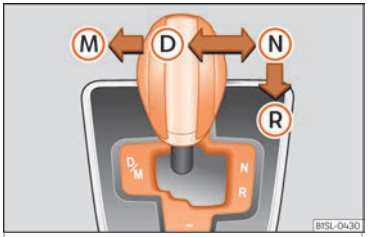


Fig. 163 Automatic gearbox diagram of gears

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 28

Move the selector lever to the **N** position to:

- Starting up the engine
- Remove the key from the ignition switch
- Engage the steering wheel lock

Move the selector lever to the **D** or **R** position to:

- Park the vehicle
- Repair a puncture
- Changing a wheel

To move the gear selector lever from the position **N** to **D** or to **R**, first press and hold the brake pedal.

In the instrument panel display, with the ignition switched on, the selected gear range or the gear engaged in the gearbox is shown.

R - Reverse gear

Reverse gear is selected. Engage only when the vehicle is *stopped*.

N - Neutral

The gearbox is in neutral. No movement is transmitted to the wheels and the engine does not act as a brake.

D - Standard driving position

The gears are changed (up and down) automatically. The gear shifts are determined by the engine load, your individual driving style and the speed of the vehicle.

M - Tiptronic driving position (manual shift programme)

All gears can be changed (up and down) manually ››› page 161. This is possible as long as the system is not changing gear automatically due to a traffic situation.

⚠ WARNING

Placing the selector lever in an incorrect position may cause loss of control of the vehicle and a serious accident.

- **Do not press the accelerator when engaging a range of gears.**

- With the engine running and a gear range selected, the vehicle will move when the accelerator is pressed.
- Never engage reverse gear while driving.
- Unintentional movements of the vehicle could cause serious injury.
- As a driver, you should never leave your vehicle if the engine is running and a gear range is engaged. If you have to leave your vehicle while the engine is running, you must always apply the handbrake and put the selector lever in position N.
- Never engage the R gear range when the vehicle is moving.
- Never leave the vehicle without applying the handbrake. With the engine running the vehicle moves downhill regardless of the gear range selected.

Note

If, while driving, the selector lever is accidentally placed in position N, lift your foot off the accelerator. Wait until the engine is running at idle speed before selecting a new gear range.

Engaging gear with Tiptronic

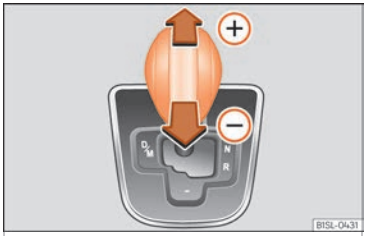


Fig. 164 Lever in the Tiptronic position

With Tiptronic, the gears can be changed up or down manually with the automatic gearbox. When you change to the Tiptronic programme, the vehicle remains in the currently selected gear. This is possible as long as the system is not changing gear automatically due to a traffic situation.

Using Tiptronic

- Place the lever in the position **D** to the left on the Tiptronic shift gate **M** ››› ⚠ **in Automatic gear change on page 160**.
- Press the lever forwards (+) or backwards (−) to move up or down a gear ››› **Fig. 164**.
- Place the lever back to the position **M** to the left on the Tiptronic shift gate, to leave Tiptronic mode ››› ⚠ **in Automatic gear change on page 160**.

With the lever in the position **D**, and pressing forwards (+) or backwards (−) the Tiptronic programme can be selected **M**.

CAUTION

- When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the next gear shortly before the maximum engine speed is reached.
- When reducing speed manually, the gearbox only shifts gear when the engine can no longer exceed the maximum engine speed.

Driving with automatic gearbox

The gearbox changes gear ratios automatically as the vehicle moves.

Driving down hills

The steeper the gradient, the lower the gear you will need to select. The lowest gears increase the engine braking work. Never go down hills with the selector lever in neutral **N**.

- You should reduce speed accordingly.
- Place the lever in the position **D** to the left on the Tiptronic shift gate **M** ››› **page 161**.
- Gently pull the selector lever back (−) to change down a gear.

»

Starting when going up a slope

The steeper the gradient, the lower the gear you will need.

When stopping on a slope with a gear range engaged, the vehicle must be prevented from rolling backwards by always pressing the brake pedal or pulling the handbrake lever up. When starting, release the brake pedal or the handbrake ››› ❗.

Kick-down

The kickdown system provides maximum acceleration when the gear selector lever is in the position **D**, or in the Tiptronic position **M**.

When the accelerator pedal is pressed right down, the automatic gearbox will shift down to a lower gear, depending on road speed and engine speed. This takes advantage of the maximum acceleration of the vehicle ››› ⚠.

When the accelerator is pressed to the floor, the automatic gearbox shifts to the next gear only after the engine reaches the specified maximum engine speed.

⚠ WARNING

Rapid acceleration can cause loss of traction and skidding, especially on slippery ground. This could cause loss of control of the vehicle resulting in an accident and serious injury.

- **Always adapt your driving style to suit the flow of traffic.**
- **Only use the kick-down function or rapid acceleration if visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions so permit.**
- **Never put other road users in danger by accelerating or with your driving style.**

CAUTION

If you stop on a hill with a gear range engaged, do not try to prevent the vehicle from rolling back by pressing on the accelerator. Otherwise, the automatic gearbox may overheat causing damage.

Automatic gearbox malfunction

Control lamps

It lights up red

Fault in the automatic gearbox.
Do not drive on!
Seek professional advice. Failure to do so could result in considerable damage to the transmission.

It lights up yellow

In the automatic gearbox the gears can engage incorrectly.
Switch the ignition on and off. When the control lamp does not light up, find the nearest specialised workshop and have the automatic gearbox checked.

The automatic gearbox overheats temporarily.
Let the transmission cool with the gearbox lever in the position **N**. When the control lamp does not light up, find the nearest specialised workshop and have the automatic gearbox checked.

It lights up

Along with the yellow control lamp for transmission temperature: the automatic gearbox overheats. Press the brake pedal and let it cool down. Avoid pressing the accelerator. When the control lamp does not light up, find the nearest specialised workshop and have the automatic gearbox checked.

Back-up programme

When automatic gearbox warning and indication lamps light up on the instrument panel, there may be a system malfunction ››› page 158. In the event of some faults the automatic gearbox functions using a backup programme. When the programme is activated, it is possible to drive the vehicle, however, at low speeds and within a selected range of gears.

With the manual gearbox, in some cases **it is not possible to drive with all the gears**.

In all cases the automatic gearbox must be checked at a specialised workshop.

Automatic gearbox overheating

The automatic gearbox can overheat with a prolonged start up, or when stopping and starting continuously. This overheating is displayed with a warning lamp in the instrument panel. Additionally, an audible warning can be heard. Stop and let the gearbox cool ›››.

The vehicle moves forward or back despite having selected a gear range

When the vehicle does not move in the required direction, the system may not have the gear range correctly engaged. Press the brake pedal and engage the gear range again. If the vehicle still does not move in the required direction, there is a system malfunction. Seek specialist assistance and have the system checked.

CAUTION

- **When the gearbox is displayed as overheating for the first time, the vehicle must be parked safely or must be driven at a speed of more than 20 km/h (12 mph).**
- **When the warning lamp lights up and the audible warning is heard, the vehicle must be parked safely and the engine switched off. Let the gearbox cool down.**
- **To prevent damage to the gearbox, driving must only be continued when the warning lamps are no longer lit up. While the gearbox is overheated, starting up and driving, even at a slow speed should be avoided.**

Recommended gear display

In some vehicles, the recommended gear for reducing fuel consumption is displayed on the instrument panel:

Display	Meaning
●	Optimum gear.
↑	Recommendation to change up a gear.
↓	Recommendation to change down a gear.

WARNING

The recommended gear display is intended as a guideline only; it should never replace the driver's attention to driving carefully.

- **Responsibility for selecting the correct gear for each situation continues to lie with the driver, for example when overtaking or climbing a hill.**

For the sake of the environment

Selecting the most appropriate gear for the situation will help you to save fuel.

Note

The recommended gear display is switched off when the clutch pedal is pressed.

Steering

Information relating to different vehicle processes.

Electro-mechanical power steering assists the driver when steering.

Electro-mechanical power steering adapts *electronically* to the speed of the car, torque and turning angle.

If the power steering should fail at any time or the engine is switched off (for instance when being towed), the car can still be steered, as long as the key remains in the ignition. However, more effort than normal will be required to turn the steering wheel.

Steering column mechanical lock

To prevent theft, we recommend you lock the steering before leaving the vehicle. »

Lock the steering column by removing the key from the ignition when the vehicle is stopped.

Please engage steering lock

Park the vehicle ››› page 151.

Remove the key from the ignition.

Turn the steering wheel slightly until you hear the steering lock.

Unlocking the steering

Insert the key in the ignition lock.

Turn the steering wheel slightly to release the steering lock.

Hold the steering wheel in this position and switch on the ignition.

⚠ WARNING

If the power steering is not working then the steering wheel is much more difficult to turn and the vehicle more difficult to control.

- **The power steering only works when the engine is running.**
- **Never allow the vehicle to move when the engine is switched off.**
- **Never remove the key from the ignition if the vehicle is in motion. The steering may lock and it will not be possible to turn the steering wheel.**

Control and warning lamps

It lights up red

The electromechanical steering is damaged.
Do not continue driving. Stop the vehicle safely and as soon as possible.
Have the steering checked immediately by a specialised workshop.

It lights up yellow

Hindereed operation of the electromechanic steering.
The steering system should be checked by a specialised workshop as soon as possible.
If, after restarting the engine and driving for a short distance, the yellow warning lamp no longer comes on, it will **not** be necessary to take the vehicle to a specialised workshop.

Flashes red

Fault in the steering column electronic lock.
Do not continue driving! Seek specialist assistance.

It flashes yellow

Twisted steering column.
Swing the steering wheel a few times.

Not unlocked or blocked steering column.
Remove the key from the ignition and then switch the ignition back on. If necessary, check the messages displayed on the instrument panel display.
Do not drive on, if the steering column remains locked after the ignition has been switched on. Seek specialist assistance.

Several warning and control lamps light up for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, signalling that the function is being verified. They will switch off after a few seconds.

⚠ WARNING

If the warning lamps are ignored, the vehicle may stall in traffic, or may cause accidents and severe injuries.

- **Never ignore the warning lamps.**
- **Stop the vehicle safely as soon as possible.**

ⓘ CAUTION

Failure to heed the warning lamps when they appear may result in faults in the vehicle.

Run-in and economical driving

Running in

Please observe the instructions for running-in new components.

Running-in the engine

The engine needs to be run in over the first 1,500 km. During its first few hours of running, the internal friction in the engine is greater than later on when all the moving parts have bedded down.

How the vehicle is driven for the first 1,500 km influences the future engine performance. Throughout the life of the vehicle, it should be driven at a moderate speed, especially when the engine is cold, as this will reduce engine wear and increase its useful life. Never drive at extremely low engine speeds. Change down to a lower gear when the engine no longer runs "smoothly". **Up to 1,000 kilometres the following instructions apply:**

- Do not use full throttle.
- Do not force the engine above two thirds of its maximum speed.

Between 1,000 and 1,500 kilometres, *gradually* increase power until reaching the maximum speed and high engine speeds.

Running in new tyres and brake pads

- Replacement of wheel rims and new tyres ››› page 206
- Notes on the brakes ››› page 151

For the sake of the environment

If the engine is run in gently, the life of the engine will be increased and the engine oil consumption reduced.

Environmental compatibility

Environmental protection is a top priority in the design, choice of materials and manufacture of your new SEAT.

Constructive measures to encourage recycling

- Joints and connections designed for easy dismantling.
- Modular construction to facilitate dismantling.
- Increased use of single-grade materials.
- Plastic parts and elastomers are marked in accordance with ISO 1043, ISO 11469 and ISO 1629.

Choice of materials

- Use of recycled materials.
- Use of compatible plastics in the same part if its components are not easily separated.
- Use of recycled materials and/or materials originating from renewable sources.
- Reduction of volatile components, including odour, in plastic materials.
- Use of CFC-free coolants.

Ban on heavy metals, with the exceptions dictated by law (Annex II of ELV Directive 2000/53/EC): cadmium, lead, mercury, hexavalent chromium.

Manufacturing methods

- Reduction of the quantity of thinner in the protective wax for cavities.
- Use of plastic film as protection during vehicle transport.
- Use of solvent-free adhesives.
- Use of CFC-free coolants in cooling systems.
- Recycling and energy recovery from residues (RDF).
- Improvement in the quality of waste water.
- Use of systems for the recovery of residual heat (thermal recovery, enthalpy wheels, etc.).
- The use of water-soluble paints.

Economical and environmentally friendly driving

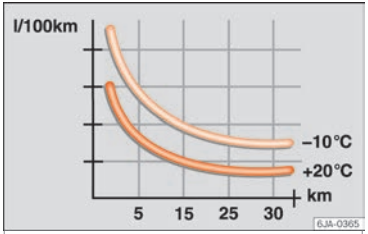


Fig. 165 Fuel consumption in litres per 100 km at 2 different outside temperatures

Fuel consumption, environmental impact and engine, brake and tyre wear depend largely on three factors:

- Personal driving style.
- Conditions of use (weather, road surface).
- Technical requirements.

Savings of up to 25% in fuel consumption are possible with an appropriate driving style and the adoption of certain simple tips.

Changing gear early

General remarks: the highest gear is always the most economical. As a guide, for most vehicles at a speed of 30 km/h (19 mph), drive in third gear, at 40 km/h (25 mph) in fourth gear and at 50 km/h (31 mph) in fifth gear.

In addition, "skipping" gears when shifting up helps to save fuel, weather and traffic conditions permitting.

Do not wait until the last moment before changing gear. Only use first gear when you move off and change to second gear quickly. Avoid the kick-down function in vehicles with automatic gearbox.

Vehicles with a gear display help to achieve an economical driving style as the display indicates the best moment to change gear.

Let the vehicle roll

If you take your foot off the accelerator, the fuel supply is stopped and consumption is reduced.

Allow the vehicle to roll without accelerating, for example when approaching a red traffic light. However, if the vehicle is rolling too slowly or the distance is too long, the clutch pedal should be pressed to declutch. The engine will then operate at idle speed.

If the vehicle is going to be at a standstill for a period of time, switch off the engine; for example, while waiting at a level crossing.

Think ahead and "flow" with the traffic

Frequent acceleration and braking considerably increase fuel consumption. If you think ahead as you drive and keep a safe distance from the vehicle in front, it is possible to slow down by simply lifting your foot off the accelerator. This eliminates the need for constant braking and acceleration.

Calm and steady driving

A constant driving style is more important than speed: a constant driving style will entail lower fuel consumption.

When driving on the motorway, it is more efficient to drive at a constant and more moderate speed than to be continuously accelerating and braking. As a general rule, you will reach your destination just as quickly when you drive at a constant speed.

The cruise control function helps you to achieve a constant style of driving.

Moderate use of additional devices

It is important to travel in comfort, but convenience systems should be used ecologically.

Some equipment, when connected, increase fuel consumption considerably, for example:

- Air conditioning cooling system: If the air conditioning system is required to cool to significantly lower temperatures than the true outside temperature, it will require a large amount of energy from the engine. Therefore, we recommend that the selected

temperature for the vehicle is not too different to the outside temperature. It is a good idea to air the vehicle before starting your journey and to drive a short distance with the windows open. Then you can close the windows and switch on the air conditioning. Keep windows closed when travelling at high speeds. Driving with the windows open increases fuel consumption.

- Switch off the seat heating when the seats have warmed up.
- Switch off the heated rear window when it is not moist or covered in ice.

Avoid short journeys

Fuel consumption is much higher when the engine is cold, immediately after it has been started. It takes a few kilometres of driving for the engine to warm up and to normalise consumption.

The engine and catalytic converter need to reach their proper **working temperature** in order to minimise fuel consumption and emissions. The **ambient temperature** has a decisive influence.

Fig. 165 shows the difference in consumption for the same journey at +20°C (+68°F) and at -10°C (+14°F).

Therefore, unnecessary short journeys should be avoided. Try to combine trips.

The vehicle uses more fuel in winter than in summer, even when other conditions are the same.

The engine takes a long time to warm up when it is idling. In addition, mechanical wear and pollutant emissions are also especially high during this initial warm-up phase. It is therefore best to drive off immediately after starting the engine. Doing this avoids running the engine at a high speed.

Adjusting type pressures.

Having the correct pressure in your tyres helps to reduce rolling resistance and, as a result reduces fuel consumption. Increasing the tyre pressure slightly (+0.2 bar/+3 psi/+200 kPa) can help to save fuel.

When you buy new tyres, make sure they are optimised for minimum rolling resistance.

Use low friction engine oil

The use of low viscosity totally synthetic oils, known as low friction engine oil, helps to reduce fuel consumption. These oils reduce the resistance caused by friction in the engine, they flow around the engine more quickly and efficiently, particularly in cold starts. The effect is particularly noticeable in vehicles frequently used for short journeys.

Always check the engine oil level and observe service intervals (engine oil change intervals).

When purchasing engine oil, always observe legal requirements and ensure that the oil is approved by SEAT.

Avoid carrying unnecessary loads

The lighter the vehicle, the more economical and ecological the driving style. For example, an additional weight of 100 kg will increase fuel consumption up to 0.3 l/100 km.

Remove any unnecessary objects or loads from the vehicle.

Remove optional equipment and unnecessary accessories

The more aerodynamic the vehicle, the lower the fuel consumption. Optional equipment and accessories (such as roof racks or bike carriers) reduce the aerodynamic benefits of the vehicle.

Therefore, we recommend you remove all optional and unnecessary equipment and racks, especially if you intend to drive at high speeds.

Other factors which increase fuel consumption (examples):

- Fault in engine management.
- Driving on hills.

»

⚠ WARNING

Always adapt your speed and the distance to the vehicles ahead in line with visibility, weather conditions, the condition of the road and the traffic situation.

Engine management and exhaust gas purification system

Introduction

⚠ WARNING

The components of the exhaust system reach very high temperatures. This could cause a fire.

- **Always park your vehicle so that no part of the exhaust system can come in contact with flammable materials (such as dried grass).**
- **Never apply additional underseal or anti-corrosion coatings to the exhaust pipes, catalytic converter or the heat shields on the exhaust system.**

Control and warning lamps

EPC It lights up

Fault in the management of the petrol engine.
Have the engine checked by a specialised workshop as soon as possible.

It lights up

Fault in the emission control system.
Reduce speed and drive carefully to the nearest specialised workshop to have the engine checked.

Flashes

Combustion fault which could damage the catalytic converter.
Reduce speed and drive carefully to the nearest specialised workshop to have the engine checked.

Several warning and control lamps light up for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, signalling that the function is being verified. They will switch off after a few seconds.

ⓘ CAUTION

Always pay attention to any lit control lamps and to the corresponding descriptions and instructions to avoid damage to the vehicle.

ⓘ Note

While the ⚙ or EPC control lamps remain lit, the engine may have faults, there will be higher fuel consumption and a possible loss of engine power.

Catalytic converter

The catalytic converter permits the subsequent treatment of the exhaust gases thus reducing contaminating gas emissions. To ensure a longer working life for the exhaust system and catalytic converter in a petrol engine:

- Always use unleaded petrol.
- Never run the fuel tank completely dry.
- Do not top up with too much engine oil ››› page 195.
- Do not tow-start the vehicle; use the starter cables ››› page 44.

If you should notice misfiring, uneven running or loss of power when the car is moving, reduce speed immediately. Have the car inspected by a specialised workshop. If this happens, unburnt fuel can enter the exhaust system and escape into the atmosphere. The catalytic converter can also be damaged by overheating.

For the sake of the environment

Even when the emission control system is working perfectly, there may be a smell of sulphur under certain conditions. This depends on the sulphur content of the fuel used.

Driving tips

Driving abroad

In some countries, certain safety regulations and requirements are in force relating to exhaust gas emissions, which differ from the technical characteristics of the vehicle. Before travelling abroad, SEAT recommends you consult a technical service about the legal requirements and the following points:

- Does the vehicle need technical modifications for driving abroad, for example, adjustment of the headlamps?
- Does the vehicle have all the tools, diagnostics equipment and spare parts required for inspections and repairs?
- Are there any SEAT dealers in the destination country?
- For petrol vehicles: Is unleaded petrol available at the right octane rating?
- Are a suitable engine oil (››› page 195) and other engine fluids complying with SEAT specifications available in the destination country?
- Are special tyres required in the destination country?

CAUTION

SEAT does not accept liability for any damage to the vehicle due to the use of a lower quality fuel, an inadequate service or the non-availability of genuine spare parts.

Driving through flooded roadways

To prevent damage to the vehicle when driving through water, for example, along a flooded road, please observe the following:

- Check the depth of the water before entering the flooded zone. The water should **never** come above the lower edge of the bodywork ››› ❗.
- Do not drive faster than a pedestrian.
- Do not stop in the water, use reverse gear or switch off the engine.
- Oncoming traffic will cause waves which raise the level of the water, making it difficult to cross the water.
- Disconnect the Start-Stop system whenever crossing water.

WARNING

When driving through water, mud, melted snow, etc., please remember that due to damp or frozen brake discs and shoes in winter, the braking effect may be delayed, therefore the required braking distance is greater.

- **"Dry the brakes and remove ice" by braking carefully. Ensure that you are not endangering other road-users or breaking traffic regulations in the process.**
- **After driving through water, avoid sudden sharp manoeuvres.**

CAUTION

- **Driving through flooded areas may severely damage vehicle components such as the engine, transmission, drive train or electrical system.**
- **Never drive through salt water as salt causes corrosion. Always rinse any parts of the vehicle which have been in contact with salt water.**

Driver assistance systems

Start-Stop system

Control lamps

It lights up

The Start-Stop system is enabled.

Flashes

The Start-stop system is not available.
Go to a specialised workshop.

It lights up

The Start-Stop system is enabled but the engine cannot be automatically stopped.
Go to a specialised workshop.

It lights up

The Start-stop system cannot start the engine.
Start the vehicle manually with the key ››› page 149.

There is a fault in the alternator ››› page 202.

Some control and warning lamps will light up briefly when the ignition is switched on to check certain functions. They will switch off after a few seconds.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the safety warnings ››› ⚠ in Control and warning lamps on page 27.

Start-Stop system

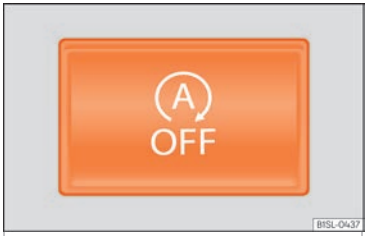


Fig. 166 In the centre console, top section: Start-stop system.

With the Start-Stop system enabled, the engine is automatically stopped when the vehicle is at a standstill. It will start again automatically as required.

This function remains enabled while the ignition is switched on. The instrument panel display shows information on the current status ››› page 170.

Disconnect the Start-Stop system by hand whenever crossing water.

Vehicles with a manual gearbox

- When the vehicle is stopped, put it into neutral and release the clutch pedal. The engine will stop.
- To restart, simply engage the clutch.

Vehicles with an automatic gearbox

- When the vehicle is at a standstill, depress the brake or keep it pressed down. The engine switches off.
- The engine will start again as soon as you release the brake pedal.
- With the selector lever set to position **N**, the engine will not start until a range of gears is selected or the accelerator pedal is depressed.

Important conditions for the engine to stop automatically

- The driver's seat belt must be fastened.
- The driver door must be closed.
- The bonnet must be closed.
- The engine must have reached a minimum temperature.
- The vehicle must have moved since the last time the engine was stopped.
- The vehicle's battery must be sufficiently charged.
- The battery temperature must not be too low or too high.

- The vehicle must not be on a very steep slope.

Conditions for the engine to restart automatically

The engine can be automatically restarted in the following cases:

- If the vehicle starts to moves.
- If the battery voltage drops.

Conditions requiring engine start-up using the key

The engine has to be manually started in the following cases:

- If the driver unbuckles his/her seat belt.
- If the driver door is opened.
- If the bonnet is opened.

Switching the Start-Stop system on and off

- Press the button situated in the centre console ››› Fig. 166.
- The button will light up when the Start-Stop system is switched off.

The engine will start immediately if the vehicle is in Stop mode when the system is switched off by hand.

⚠ WARNING

The smart technology included in the hill hold cannot change the laws of physics. Do not let the extra convenience afforded by the hill hold tempt you into taking any risks when driving.

- **Any accidental movement of the vehicle could result in serious injury.**
- **The hill hold is not a replacement for driver awareness.**
- **Adjust your speed and driving style to visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **The hill hold cannot always keep the vehicle at a standstill on a slope or brake sufficiently when travelling downhill (e.g. on slippery or frozen surfaces).**

⚠ WARNING

The brake servo and the electromechanical steering do not work when the engine is switched off.

- **The vehicle must never be allowed to move with the engine switched off.**
- **Disconnect the Start-Stop system before working in the engine compartment.**

CAUTION

The vehicle's battery could be damaged if the vehicle is used for long periods at very high outside temperatures.

Note

In some cases, it may be necessary to start the engine by hand using the key. Refer to the corresponding control lamp on the instrument panel.

Cruise control system (CCS)*

Control lamp

It lights up

This cruise control system maintains the set speed of the vehicle.

Several warning and control lamps light up for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, signalling that the function is being verified. They will switch off after a few seconds.

⚠ WARNING

If the warning lamps are ignored, the vehicle may stall in traffic, or may cause accidents and severe injuries.

- **Never ignore the warning lamps.**

»

CAUTION

Failure to heed the warning lamps when they appear may result in faults in the vehicle.

Cruise control operation

Read the additional information carefully
››› page 26

The cruise control system (CCS) is able to individually maintain the set speed when driving forwards from approx. 20 km/h (15 mph).

The CCS only slows down by reducing the accelerator but not by braking ›››.

Travelling down hills with the CCS

When travelling down hills the CCS cannot maintain a constant speed. Slow the vehicle down using the brake pedal and reduce gears if required.

Automatic off

The cruise control system (CCS) is switched off automatically or temporarily:

- If the system detects a fault that could affect the working order of the CCS.
- If you increase the stored speed by pressing the accelerator pedal for a certain time.
- If the brake pedal is pressed.
- If the gear is changed with the manual gearbox.
- If the airbag is triggered.

WARNING

Use of the cruise control could cause accidents and severe injuries if it is not possible to drive at a constant speed maintaining the safety distance.

- **Do not use the cruise control in heavy traffic, if the distance from the vehicle in front is insufficient, on steep roads, with several bends or in slippery circumstances (snow, ice, rain or loose gravel), or on flooded roads.**
- **Never use the CCS when driving off-road or on unpaved roads.**
- **Always adapt your speed and the distance to the vehicles ahead in line with visibility, weather conditions, the condition of the road and the traffic situation.**
- **To avoid unexpected operation of the cruise control system, turn it off every time you finish using it.**
- **It is dangerous to use a set speed which is too high for the prevailing road, traffic or weather conditions.**
- **When travelling down hills, the CCS cannot maintain a constant speed. The vehicle tends to accelerate under its own weight. Select a lower gear or use the foot brake to slow the vehicle.**

Parking distance warning system*

Introduction

The parking distance warning system assists the driver when parking. If the rear of the vehicle is approaching an obstacle, an intermittent audible warning is emitted. The shorter the distance, the shorter the intervals between tones. If the vehicle is too close to the obstacle, the audible warning becomes constant.

If you continue to approach an obstacle when the sound is continuous, this means the system can no longer measure the distance.

Sensors situated on the rear bumper transmit and receive ultrasound. Using the ultrasound signal (transmission, reflection from the obstacles and reception), this system continuously calculates the distance between the bumper and the obstacle.

WARNING

The parking distance warning system cannot replace the driver's assessment of the situation.

- **The sensors have blind spots in which obstacles and people are not registered.**

- Always observe the area around the vehicle, as the sensors do not always detect small children, animals or objects.
- The surface of certain objects and some clothing do not reflect the ultrasound signals from the parking distance system. The system cannot detect or incorrectly detects these objects and people wearing these types of clothes.
- External sound sources can affect the parking distance aid signals. In this case, under certain circumstances, people and objects will not be detected.

CAUTION

- The sensors may not always be able to detect objects such as trailer draw bars, thin rails, fences, posts, trees and open boots, etc. This could result in damage to your car.
- Although the parking distance warning system detects and warns of the presence of an obstacle, the obstacle could disappear from the angle of measurement of the sensors if it is too high or low and the system would no longer show it. Therefore, it will not warn you of these objects. Ignoring the warnings of the parking sensor system could cause considerable damage to the vehicle.
- The bumper sensors may become damaged or misaligned, for example, when parking.
- To ensure that the system works properly, the bumper sensors must be kept clean, free of ice and snow and uncovered.
- When cleaning the sensors with high-pressure or steam cleaning equipment, spray the sensors briefly at a distance of no less than 10 cm.
- Different sources of noise can produce errors in the parking distance warning system, e.g. parking distance warning systems from other vehicles, inductive loops or construction works machines.
- Retrofitting of components to the vehicle, such as a bicycle carrier, may interfere with the function of the parking distance warning system.

Parking distance warning system

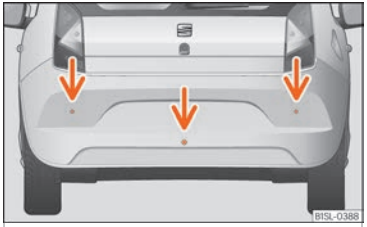


Fig. 167 Parking distance warning system sensors on the rear bumper

The sensors of the parking distance warning system are situated on the rear bumper ››› Fig. 167.

Switching the parking distance warning system on and off

- *Switch on:* With the ignition switched on, select reverse gear. A short audible warning confirms that the parking distance warning system is switched on and functioning.
- *Switch off:* Release reverse gear.

Special features of the parking distance warning system

- The parking distance warning system sometimes registers water on the sensors as an obstacle.
- If the distance does not change, the warning signal will sound less loudly after a few seconds. If the continuous signal sounds, the volume will remain constant.
- When the vehicle moves away from the obstacle, the beeping sound automatically switches off. When getting close again, it reconnects.
- Your SEAT dealership can adjust the volume of the warning signals.

Note

A fault in the parking distance warning system is indicated through a brief audible warning that is constant for about 3 »

seconds when switching it on the first time. Check the parking distance warning system at a Specialised workshop as soon as possible.

Optical parking system* (OPS)

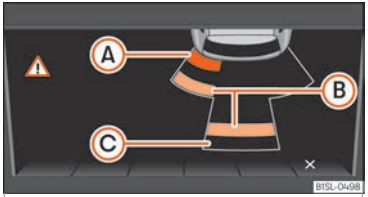


Fig. 168 On-screen OPS display

Ⓐ An obstacle was detected in the collision area

Ⓑ An obstacle was detected in the segment

Ⓒ Zone behind the vehicle registered

The optical parking system is an extension of the parking distance warning system ››› page 173.

The radio screen displays the area behind the vehicle recorded by the sensors. Any obstacles are displayed in relation to the vehicle ››› ⚠.

Function	Necessary operations
Switching the display on:	Switching on the ››› page 173 parking distance warning system. The OPS switches on automatically.
Switching the display off manually:	Release reverse gear.

Zones explored

Behind the vehicle ››› Fig. 168 Ⓒ, the zone analysed reaches a distance of up to 150 cm and around 60 cm to the sides.

Screen display

The image displayed represents the supervised zones in several segments. As the vehicle approaches an obstacle, it approaches the displayed vehicle segment Ⓐ or Ⓑ. Ultimately, when the second-to-last segment is shown, the collision area has been reached. **Stop the vehicle!**

Distance from the vehicle to the obstacle	Audible warning	Colour of the segment if an obstacle is recognised[a)]
behind: approx. **31-150 cm**	beeping sound	Yellow
behind: approx. **0-30 cm**	permanent sound	Red

[a)] Displayed in colour on the screen.

⚠ WARNING

Do not be distracted from traffic to look at the screen.

Note

- **SEAT recommends practising using the parking distance warning system in a traffic-free zone or in a car park to familiarise yourself with the system and its operation.**
- **The display on the radio screen of the area explored by the sensors may take up to 5 seconds.**

City safety assist (Safety Assist)*

Introduction

The City Safety Assist function covers driving situations at a distance of about 10 metres in

front of the vehicle, in a speed range of approximately 5-30 km/h (3-19 mph).

When the system detects a possible collision with a vehicle in front, the vehicle prepares for a possible emergency braking ››› ⚠.

If the driver does not react to an imminent collision, the system can automatically brake the vehicle in order to reduce speed faced with a possible collision. The system can help to reduce the consequences of an accident.

If the City Safety Assist function determines that the driver has braked insufficiently when faced with an imminent collision, the system can increase the brake force in order to reduce speed. The system can help to reduce the consequences of an accident.

⚠ WARNING

The smart technology in the City Safety Assist system cannot change the limits imposed by the laws of physics and by the system itself. The increased convenience offered by the City Safety Assist system should never prompt you to take risks. The driver always assumes the responsibility of braking in time.

- **The City Safety Assist function cannot prevent accidents or serious injury by itself.**
- **The City Safety Assist system may carry out unwanted brake interventions in complex driving situations e.g. when a vehicle crosses at a short distance.**

⚠ WARNING

Relying on the City Safety Assist system in city driving as part of one's driving behaviour may cause accidents and serious injury. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.

- **Always adapt your speed and the distance to the vehicles ahead in line with visibility, weather conditions, the condition of the road and the traffic situation.**
- **The City Safety Assist function does not react to people, animals or vehicles that cross or move in the opposite direction in the same lane.**
- **If after switching on the City Safety Assist function the vehicle begins to move, slow the vehicle with the foot brake.**

CAUTION

If you suspect that the City Safety Assist laser sensor is damaged, switch it off. This will avoid additional damage.

- **Any reparation of the laser sensor requires specialist knowledge. SEAT recommends taking your car in for technical service.**

Note

- **If the City Safety Assist function activates a brake, the brake pedal range is reduced. This makes the brake pedal seem "harder".**
- **Automatic brake intervention by the City Safety Assist function can be cancelled by pressing the clutch pedal, the accelerator pedal or by a corrective intervention.**
- **During automatic braking by the City Safety Assist function you may hear unusual noises. This is normal and is produced in the brake system.**

Warning and control lamp

The City Safety Assist function is switched on every time the ignition is switched on. No special indication is produced.

If the City Safety Assist function is switched off or on, or if there is an error in the system, it will be shown by a control lamp on the instrument panel display.

On	It lights up
	The city safety assist function has been switched on with the OFF button ››› Fig. 171. The control lamp automatically switches off after 5 seconds.

	Flashes
	Fast: the City Safety Assist system function brakes automatically or has braked automatically. The control lamp switches off automatically.

»

Flashes

Slow: City Safety Assist function currently not available.
If the vehicle stops, turn the engine off and on again.
If necessary, inspect the laser sensor (dirt, frost) ››› ⚠ in Laser sensor on page 176. If it still does not function, refer to a Specialised workshop to have the system inspected.

OFF Flashes

Within the 5-30 km/h (3-19 mph) operating range: the city safety assist has been switched off with the OFF button ››› Fig. 171.
Switch the city safety assist function on with button OFF ››› Fig. 171.

Several warning and control lamps should light up for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, signalling that the function is being verified. They will switch off after a few seconds.

⚠ WARNING

If the warning lamps are ignored, the vehicle may stall in traffic, or may cause accidents and severe injuries.

- **Never ignore the warning lamps.**
- **Stop the vehicle safely as soon as possible.**

CAUTION

Failure to heed the warning lamps when they appear may result in faults in the vehicle.

Laser sensor

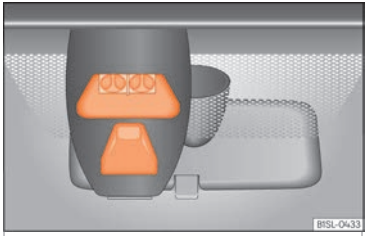


Fig. 169 On the windscreen: laser sensor for the City Safety Assist function.

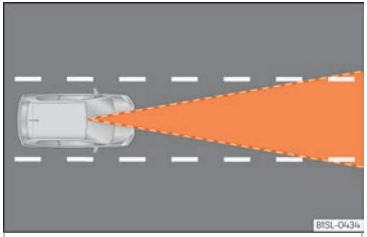


Fig. 170 Laser sensor detection area.

A laser sensor on the windscreen ››› Fig. 169 allows the system to detect driving situations in front of the vehicle.

Vehicles ahead can be detected up to a distance of about 10 m.

⚠ WARNING

The laser beam on the sensor can produce serious injuries to the eyes.

- **Never focus optical devices, e.g. a camera, a microscope or a magnifying glass closer than 100 mm from the laser sensor.**
- **Note that the laser beam can stay active when the City Safety Assist system is switched off or unavailable. The laser beam is not visible to the human eye.**

CAUTION

If the windscreen is dirty or frosted in the area of the laser sensor, e.g. due to rain, mist or snow, the City Safety Assist system may fail to operate as a result.

- **Always keep the laser sensor area free of dirt and ice.**
- **Use a small brush to remove snow and a de-icer spray to remove ice.**

CAUTION

A damaged windscreen in the laser sensor area may cause the City Safety Assist function to stop working.

- **Replace the windscreen if it is scratched, cracked or chipped by stones in the laser sensor area. Only use a windscreen authorised by SEAT. Carrying out repairs is not permitted (e.g. in the case of damage suffered in an impact from a stone).**
- **When replacing the windscreen wipers, only use windscreen wipers authorised by SEAT.**
- **Do not paint the laser sensor area on the windscreen or cover it with adhesives or other materials.**

Function

Fig. 171 In the lower part of the centre console: button for the city safety assist function.

Switching on and off the City Safety Assist function

- Press the ››› **Fig. 171** button on the centre console.

When the City Safety Assist function is switched on, the control lamp **OFF** lights up on the dash panel within the operational range, i.e. for speeds between 5-30 km/h (3-19 mph).

Switch off the City Safety Assist function in the following situations

Switching off the City Safety Assist function is recommended in the following situations ››› ⚠:

- While the vehicle is being towed.
- If the vehicle has been taken to an automatic car wash.
- If the vehicle is above a test bed.
- If the laser sensor is faulty.
- After the laser sensor has been involved in a collision.
- When driving off road (overhanging branches).
- If objects are protruding above the bonnet, e.g. a load carried on the roof that significantly protrudes over the front.
- If the windscreen is damaged in the laser sensor area.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to switch off the City Safety Assist function in the above situations may result in accidents and serious injury.

- **Switch off the City Safety Assist function in critical situations.**

Special driving situations

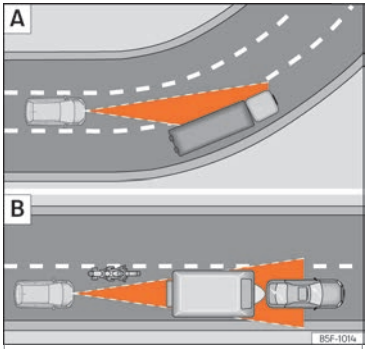


Fig. 172 A: Vehicle on a bend. B: Motorcyclist driving ahead out of range of the laser sensor.

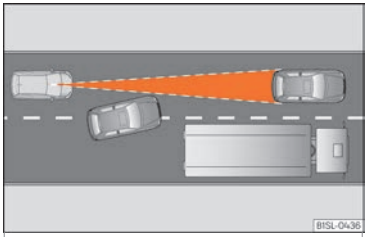


Fig. 173 Other vehicles changing lanes

The City Safety Assist function is limited by the laws of physics and by the nature of the system itself. For this reason, this may produce reactions from the City Safety Assist system in certain circumstances that are late or unexpected by the driver. For this reason, always pay due attention and if necessary, intervene.

For example, the following driving situations require special attention:

Driving through a bend

When entering or leaving a "long" bend, the vehicle may decelerate when the laser sensor detects a vehicle travelling in the opposite lane ››› Fig. 172 **A**. To interrupt the deceleration, you can step on the gas pedal, turn the steering wheel or operate the clutch.

Narrow vehicles in front

The laser sensor will only detect narrow vehicles in front if they are in the sensor's detection zone ››› Fig. 172 **B**. This applies particularly to narrow vehicles such as motorcycles.

Other vehicles changing lanes

Vehicles moving into your lane in close proximity can cause unexpected braking from the City Safety Assist system ››› Fig. 173. To interrupt deceleration you can accelerate, turn the steering wheel or press the clutch.

Possible malfunction in the laser sensor

If laser sensor operation is impaired, for example due to heavy rain, mist, snow or dirt, the City Safety Assist system function is temporarily switched off. On the instrument panel display the control lamp flashes.

When the fault in the laser sensor has been rectified, the City Safety Assist system function automatically becomes available again. The control lamp switches off.

The following conditions could prevent the City Safety Assist system from functioning:

- Tight bends.
- Accelerator pressed all the way down to the floor.
- If the City Safety Assist system is switched off or there is a fault ››› page 175.
- If the laser sensor is dirty, covered or overheated ››› page 176.
- In the event of snow, heavy rain or dense fog.
- If there are vehicles in front.
- Vehicles changing lanes.
- Vehicles moving in the opposite direction in the same lane.
- Very dirty vehicles with a low degree of reflection.
- Presence of thick dust.

Hill driving assistant*

Operation

This function is only included in vehicles with ESC.

The hill driving assistant helps the driver to move off and upward on a hill when the vehicle is stationary.

The system maintains brake pressure for approximately two seconds after the driver takes his foot off the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from lurching backward when it is started. During these 2 seconds, the driver has enough time to release the clutch pedal and accelerate without the vehicle moving and without having to use the handbrake, making start-up easier, more comfortable and safer.

These are the basic operation conditions:

- being on a ramp or hill/slope,
- doors closed,
- vehicle completely stationary,
- engine running and foot on the brake,
- besides having a gear engaged or being in neutral for manual gear change and with the selector lever at positions **S**, **D** or **R** in vehicles with an automatic gearbox.

This system is also active when reversing uphill.

⚠ WARNING

- **If you do not start the vehicle immediately after taking your foot off the brake pedal, the vehicle may start to roll back under certain conditions. Depress the brake pedal or use the hand brake immediately.**
- **If the engine stalls, depress the brake pedal or use the hand brake immediately.**
- **When following a line of traffic uphill, if you want to prevent the vehicle from rolling back accidentally when starting off, hold the brake pedal down for a few seconds before starting off.**

ⓘ Note

The Official Service or a specialist workshop can tell you if your vehicle is equipped with this system.

Towing bracket device

Driving with a trailer

Information on driving with a trailer

The vehicle is **not** certified for trailer coupling. The vehicle is not factory-equipped with a towing bracket, nor is it possible to retrofit it.

⚠ WARNING

Installing a towing bracket on the vehicle may cause accidents and serious injuries while operating the vehicle.

- **Never install a towing bracket on the vehicle.**
- **The trailer may be released from the vehicle when the vehicle is moving.**

ⓘ CAUTION

Any type of towing bracket installed on the vehicle can cause serious and costly damage that are not covered under the SEAT guarantee.

Practical tips

Care and maintenance

Accessories, replacement of parts and modifications

Introduction

⚠ WARNING

The use of spare parts and accessories, or incorrectly performed modifications or repairs may result in damage to the vehicle, accidents and serious injury.

- **SEAT strongly recommends you to only use SEAT approved accessories and SEAT® original spare parts. These parts and accessories have been specially tested by SEAT for suitability, reliability and safety.**
- **Have any repairs or modifications carried out at a specialised workshop. These workshops have the necessary tools, diagnostics equipment, repair information and qualified personnel.**
- **Only mount parts with the same specifications as the parts fitted at factory.**
- **Never mount, fasten or fit objects such as drink holders or telephone cradles over the covers of the airbag modules or within their deployment zones.**
- **Only use wheels and tyre combinations which have been approved by SEAT for your vehicle type.**

Accessories and spare parts

SEAT recommends you consult an Official Service before purchasing accessories and spare parts or consumables. For example, when fitting accessories at a later date, or when replacing a component. A SEAT Official Service will advise you as to the legal requirements and manufacturer's recommendations regarding accessories, spare parts and other components.

SEAT recommend you use only approved **SEAT accessories** and **genuine SEAT spare parts®**. These parts and accessories have been specially tested by SEAT for suitability, reliability and safety. In addition, SEAT technical services will guarantee that assembly is performed professionally.

Although we continually monitor the market, SEAT cannot guarantee that products **not approved by SEAT** are reliable, safe or suitable for the vehicle. Therefore, SEAT cannot accept liability, even in those cases authorised by an officially recognised technical inspection office or other official body.

Any **retro-fitted equipment** which has a direct effect on vehicle control must be approved by SEAT for use in your vehicle and bear the **e** mark (the European Union's authorisation symbol). This includes cruise control systems or electronically controlled suspension.

If any **additional electrical devices** are fitted which do not serve to control the vehicle itself, these must bear the CE mark (European Union manufacturer conformity declaration). This includes refrigerator boxes, laptops or ventilator fans.

⚠ WARNING

Unprofessional repairs or modifications to the vehicle may affect the performance of the airbags, and may cause operating faults or fatal accidents.

- **Never mount, fasten or fit objects such as drink holders or telephone cradles over or next to the covers of the airbag modules or within their deployment zones.**
- **Objects placed over the airbag covers, or within their deployment zones, could lead to serious injury or loss of life if the airbags are triggered.**

Service fluids and components

All vehicle fluids and consumables, such as notched belts, tyres, coolant fluids, engine oils, spark plugs and batteries are continually being developed. Therefore all fluids and

consumables should be changed at a specialised workshop. Technical services are permanently informed of any modifications.

⚠ WARNING

The incorrect use or handling of fluids or consumables may result in accident, serious injury, burns or intoxication.

- **Therefore, fluids must always be stored closed in their original container.**
- **Never store fluids in empty food containers or bottles as other people may accidentally drink the fluid.**
- **Keep all fluids and consumables out of reach of children.**
- **Read and observe the information and warnings given on the fluid containers.**
- **Only work in the open air or in well-ventilated zones, when using products which give off harmful vapours.**
- **Never use fuel, turpentine, engine oil, acetone or any other volatile liquid in the maintenance of the vehicle. These are toxic and highly flammable. They could lead to fire or explosions!**

CAUTION

- **Only use appropriate fluids. Do not confuse fluids as this can cause serious malfunctions or engine damage.**
- **Accessories and other components mounted in front of the air inlet reduce the cooling effect of the coolant. If the engine is running under great strain in high outside temperatures, it could overheat.**

For the sake of the environment

Leaking fluids could pollute the environment. Collect any spilt fluids in suitable containers and dispose of them in accordance with legislation and with respect for the environment.

Repairs and technical changes

When performing repairs and technical modifications, SEAT's directives must be observed! ››› ⚠

Unauthorised modifications to the electronic components or software in the vehicle may cause malfunctions. Due to the way the electronic components are linked together in networks, other indirect systems may be affected by the faults. This may significantly affect the vehicle's performance, increase component wear and could mean that the vehicle registration documents are no longer valid.

Your SEAT Official Service cannot be held liable for any damage caused by technical modifications or repairs performed incorrectly.

The SEAT Official Service does not accept liability for damage resulting from technical modifications or repairs performed incorrectly; neither is the SEAT warranty valid in these cases.

SEAT recommends you have any technical modifications or repairs performed at a SEAT Official Service and that you use **genuine SEAT spare parts®**.

Vehicles with special accessories and equipment

The manufacturers of additional equipment guarantee that the equipment complies with applicable laws and regulations with respect to the environment, in particular Directives 2000/53/CE and 2003/11/CE. The first directive governs the disposal of end-of-life vehicles while the second refers to the restrictions on the marketing and use of certain dangerous substances and preparations.

The vehicle owner should keep the documentation for the additional equipment safely and hand it over to the scrap yard at the end of the vehicle's service life. This ensures that any additional equipment mounted in end-of-life vehicles is correctly disposed of with respect for the environment.

⚠ WARNING

Repairs or modifications which are not performed correctly may result in damage or errors in the vehicle operation, affecting the effectiveness of the driver assistance »

systems. This could result in serious accident.

- **All repairs and modifications to the vehicle should only be performed by a specialised workshop.**

Repairs and malfunctions in the airbag system

When performing repairs and technical modifications, SEAT's directives must be observed! ››› ⚠

Modifications and repairs to the front bumper, doors, front seats, and repairs to the roof or chassis should only be carried out in a specialised workshop. These components may contain parts or sensors belonging to the airbag system.

If work is carried out on the airbag system or parts have to be removed and fitted on the system when performing other repair work, parts of the airbag system may be damaged. The consequence may be that, in the event of an accident, the airbag inflates incorrectly or does not inflate at all.

So that the effectiveness of the airbag is not reduced and that removed parts do not cause any injuries or environmental pollution, regulations must be observed. These requirements are known to specialised workshops.

Modifications to the vehicle suspension may affect the operation of the airbag system in the event of collision. For example, if wheel and tyre combinations not approved by SEAT are used, or if the vehicle height is lowered, the suspension is stiffened or the suspension springs, telescopic arms, dampers, etc., are modified, the results received by the airbag sensors and sent to the control unit may not be accurate. For example, some modifications to the suspension could increase the force measured by the sensors and result in the triggering of the airbag systems in collisions. Under normal conditions, the measured values would be lower and the airbag would not have been triggered. Other modifications may reduce the forces measured by the sensors and prevent the airbags from being triggered when they should.

⚠ WARNING

Repairs or modifications which are not performed correctly may result in damage or errors in the vehicle operation, affecting the effectiveness of the airbag systems. This could result in serious or fatal accidents.

- **All repairs and modifications to the vehicle should only be performed by a specialised workshop.**
- **Airbag modules must never be repaired: they have to be replaced.**
- **Never fit recycled or reused airbag components in your vehicle.**

⚠ WARNING

Modifications to the vehicle suspension, including the use of unauthorised wheel and tyre combinations, may affect the performance of the airbags and increase the risk of serious or fatal injury in the event of accident.

- **Never fit suspension components which are not identical to the original parts in the vehicle.**
- **Never use wheel and tyre combinations not approved by SEAT.**

Retrofitting of mobile phones

An exterior aerial is required for the use of two-way radios in the vehicle.

The retro-fitting of electrical or electronic appliances in the vehicle is subject to their approval for use in your vehicle. Under certain circumstances, this could mean that your vehicle registration documents are no longer valid.

SEAT has approved your vehicle for use with two-way radios providing the following conditions are observed:

- The exterior aerial must be mounted professionally.
- The maximum transmitting power is 10 watts.

The optimal reach of the equipment is only achieved with an external aerial.

Check first with a specialised workshop that understands the technical possibilities of installation if you wish to use a two-way radio with a transmitting power of over 10 watts. SEAT recommends taking your car in for technical service.

All legal requirements, together with the instructions for the use of two-way radios must be observed.

⚠ WARNING

If the two-way radio is not securely fastened in position, it could be sent flying around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking, sudden manoeuvres or accident, causing injury.

- **While driving, two-way radios must be securely fastened in position, outside the airbags deployment zones, or safely stowed away.**

⚠ WARNING

When using a two-way radio without a connection to an exterior aerial, the maximum permitted levels of electromagnetic radiation may be exceeded. This is also the case if the aerial has not been correctly installed.

- **You should only use a two-way radio inside the vehicle if it has first been correctly connected to an exterior aerial.**

Using a mobile telephone in a vehicle without connection to an exterior aerial

Mobile telephones transmit and receive radio waves also called high-frequency energy, both when in use and when on stand-by. Scientific studies state that radio waves exceeding certain values may be harmful to the human body. International committees and authorities have established limits and directives in order to ensure electromagnetic radiation from mobile phones remains within certain limits that do not endanger health. Nevertheless, there is no conclusive scientific evidence that wireless telephones are totally safe.

That is why some experts recommend moderate use of the mobile telephone, and the appliance of measures to reduce radiation on the human body.

When a mobile phone not connected to an exterior aerial is used inside the vehicle, the electromagnetic radiation may be greater than if the mobile phone were connected to a built-in aerial or to another exterior aerial.

If the vehicle is fitted with a suitable hands-free device that allows the employment of numerous additional mobile telephone functions with compatible Bluetooth technology®, it will comply with the legislation in many countries which only permits the use of mobile phones inside vehicles using a hands-free device.

Mobile telephones must be placed in a suitable telephone support or stored safely in the vehicle. If a support is used for the telephone, it must be securely fastened to the base plate. The mobile will be secure on the instrument panel and always within reach of the driver only by following these procedures. Mobile telephone connection with an external aerial is carried out subject to the hands-free device, via the telephone support or by the Bluetooth® connections present in the mobile telephone and the vehicle.

If the mobile phone is connected to an aerial incorporated into the vehicle or an exterior aerial connected to the vehicle, it will help reduce the electromagnetic radiation transmitted and the risk to human health. It will also improve the quality of the connection.

If the phone is used inside the vehicle without the hands-free system, it will not be securely fastened and will not be connected to the exterior aerial of the vehicle telephone. Nor will »

the telephone charge if it is not on the support. In addition, some calls may break off and the quality of the connection will be affected.

Mobile telephones should only be used inside the vehicle if they are connected to a hands-free system. SEAT recommends using an external aerial should you wish to use a mobile telephone inside the vehicle.

Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth® SIG, Inc.

⚠ WARNING

If the mobile phone is not securely fastened in position, it could be sent flying around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking, sudden manoeuvres or accident, causing injury.

- **While driving, the mobile telephone, other equipment including telephone accessories such as telephone supports, notepads and navigators must be correctly secured, away from the airbags deployment zones, or stored in a safe place.**

⚠ WARNING

When using a mobile telephone or two-way radio without connecting an external aerial, the maximum permitted levels of electromagnetic radiation in the vehicle may be exceeded, thus putting the driver and the rest of the vehicle occupants in danger.

This is also the case if the aerial has not been correctly installed.

- **A minimum of 20 centimetres should be kept between mobile phone aerials and artificial pacemakers, as mobile telephones may affect the working of pacemakers.**
- **Do not keep mobile phones in breast pockets directly above pacemakers.**
- **Immediately switch off the mobile telephone if you suspect any interference with pacemakers or other types of medical equipment.**

Support points for raising the vehicle

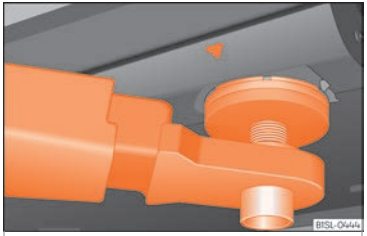


Fig. 174 Front jacking points for raising vehicle with lifting platform or jack

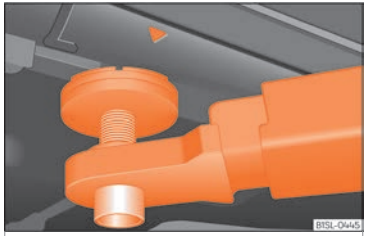


Fig. 175 Rear jacking points for raising vehicle with lifting platform or jack

Always use the jacking points indicated in the figures ››› **Fig. 174** and ››› **Fig. 175** when raising the vehicle. If the vehicle is not lifted at these points, it could be seriously damaged ››› ❗ or lead to serious injury ››› ⚠.

The vehicle should not be lifted using lifting platforms with lift pads containing fluid.

When raising a vehicle using a platform or jack, a series of precautionary measures are required. Do not raise the vehicle with a lifting platform or jack unless you have received training in how to do so and know how to do so safely.

Notes on raising the vehicle with a jack ››› page 72.

⚠ WARNING

The improper use of the lifting platform or the jack when raising the vehicle may result in accidents or serious injury.

- Before raising the vehicle, please observe the manufacturer's instructions for the platform or jack, and the legal requirements, where applicable.
- There should not be anyone inside the vehicle when it is being raised or once it is in the air.
- Only use the jacking points indicated in the figures ››› Fig. 174 and ››› Fig. 175 when raising the vehicle. If the vehicle is not lifted at the indicated points, it may fall from the platform while the engine or gearbox is being dismounted, for example.
- The jacking points should be centrally aligned and firmly positioned on the platform support plates.
- Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised! The vehicle may fall from the platform due to the engine vibrations.
- If it is necessary to work underneath the vehicle while it is raised, you should check that the supporting stands have an adequate load capacity.
- Never climb onto the lifting platform.
- Always make sure that the weight of the vehicle does not exceed the lifting platform load capacity.

ⓘ CAUTION

- Never raise the vehicle at the engine oil sump, the gearbox or the rear or front axles.
- Always use an intermediate rubber support to prevent damage to the vehicle underbody. Check that the arms of the lifting platform are able to move with obstruction.
- The arms should not come into contact with the side running boards or other parts of the vehicle.

Checking and refilling levels

Fuel

Identification of the fuel[1)]

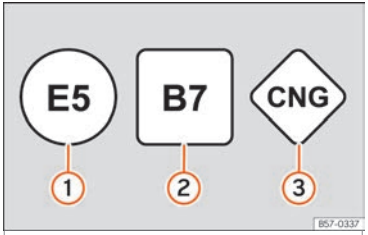


Fig. 176 Identification of fuels according to European Union (EU) Directive 2014/94/

Fuels are identified with different symbols. Depending on the fuel, the different symbols are on the pump and the tank lid of your vehicle. The identification serves to prevent confusion when choosing the fuel.

1. **Petrol** with ethanol ("E" stands for **E**thanol). The number indicates the percentage of ethanol in the petrol. "E5" means, for example, an ethanol ratio of 5% max.
2. **Diesel** with biodiesel ("B" stands for **B**iodiesel). The number indicates the percentage of biodiesel in the diesel. "B7" means, for example, a proportion of biodiesel of max. 7%.
3. **Natural gas**: "CNG" means **C**ompressed **N**atural **G**as.

Type of petrol

✓ Applies to vehicles: with petrol engine

The correct grade of petrol is listed inside the fuel tank flap.

The vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter and must only be run on **unleaded petrol**. The petrol must comply with the standard EN 228 and be **sulphur-free**. Fuels with a 10% ethanol ratio can be refuelled (E10)[2)]. The types of petrol are differentiated by using the **octane numbers (RON)** or via the **anti-knock index (AKI)**.

The following pieces of text show the information included in the corresponding stickers on the tank lid (examples):

Super unleaded petrol 95 octane petrol or normal 91 octane petrol at least

We recommend refuelling with super 95 octane petrol (91 AKI). If not available: normal 91 octane petrol (87 AKI) (with a slight power loss).

Super unleaded petrol, 95 octanes at least

You should use super 95 octane petrol (91 AKI) at least.

If super is not available, *if necessary*, use normal 91 octane petrol (87 AKI). In this case only use moderate engine speeds and a light throttle. Refuel with super as soon as possible.

Unleaded super plus 98 octane petrol or super 95 octane petrol at least

We recommend refuelling with super plus 98 octane petrol (93 AKI). If not available: super 95 octane petrol (91 AKI) (with a slight power loss).

If super is not available, *if necessary*, use normal 91 octane petrol (87 AKI). In this case only use moderate engine speeds and a light

---

1) Depending on country

2) Follow the regulations of the country you are driving in.

throttle. Refuel with super as soon as possible.

CAUTION

- **Fuels high percentage of ethanol, e.g. E30 - E100 button must not be used. The fuel system would be damaged. Exception: vehicles with Totalflex engine** **››› page 187, Ethanol fuel.**
- **A single refuelling with leaded fuel or other metal additives entails a permanent deterioration of the effectiveness of the catalytic converter.**
- **Only use fuel additives that have been approved by SEAT. The products that contain substances to increase the octane rating or decrease knocking may contain metal additives that damage the engine and catalytic converter. This type of products must not be used.**
- **Do not use fuels shown in the pump as containing metals. LRP (*lead replacement petrol*) fuels contain high concentrations of metal additives. Risk of engine damage!**
- **High engine speed and full throttle can damage the engine when using petrol with an octane rating lower than the correct grade for the engine.**

Note

- **Fuel with an octane rating higher than the one required by the engine can be used.**
- **In countries in which there is no sulphur-free fuel, it is also allowed to use low sulphur content fuel.**

Ethanol fuel

✓ Applies to vehicles: with Totalflex engine

You can recognise vehicles with Totalflex engines[1] by label on the fuel tank lid with with the marking "Petrol/ethanol".

Vehicles with Totalflex engine can run with unleaded petrol (95 octane / 91 AKI) according to ANP No. 57 and with fuels with any high percentage of ethanol. The vehicle is refuelled in the same way as petrol refuelling.

Also consider that **››› page 186, Type of petrol**

Note

SEAT recommends filling the tank exclusively with petrol every 10,000 km to decrease impurities that using E100 ethanol fuel might have left in the engine.

Natural gas

✓ Applies to vehicles: with a natural gas engine

Natural gas can be compressed or in liquid form, addition to others.

Use of compressed natural gas (CNG)

Vehicles with a natural gas engine must only be working with **CNG** (**C**ompressed **N**atural **G**as **CNG**), or with a mixture of **biomethane** if it complies with Regulation EN 16723-2.

Do not use fuels such as liquefied natural gas (**L**iquefied **N**atural **G**as), liquified petroleum gas (LPG = **L**iquefied **P**etroleum **G**) or hythane (hydrogen mixed with methane) ››› ⚠.

Therefore, vehicles with a natural gas engine must only be refuelled using compressed natural gas (CNG).

Natural gas quality and consumption

Natural gas is divided into the groups H and L depending on its quality.

Gas type H has a superior heating power and inferior nitrogen and carbon dioxide content than type L. The higher the heating power of the natural gas, the lower the consumption will be. »

[1] This motor is only available in some markets.

However, the heating power and the proportion of nitrogen and carbon dioxide can fluctuate within the quality groups. Therefore, vehicle consumption can also vary when using a single type of gas only.

The engine management automatically adapts to the natural gas used according to its quality. Therefore, different quality gases can be mixed in the tank, without the need for comprehensive draining before applying a different quality gas.

Natural gas and safety

If you can smell gas or suspect that there is a leak ››› ⚠:

- Stop the vehicle immediately.
- Switch the ignition off.
- Open the doors to appropriately ventilate the vehicle.
- Extinguish cigarettes immediately.
- Move away from the vehicle or switch off objects that may cause sparks or a fire.
- If you continue to smell gas, do not continue driving!
- Seek specialist assistance. Have the fault repaired.

Regular checks of the natural gas system

The natural gas tanks may be damaged or corroded by external factors. The walls of the gas tanks are weakened by deformations, damage or corrosion. As a result, the tanks could burst and result in serious injuries or even death. For this reason, the vehicle owner must have a specialised workshop check (visual check) **the gas system every 4 years at least**. The vehicle owner must have a specialised workshop replace the natural gas tanks before they reach the end of their service life. For further information about the service life of gas tanks, go to a SEAT dealer service or a specialised workshop

⚠ WARNING

Failure to act when you can smell gas in the vehicle or when refuelling can cause serious injuries.

- **Carry out the necessary operations.**
- **Leave the danger zone.**
- **If necessary, warn the emergency services.**

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle is not suitable for liquefied natural gas (LNG) or liquefied petrol gas (LPG), so LNG or LPG should not be used under any circumstances. Liquid gas can cause an explosion of the natural gas tanks and cause severe injuries!

⚠ WARNING

Damaged, corroded or rusted tanks can result in serious injury or even death.

- **Have the natural gas deposits checked at least every 4 years (visual check).**
- **Natural gas tanks have a limited service life. Have the natural gas tanks replaced when required. You can obtain further information about this at SEAT dealers or specialised workshops.**

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle underbody touches the ground or in the event of a rear collision, there could be damage to the natural gas tanks.

- **Check whether there is a smell of gas.**
- **If you notice a smell of gas, take the vehicle to a specialised workshop immediately and have the natural gas system checked.**

Note

Have the natural gas system checked regularly by a specialised workshop, according to the Maintenance Programme.

Filling the tank

Introduction

The fuel tank flap is on the rear right of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Refuelling or handling fuel carelessly can cause an explosion or fire resulting in serious burns and injuries.

- Always make sure that you correctly close the fuel cap to avoid evaporation and fuel spillage.
- Fuels are highly explosive and inflammable substances that can cause serious burns and injuries.
- Fuel could leak out or be spilt if the engine is not switched off or if the filler fuel nozzle is not fully inserted into the tank filler neck when refuelling. This could lead to a fire, explosion and severe injuries.
- When refuelling, turn off the engine and turn off the ignition for safety reasons.
- Always turn off mobile telephones, radio apparatus and other radio wave emitting equipment before refuelling. Electromagnetic waves could cause sparks and lead to a fire.
- Never enter the vehicle while refuelling. If it is absolutely necessary to enter, close the door and touch a metal surface before touching the filler nozzle again. This will prevent the generation of static electricity. Sparks could cause a fire when refuelling.
- Never handle fuel close to flames, sparks or objects with slow combustion (e.g. cigarettes).
- Avoid static electricity and electro-magnetic radiation when refuelling.
- Observe the safety regulations of the service station.
- Never spill fuel on the vehicle or in the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

For safety reasons, SEAT does not recommend carrying a spare fuel canister in the vehicle. Fuel could be spilled and catch fire, above all in case of an accident and this applies to a full container as well as empty containers. This could lead to explosions, fires and injuries.

- Observe the following if you exceptionally have to carry fuel in a canister:
  - Never place a fuel container, to fill it, inside the vehicle or on the vehicle, for example, in the luggage compartment. Filling in these circumstances could create an electrostatic charge and spark that could ignite fuel fumes.
  - Always place the canister on the ground to fill it.
  - Insert the fuel nozzle into the neck of the canister as far as possible.
  - If you are using a metal fuel canister, the nozzle must always touch the canister while it is being filled to avoid static electricity.
  - Follow the legal requirements for the use, storage and transport of spare fuel canisters.
  - Insure that the fuel container complies with manufacturing standards, for example, ANSI or ASTM F852-86.

CAUTION

- Always remove any fuel spilled anywhere on the vehicle to avoid damage to the wheel housing, the tyre and vehicle paintwork.
- Refuelling a petrol engine with diesel can cause serious engine and fuel system damage; the resulting malfunctions are not covered by the SEAT warranty. If you refuel with the wrong type of fuel, never start the engine. This applies to even the smallest amount of the wrong fuel. Seek specialist assistance. With the engine running, the composition of the wrong fuel could significantly damage the fuel system and the engine itself.

For the sake of the environment

Fuels can contaminate the environment. Collect any spilt service fluids and allow a professional to dispose of them.

Control lamps and fuel gauge

Fig. 177 On the instrument panel: Fuel gauge for petrol.

Fig. 178 On the instrument panel: Fuel gauge for petrol.

The fuel gauge can vary depending on the vehicle equipment ››› Fig. 177 or ››› Fig. 178.

[a]	It lights up
The fuel tank is almost empty. The reserve tank is being used (red mark ››› Fig. 177) ››› page 32. Refuel as soon as possible ››› ❗.	

[a] This only applies to vehicles with the fuel gauge on the dash panel ››› Fig. 177.

[a] CNG	It lights up
The natural gas tank is almost empty. The reserve tank is being used (red mark ››› Fig. 178) ››› page 32. Refuel as soon as possible ››› ❗.	

[a] This only applies to vehicles with the fuel gauge on the dash panel ››› Fig. 177.

and the segments remaining[a]	Flashes for about 10 seconds
The fuel tank is almost empty. The reserve tank is being used ››› page 32. Refuel as soon as possible ››› ❗.	

[a] This only applies to vehicles with the fuel gauge on the dash panel display.

Several warning and control lamps light up for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, signalling that the function is being verified. They will switch off after a few seconds.

In natural gas engines

During driving, the fuel gauge needle is in the fuel area with which the car is currently driving. Whenever the ignition is switched on, the needle changes first for a few seconds to the petrol area in order to display the current level of fuel. The needle then moves to the natural gas area. After the engine is started, the needle changes to the area corresponding to the current operating mode.

Remark: if the vehicle is left parked for a long time just after refuelling, the gas level indicator does not accurately indicate the same level shown after refuelling when the vehicle is started up again. This is not due to a leak in the system, but to a drop in pressure in the gas tank for technical reasons after a cooling phase immediately after refuelling.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with insufficient fuel reserve could result in the vehicle breaking down in traffic and a serious accident.

- **If the fuel level is too low then the fuel supply to the engine can become irregular especially on slopes.**
- **If the engine "is choked" or stalls due to lack of or irregularity of the fuel supply, the power steering as well as all of the driver assistance systems including brake assistance will stop working.**

- Always refuel when there is only one quarter of the fuel tank left to avoid running out of fuel.

CAUTION

- Always pay attention to any lit control lamps and to the corresponding descriptions and instructions to avoid damage to the vehicle.
- Never run the fuel tank completely dry. An irregular fuel supply may lead to ignition faults and unburnt fuel could enter the exhaust system. This could damage the catalytic converter.

Note

The arrow next to the fuel pump symbol on the instrument panel ››› Fig. 177 indicates the side of the vehicle on which the fuel tank flap is located.

Refuelling with petrol

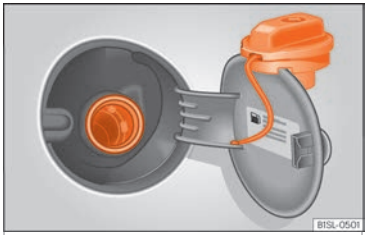


Fig. 179 Open fuel tank flap with tank cap in the holder

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 32

Before refuelling, always turn off the engine, the ignition, mobile telephones, auxiliary heating and keep them off during refuelling.

Refuelling

The correct petrol type for the vehicle is located on a sticker inside the fuel tank flap ››› page 186.

- If the automatic filler nozzle is operated correctly, it will switch itself off as soon as the fuel tank is *full* ›››.
- Do not continue to refuel if it is turned off! Otherwise, this will fill the expansion chamber and fuel may leak out if the ambient conditions are warm.

Vehicles with a natural gas engine

Every 6 months it is necessary to run on petrol until the control lamp switches off and then the tank must be refilled. This is necessary to ensure the efficient operation of the system and the fuel quality required for running on gas.

WARNING

Do not continue refilling once the fuel nozzle has switched itself off. The fuel tank may be filled too much. As a result, fuel may spurt out and spill. This could lead to a fire, explosion and severe injuries.

CAUTION

- Always remove any fuel spilled anywhere on the vehicle to avoid damage to the wheel housing, the tyre and vehicle paintwork.

For the sake of the environment

Fuels can contaminate the environment. Collect any spilt service fluids and allow a professional to dispose of them.

Refuelling with natural gas

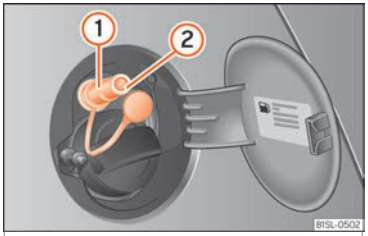


Fig. 180 Open tank lid: gas filler mouth (1), filler mouth retainer (2)

Before refuelling, the engine and the ignition, mobile telephone and heating must be switched off separately ››› ⚠.

It is also essential to carefully read the instructions for the natural gas pump.

The vehicle is equipped for refuelling only with Compressed Natural Gas (CNG) ››› ⚠. Refuelling with another type of natural gas is not allowed, e.g. Liquefied Natural Gas (LNG) or hydromethane.

Opening the fuel tank cap

The natural gas filler mouth is behind the fuel tank cap, next to the petrol filler mouth.

- Unlock the vehicle with the key or with the central locking button 🔓 situated on the driver door ››› page 97.
- Press on the rear area of the flap and open it.

Refuelling

Remark: If the ambient temperature is very high, the natural gas pump protection against overheating disconnects this automatically.

- Remove the plug from the gas filler mouth ››› Fig. 180 (1).
- Connect the pump filling nozzle to the gas filler mouth.
- The fuel tank will be *full* when the pump compressor automatically cuts the supply.
- If you wish to finish refuelling in advance, press the button on the pump to stop the flow.

Closing the fuel tank cap

- Check that the gas filler mouth retainer (2) is not trapped with the filler nozzle. If necessary, place it in the filler mouth again.
- Insert the plug in the filler mouth.
- Close the tank flap. Make sure you hear it click into place.

⚠ WARNING

Natural gas is a highly explosive, easily flammable substance. Incorrect handling of the natural gas can cause accidents serious burns and other injuries.

- **Before refuelling with natural gas, the filling mouth must be correctly engaged. If you can smell gas, stop refuelling immediately.**

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle is not prepared to use liquefied natural gas (LNG) and this fuel must not be added under any circumstances. Liquefied natural gas can cause the natural gas tank to explode, resulting in serious injury.

Note

- **The filling nozzles of natural gas pumps can differ in the way they are operated. If you are unacquainted with the pump, it is advisable that a member of staff of the service station performs the refuelling operation.**
- **Noises heard when refuelling are normal and do not indicate the presence of a fault in the system.**
- **The vehicle natural gas system is prepared both for refuelling with a small compressor (slow refuel) and a large compressor (fast refuel) in natural gas service stations.**

Bonnet

Working in the engine compartment

Read the additional information carefully
››› page 12

Before working in the engine compartment, make sure that the vehicle is parked on horizontal and firm ground.

The engine compartment of the vehicle is a hazardous area. Never work on the engine or in the engine compartment if you are not familiar with the operations to be carried out, the applicable safety standards and especially if you do not have the necessary instruments, liquids and tools ››› ⚠! If required, have any work carried out by a specialised workshop. Negligent work can cause serious injury.

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle moves unexpectedly, this could cause serious injury.

- **Never work under the vehicle if it has not been immobilized. If you must work underneath the vehicle with the wheels in contact with the ground then it should be parked on flat ground, the wheels should be prevented from moving and the key should be removed from the ignition.**
- **If you have to work underneath the vehicle, you must use suitable stands additionally to support the vehicle, there is a risk of accident!. The jack is not intended for this kind of work and its failure could lead to severe injuries.**
- **Disconnect the Start-Stop system.**

⚠ WARNING

The engine compartment is a dangerous area capable of causing serious injury.

- **For all type of work, always take the utmost precautions, work carefully and note the general safety standards in force. Never take personal risks.**
- **Never work on the engine or in the engine compartment if you are not familiar with the necessary operations. If you are not sure about procedures then visit a specialised workshop to carry out the necessary work. Working incorrectly can cause serious injuries.**
- **Never open the bonnet if you see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. This may cause serious burns. Always wait until you cannot see or hear the sound of steam or coolant coming from the engine compartment.**
- **Always allow the engine to cool down before opening the bonnet.**
- **Contact with hot elements of the engine and the exhaust system can cause burns.**
- **Once the engine has cooled, follow the instructions below before opening the bonnet:**
  - **Engage the handbrake and place the gear selector lever in N or the gear stick in neutral.**
  - **Remove the key from the ignition.**
  - **Keep children away from the engine compartment and never leave them unsupervised.**
- **When the engine is warm or hot, the cooling system is pressurised. Do not unscrew the cap on the expansion tank when the engine is hot. Otherwise, coolant may spray out under pressure causing burns and serious injury.**
  - **After cooling, carefully and slowly unscrew the cap anticlockwise, gently pressing down on it.**
  - **Always protect your face, hands and arms from hot coolant and steam using a large, thick cloth.**
- **When refilling liquids, avoid spilling them on parts of the engine and the exhaust system. Spilled liquids could cause a fire.**

⚠ WARNING

The high voltages of the electrical system can give electric shocks as well as causing burns and serious injury and possibly even death! »

- Never cause short circuits in the electrical system. The battery could explode.
- To minimise the risk of electric shock and serious consequences while the engine is running or starting the engine, note the following:
  - Never touch the electrical wiring of the ignition system.

⚠ WARNING

In the engine compartment, there are rotating parts that could cause serious injury.

- Never place your hands directly on or near the radiator fan. Touching the rotor blades could seriously harm you. The ventilator works according to the engine temperature and could start suddenly even when the ignition is turned off and the key is removed.
- If any work has to be performed when the engine is started or with the engine running, there is an additional, potentially fatal, safety risk from rotating parts, such as the drive belts, alternator, radiator fan, etc., as well as from the high-voltage ignition system. Always work with the utmost caution.
  - Always make sure that no parts of your body, jewellery, ties, loose clothing and long hair can be trapped by the rotating parts of the engine. Before any work, remove ties and jewellery (necklaces, etc), tie long hair back and tie all items of loose clothing to your body to make sure that they cannot be trapped by engine components.
  - Take extreme caution when operating the accelerator and remain attentive. The vehicle could move, even if the handbrake is applied.
- Always make sure you have not left any objects, such as cleaning cloths and tools, in the engine compartment. If any object is left in the engine compartment, this could cause malfunctions, engine faults and even a fire.

⚠ WARNING

Refill liquids and certain materials can catch fire easily in the engine compartment, causing a fire and serious injury!

- Never smoke.
- Never work close to places exposed to flames or sparks.
- Never pour service fluids over the engine. These fluid may ignite hot engine parts and cause injuries.
- If it is necessary to work on the fuel system or the electrical system, please follow the instructions below:
  - Always disconnect the vehicle battery.
  - Never work close to heaters, heat sources or places exposed to flames or sparks.
- Always keep a recently serviced and perfectly working fire extinguisher close by.
- Never cover the engine with additional insulating materials such as a blanket. Risk of fire!

⚠ WARNING

If the bonnet is not correctly closed, it could suddenly open while driving leaving the driver without visibility. This could result in a serious accident.

- After closing the bonnet, always check that it is properly secured by the locking mechanism in the lock carrier piece. The bonnet must be flush with the surrounding body panels.
- While driving, if you notice that the bonnet is not correctly closed then stop immediately and close it correctly.
- Make sure the bonnet is opened and closed safely (when the engine is off, no smoke is coming from the engine compartment, there is enough space around the car, no people are near, etc.).

ⓘ CAUTION

- When refilling or changing service liquids, ensure that you put the liquids into the right tank. Making a mistake when refilling could cause serious malfunctions and damage the engine!
- To avoid damage to the bonnet and to the windscreen wiper arms, only open it when

the windscreen wipers are in place against the windscreen.

- Before driving, always lower the wiper arms.

For the sake of the environment

Service fluids leaks are harmful to the environment. For this reason you should make regular checks on the ground underneath your vehicle. Take the vehicle to a specialised workshop to be checked if you see stains, oil or other fluids on the ground. Collect any spilt service fluids and allow a professional to dispose of them.

Engine oil

Introduction

WARNING

Incorrectly handling engine oil can cause injury and serious burns.

- Always protect your eyes when handling engine oil.
- Oil is toxic and must be kept out of the reach of children.
- Engine oil should only be kept in its original packaging; the same goes for used oil until it is disposed of.
- Never store engine oil in empty food containers or bottles as other people may accidentally drink it.
- Regular contact with engine oil can be bad for the skin. If you come into contact with engine oil, wash your skin with soap and water.
- With the engine running, the engine oil gets extremely hot and can cause severe skin burns. Always wait until the engine has fully cooled.

For the sake of the environment

Similar to the other service liquids, spilled engine oil can be bad for the environment. Collect these liquids in suitable containers and dispose of them while respecting the environment.

Control and warning lamps

Flashes

Engine oil pressure too low.
Stop the vehicle! Switch off the engine. Check the engine oil level, and if necessary, refill with engine oil ››› page 196.
- If the warning indicator flashes although the oil level is correct, do *not* continue driving or leave the engine running. Otherwise, the engine could be damaged. Seek specialist assistance.

WARNING

Observe the safety warnings ››› in Control and warning lamps on page 27.

Engine oil specifications

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 32

Replacement engine oil must strictly comply with the specifications.

The correct oil must be used to ensure the correct operation and long service life of the engine. The engine comes with a high-quality multigrade oil that can generally be used all year round.

Only use an engine oil that complies to SEAT standards whenever possible ›››. Only refill engine oil using approved engine oil in accordance with the corresponding VW standard (››› page 33). All oils indicated are **synthetic multigrade oils**.

Engine oils are being continuously further developed. Technical services are constantly updated with any modifications. SEAT therefore recommends that you have the engine oil changed by a technical service.

CAUTION

- Only use engine oils whose specifications are expressly approved by SEAT. The »

use of any other type of oil could cause engine damage!

- No additives should be used with engine oil. Any damage caused by the use of such additives would not be covered by the factory warranty.

Checking engine oil level and topping up

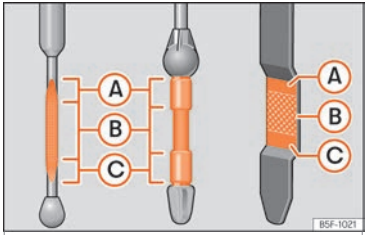


Fig. 181 Marked engine oil dipstick

Fig. 182 In the engine compartment: engine oil filler cap.

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 32

Preparations

- Park the vehicle on flat ground so that the engine oil reading is correct.
- The engine must be hot to be able to check the engine oil level. Stop the engine and wait a few minutes for the oil to drain back into the sump.
- Open the bonnet ⚠ ››› page 193.
- The engine oil filler neck can be recognised by the symbol on the cap ››› Fig. 182 and the dipstick by its coloured handle.

Check the engine oil level

- Pull out the dipstick and wipe it on a clean cloth.
- Replace the dipstick, pushing it in as far as it will go. If the dipstick to measure engine oil has a mark, when you reintroduce it this mark should slot into the corresponding groove located on the upper end of the tube.
- Remove the oil dipstick again and check the engine oil level.
- After reading the oil level, replace the dipstick in the tube completely.

⚠ WARNING

Oil could catch fire if it comes into contact with hot engine components. This could lead to a fire, explosion and severe injuries.

- **Always ensure that after topping of oil, the engine oil filler cap is correctly tightened. This will avoid engine oil spilling onto hot engine parts when the engine is running.**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **If the engine oil level is above the area ››› Fig. 181 Ⓐ do not start the engine. Request help from specialised staff. Otherwise catalytic converter and engine damage may occur.**
- **When refilling or changing service liquids, ensure that you put the liquids into the right tank. Making a mistake when refilling could cause serious malfunctions and damage the engine!**

For the sake of the environment

The oil level must never be above zone Ⓐ. Otherwise oil can be drawn in through the crankcase breather and leak into the atmosphere via the exhaust system.

Engine oil consumption

The consumption of engine oil can be different from one engine to another and can vary during the useful life of the engine.

Depending on how you drive and the conditions in which the vehicle is used, oil consumption can be up to 1 ltr./2000 km. In the case of new vehicles, the consumption can exceed this figure over 5,000 kilometres. For this reason the engine oil level must be checked at regular intervals, preferably when filling the tank and before a journey.

When the engine is working hard, for instance during sustained high-speed motorway cruising in summer or when climbing mountain passes, the oil level should preferably be kept within area ››› Fig. 181 Ⓐ.

Topping up engine oil

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 32.

The engine oil must be changed regularly according to the specifications of the Maintenance Programme.

Due to the problems linked with disposing of used oil and the need for suitable tools and special knowledge, always visit a specialised workshop to have the engine oil and filter changed. SEAT recommends taking your car in for technical service.

Detailed information on the service intervals is shown in the Maintenance Programme.

Engine oil additives make new oil darker after the engine has been running for a short period. This is normal and does not mean more frequent oil changes are required.

WARNING

Only change the engine oil yourself if you have the specialist knowledge required!

- **Before opening the bonnet, read and observe the warnings** ››› page 193.
- **Wait for the engine to cool down. Hot oil may cause burn injuries.**
- **Wear eye protection to avoid injuries, such as acid burns, caused by splashes of oil.**
- **When removing the oil drain plug with your fingers, keep your arm horizontal to help prevent oil from running down your arm.**
- **Wash your skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil.**
- **Engine oil is poisonous! Used oil must be stored in a safe place out of the reach of children.**

CAUTION

No additives should be used with engine oil. This could result in engine damage. Any damage caused by the use of such additives would not be covered by the factory warranty.

For the sake of the environment

Before changing the engine oil, find a suitable location or service for proper disposal.

For the sake of the environment

Always dispose of engine oil with the utmost respect for the environment. Never dispose of used engine oil in places such as a garden, woods, drains, roads, paths, rivers and drainage systems.

Engine coolant

Introduction

⚠ WARNING

Engine coolant is toxic!

- **Only keep engine coolant in its original container, tightly shut and in a safe place.**
- **Never store engine coolant in empty food containers or bottles as other people may accidentally drink it.**
- **Always keep engine coolant out of reach of children.**
- **Ensure that the proportion of engine coolant additive corresponds to the lowest outside temperature to which the vehicle will be exposed.**
- **If the outside temperature is extremely low, the engine coolant could freeze causing the vehicle to stop. As this would also cause the heating to stop working, vehicle occupants without warm clothing could freeze.**

For the sake of the environment

Coolants and additives can contaminate the environment. If any fluids are spilled, they should be collected and correctly disposed of, with respect to the environment.

Coolant warning lamp

Several warning and control lamps light up for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, signalling that the function is being verified. They will switch off after a few seconds.

It lights up red

Excessive engine coolant temperature.
Stop the vehicle! Stop the vehicle safely as soon as possible. Switch off the engine and let it cool.

Insufficient engine coolant level.
Stop the vehicle! Check the engine coolant when the engine has cooled and, if it is low, refill with engine coolant **››› page 199**.

Engine coolant system faulty.
Do not continue driving. Seek specialist assistance.

Flashes red

Faulty engine coolant system.
Request help from specialised staff.

It lights up blue

The natural gas engine coolant temperature is low.
The engine has not reached service temperature.
As long as the warning lamp is on, avoid high engine speeds and pushing the engine too hard.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the safety warnings **››› ⚠ in Control and warning lamps on page 27.**

Checking the coolant level and topping up

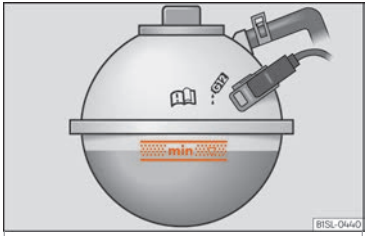


Fig. 183 In the engine compartment: Marking on coolant expansion tank

Fig. 184 In the engine compartment: Coolant expansion tank cap

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 33

If the coolant level is low, the coolant warning indicator will light.

Preparations

- Park the vehicle on even, flat and firm ground.
- Allow the engine to cool ›››.
- Open the bonnet ⚠ ››› page 193.
- The coolant expansion tank is easily recognisable because of the symbol on the cap ››› Fig. 184.

Checking the engine coolant level

- When the engine is cold, check the coolant level using the side marking on the expansion tank ››› Fig. 183.
- If the level is below the "MIN" mark, top up with coolant. When the engine is hot it may be slightly above the marked area.

Topping up the engine coolant level

- Always protect your face, hands and arms from hot coolant and steam using a large, thick cloth over the coolant expansion tank cap.
- Remove the cap very carefully ›››.
- Only refill using **new** engine coolant according to SEAT specifications (››› page 33) ›››.
- The engine coolant level should be between the marks on the coolant expansion tank ››› Fig. 183. **Do not exceed the top level of the marked area** ›››.
- Screw on the cap tightly.
- If, in the event of an emergency, you have no coolant that is compliant to the required specifications (››› page 33), do not use another type of additive. Instead, top up with **distilled water only** ›››. Then re-establish the correct proportion of the mixture with the correct additive as soon as possible ››› page 33.

⚠ WARNING

Hot vapours and coolant can cause serious burns.

- **Never open the coolant expansion tank if steam or coolant is coming from the engine compartment. Wait until you cannot see or hear any steam or coolant escaping.**
- **Always wait until the engine has completely cooled before very carefully opening the expansion tank cap. Contact with hot elements of the engine can cause skin burns.**
- **When the engine is warm or hot, the cooling system is pressurised. Do not unscrew the cap on the expansion tank when the engine is hot. Otherwise, coolant may spray out under pressure causing burns and serious injury.**
  - **Carefully and slowly unscrew the cap anti-clockwise, gently pressing down on it.**

»

– Always protect your face, hands and arms from hot coolant and steam using a large, thick cloth.

- When refilling liquids, avoid spilling them on parts of the engine and the exhaust system. Spilled liquids could cause a fire. Under specific circumstances, the ethylene glycol can catch fire.

⚠ WARNING

If there is not enough anti-freeze in the coolant system, the engine may fail leading to serious damage.

- Please make sure that the percentage of additive is correct with respect to the lowest expected ambient temperature in the zone in which the vehicle is to be used.
- When the outside temperature is very low, the coolant could freeze and the vehicle would be immobilised. In this case, the heating would not work either and inadequately dressed passengers could die of cold.

CAUTION

- If there is no appropriate coolant liquid available, fill it using distilled water, and nothing else. Any other type of water may lead to considerable rusting in the engine due to its chemical components. This could consequently damage the engine. If you have not used distilled water but another type of water to top up the coolant, a specialised workshop must immediately replace all of the fluid in the engine cooling system.
- Only top up coolant to the top level of the marked area ››› Fig. 183. Otherwise the excess coolant will be forced out of the cooling system when the engine is hot, causing damage.
- If a lot of liquid coolant has been lost, wait for the engine to *cool down completely* before adding coolant. Extensive coolant loss is an indication of leaks in the engine cooling system. Have the engine cooling system inspected immediately by a specialised workshop. Otherwise engine damage may occur.
- When refilling service liquids, ensure that you put the liquids into the right tank. Making a mistake when refilling could cause serious malfunctions and damage the engine!

CAUTION

The original additives should never be mixed with coolants which are not approved by SEAT. Otherwise, you run the risk of causing severe damage to the engine and the engine cooling system.

- If the fluid in the expansion tank is not purple but is, for example, brown, this indicates that the G13 additive has been mixed with an inadequate coolant. The coolant must be changed as soon as possible if this is the case! This could result in serious faults and engine damage.

Brake fluid

Checking the brake fluid level

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 34

In the course of time, the brake fluid absorbs water from the ambient air. If there is too much water in the brake fluid, the brake system could be damaged. In addition, the boiling point of the brake fluid is significantly lowered. When the brake fluid contains too much water and the brakes are subject to considerable forces, bubbles of water vapour can form in the system. These bubbles can significantly reduce braking power, notably increasing braking distance, and could even result in the total failure of the brake system. Ensuring that the brake system is always functioning correctly is essential for your own safety and the safety of other road users ››› ⚠.

Brake fluid specifications

SEAT have developed a special brake fluid optimised for the brake system of their vehicles. To ensure the optimum working of the brake system, SEAT recommends the use of

brake fluid in accordance with the **VW 501 14 standard**. If this brake fluid is not available or another brake fluid is used for different reasons, use a brake fluid that complies with the United States standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4 or the German standard DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 4 ››› ⚠.

Brake fluids conforming to the standard VW 501 14, fulfil the American requirements of the FMVSS 116 DOT 4 standard and the German DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 4 standard. However, fluids that comply with the American FMVSS 116 DOT 4 standard or the German DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 4 standard do not necessarily comply with the VW 501 14 standard. Always check the information on the brake fluid container and ensure that you are using suitable brake fluid.

A suitable brake fluid can be obtained from SEAT dealerships.

Brake fluid level

The level of the brake fluid should always be between the MIN and MAX marks, or above the MIN mark ››› ⚠.

It is not always possible to check the level of the brake fluid, as in some models the engine components make it difficult to see the brake fluid reservoir. If you cannot read the exact brake fluid level, consult a specialist.

The brake fluid level drops slightly when the vehicle is being used due to wear of the brake pads and the automatic readjustment of the brake.

Changing the brake fluid

The brake fluid should be changed in accordance with the instructions given in the Maintenance Programme. Have the brake fluid changed by a specialised workshop. SEAT recommends taking your car in for technical service. This means that only brake fluid complying with the required specifications will be used.

⚠ WARNING

If the brake fluid level is low or unsuitable/old brake fluid is used, the brake system may fail or braking power may be reduced.

- **Check the brake system and the brake fluid level regularly!**
- **The brake fluid should be changed regularly in accordance with the instructions given in the Maintenance Programme.**
- **Always ensure that you use suitable brake fluid. Only use brake fluid that complies with the VW 501 14, FMVSS 116 DOT 4 or DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 4 standards. Other types of brake fluids can affect the operation of the brakes and decrease braking power. Do not use a brake fluid if the container does not specify compliance with the VW 501 14, FMVSS 116 DOT 4 or DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 4 standards.**
- **The replacement brake fluid must be new.**
- **Brake fluid should be stored in the closed original container in a safe place out of reach of children. Risk of poisoning!**
- **If the brake fluid is left in the system for too long and the brakes are subjected to heavy use, vapour bubbles may form in the brake system. This would seriously affect the efficiency of the brakes and the safety of the vehicle. This may cause an accident.**

CAUTION

Brake fluid damages the vehicle paintwork. Wipe off any brake fluid from the paintwork immediately.

For the sake of the environment

Brake fluid is an environmental pollutant. Collect any spilt service fluids and allow a professional to dispose of them.

Windscreen washer reservoir

Checking and topping up the windscreen washer reservoir with water

Read the additional information carefully
››› page 34 »

Check the water level in the windscreen washer reservoir regularly and top up as required.

- Open the bonnet ⚠ ››› page 193.
- The washer reservoir is marked with the symbol on the lid.
- Check there is enough water in the reservoir.
- To top up, mix water with a window cleaner recommended by SEAT ››› ❶. Please follow the instructions for use found on the packaging.
- In cold weather, a special antifreeze should also be added to prevent the water from freezing.

Reservoir capacity

The washer bottle capacity is approximately 3 litres.

⚠ WARNING

If the water from the windscreen washer does not contain enough anti-freeze, it may freeze on the windscreen and rear window, reducing forward and rear visibility.

- **In winter, ensure the windscreen washer contains enough anti-freeze.**
- **In cold conditions, you should not use the windscreen wiper system unless you have warmed the windscreen with the ventilation system. The antifreeze could freeze on the windscreen and reduce visibility.**

⚠ WARNING

Never mix an unsuitable antifreeze or other similar additives with the windscreen washer water. A greasy layer may be formed on the windscreen which will impair visibility.

- **Use clean water with a window cleaner recommended by SEAT.**
- **If necessary, add a suitable antifreeze to the water in the reservoir.**

CAUTION

- **Do not mix cleaning products recommended by SEAT with other products. This could lead to flocculation and may block the windscreen washer jets.**
- **When topping up service fluids, make absolutely certain that you fill the fluids into the correct reservoirs. Using the wrong fluids could cause serious malfunctions and engine damage!**

Vehicle battery

Introduction

Read the additional information carefully ››› page 34.

The battery is a component of the vehicle's electrical system.

Never work on the electrical system without fully understanding the operations required, the applicable safety standards and without the correct tools ››› ⚠! If required, have any work carried out by a specialised workshop. SEAT recommends taking your car in for technical service. Negligent work can cause serious injury.

Location of the vehicle battery

The battery is located in the engine compartment.

Explanation of the warning indications on the vehicle's battery

	Wear eye protection!
	Battery acid is very corrosive and caustic. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection!
	Fires, sparks, open flames and smoking are prohibited.
	A highly explosive mixture of gases is released when the battery is under charge.
	Keep children away from acid and batteries!

⚠ WARNING

Working on the vehicle battery and the electrical system can cause corrosion, fire and electric shocks. Always read and take into account the following warnings and safety standards before carrying out any work:

- **Before working on the battery, switch off the engine, the ignition and all electrical devices then disconnect the negative connection on the battery.**
- **Keep children away from acid and the battery itself!**
- **Wear eye protection.**
- **Battery acid is very corrosive and caustic. It can burn skin and cause blindness. When handling the battery, protect yourself from splashes of acids, above all your hands, arms and face.**
- **Do not smoke and never work close to places exposed to flames or sparks.**
- **Avoid sparks and electrostatic discharges when working with cables and electrical devices.**
- **Never short the battery terminals.**
- **Never use a damaged battery. It can explode. Replace a damaged battery immediately.**
- **Replaced damaged or frozen batteries as soon as possible. A flat battery can also freeze at temperatures close to 0°C (+32°F).**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **Never disconnect the battery if the ignition is switched on or if the engine is running. This could damage the electrical system or electronic components.**
- **Do not expose the battery to direct sunlight over a long period of time, as the intense ultraviolet radiation can damage the battery housing.**
- **If the car is left standing for long periods, protect the battery from extreme cold temperature so that it does not "freeze up" and become damaged.**

Warning lamp

It lights up

Faulty generator.
Contact a specialised workshop. Have the electrical system checked.
Disconnect any unnecessary electrical devices. The generator does not charge the battery while the vehicle is in motion.

Several warning and control lamps light up for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, signalling that the function is being verified. They will switch off after a few seconds.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the safety warnings ›› ⚠ in Control and warning lamps on page 27.

Checking the electrolyte level of the vehicle battery

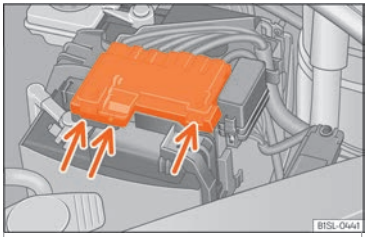


Fig. 185 In the engine compartment: remove the lid from the vehicle's battery.

The battery's electrolyte level should be checked regularly in high-mileage vehicles, in hot countries and in older batteries. Other batteries do not require maintenance.

Vehicles fitted with the Start-Stop system are equipped with special batteries. For technical reasons, the electrolyte level cannot be checked in these batteries. »

Preparations

- Prepare the vehicle for work in the engine compartment ››› page 193
- Open the bonnet ⚠ ››› page 193.
- Press on the tabs ››› Fig. 185 (arrows) in the direction of the arrows and lift the battery cover up.

Checking the battery electrolyte level

- Make sure there is sufficient lighting to clearly recognise the colours. Never use flames or shiny objects as a light source.
- Depending on the level of acid, the Magic eye on the top of the battery will change colour.

Colour indicator	Necessary operations
Light yellow or *colourless*	The electrolyte level of the vehicle's battery is too low. Have the battery checked and, where applicable, replaced by a specialised workshop.
Black	The electrolyte level of the vehicle's battery is correct.

⚠ WARNING

Working with the vehicle battery involves a risk of corrosion, explosions and electric shock.

- **Never tilt the vehicle battery. Battery acid could spill out of the openings for the release of gases and cause corrosion damage.**
- **Never open the vehicle battery.**
- **If battery acid splashes on you, immediately rinse your eyes and skin abundantly with water for several minutes. Then seek medical care immediately.**
- **If acid is swallowed by mistake, consult a doctor immediately.**

Charging, replacing and connecting or disconnecting the battery

Charging the battery

The vehicle battery should be charged by a specialised workshop only, as batteries using special technology have been installed and they must be charged in a controlled environment ››› ⚠. SEAT recommends taking your car in for technical service.

Replacing a vehicle battery

The battery has been developed to suit the conditions of its location and has special safety features. If the battery must be replaced, consult a technical service for information on electromagnetic compatibility, the size and maintenance, performance and safety requirements of the new battery in your vehicle before you purchase one. SEAT recommends you have the battery replaced by a technical service.

Use only maintenance-free genuine batteries conforming to TL 825 06 and VW 7 50 73 Standards. These standards must be dated April 2008 or later.

Vehicles fitted with the Start-Stop system are equipped with a special battery. Therefore, this battery must only be replaced by another with the same specifications.

Disconnecting the vehicle's battery

If you must disconnect the battery from the electrical system, please note the following:

- Switch off the ignition and all electrical equipment.
- The vehicle must be unlocked before disconnecting the battery, otherwise the alarm will be triggered.
- First disconnect the negative cable and then the positive ››› ⚠.

Connecting the vehicle's battery

- Before reconnecting the battery, switch off the engine and all electrical devices.
- First reconnect the positive cable and then the negative ››› ⚠.

Different control lamps may light up after connecting the battery and switching the

ignition on. They will be turned off after a short trip at a speed of between 15-20 km/h (10-12 mph). If the warning indicators remain lit, please visit a specialised workshop to have the vehicle checked.

If the battery has been disconnected for a long time, it is possible that the next service date is not displayed or calculated correctly ››› page 88. Respect the maximum service intervals permitted ››› page 217.

Automatic device disconnection

The intelligent vehicle electrical system automatically implements a range of measures to prevent the battery from discharging when high demands are made on it:

- The idling speed is increased so that the alternator provides more electricity.
- Where necessary, the power to the most powerful devices is reduced or even completely disconnected.
- On starting the engine, the power supply from the 12-volt power sockets and the cigarette lighter may be interrupted for a short time.

The on-board management program cannot always prevent the battery from running flat. For example, if the ignition is left on for a long period with the engine off or if the side lights or parking lights are left on while the vehicle is stationary.

Why the battery runs flat:

- When stationary for a long time without starting the engine, particularly if the ignition is switched on.
- Use of electrical devices with the engine switched off.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrectly securing the battery or using the wrong battery can cause short-circuits, fire and serious injuries.

- **Always use only maintenance-free batteries, protected to prevent a leak, and whose properties, specifications and size correspond to the standard battery.**

⚠ WARNING

A highly explosive mixture of gases is released when the battery is under charge.

- **The batteries should be charged in a well-ventilated room only.**
- **Never charge a frozen or recently thawed battery. A flat battery can also freeze at temperatures close to 0°C (+32°F).**
- **Always replace a battery which has frozen.**
- **Battery cables not correctly connected may cause a short circuit. Reconnect first the positive cable and then the negative cable.**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **Never disconnect the battery if the ignition is switched on or if the engine is running. This could damage the electrical system or electronic components.**
- **Never plug accessories that supply current, such as solar panels or a battery charger, to the 12-volt power socket or the cigarette lighter. This could damage the vehicle's electrical system.**

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of the battery in an environment-friendly manner. Batteries contain toxic substances such as sulphuric acid and lead.

For the sake of the environment

Battery acid can contaminate the environment. Collect any spilt service fluids and dispose of them correctly.

Wheels and tyres

Tyres

Introduction

SEAT recommend that all work on tyres and wheels is carried out by a specialised workshop. These workshops have the necessary special tools and replacement parts, trained personnel and facilities for disposing of the old tyres while respecting the environment. SEAT recommends taking your car in for technical service.

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle cannot be totally controlled or braked if the tyres (new or used) are worn or damaged.

- **Incorrect use of wheels and tyres could make driving more dangerous and result in serious accidents and damage.**
- **All four wheels must be fitted with radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern.**
- **New tyres do not give maximum grip and will not have reached their maximum braking capacity to start with, and therefore need running in. To prevent accidents and major damage, extreme caution should be taken for the first 600 km.**
- **Check tyre pressures regularly and ensure they are maintained at the pressures indicated. If the tyre pressure is too low, they could overheat, resulting in tread detachment or even burst tyres.**
- **Never drive on damaged (punctured, cut, cracked or dented) or worn tyres. Driving on damaged or worn tyres could result in burst tyres, serious accidents or damage. Worn or damaged tyres must be replaced immediately.**
- **Never exceed the maximum permitted speed or loads specified for the type of tyre fitted on your vehicle.**
- **The effectiveness of driver and brake assistance systems also depends on the grip of the tyres.**
- **If you notice unusual vibration or if the vehicle pulls to one side when driving, stop the car immediately and check the tyres and wheels for damage.**
- **To minimise the risk of losing control of the vehicle or causing a serious accident, never undo the bolted joints of beadlock wheels.**
- **Never mount used tyres or wheels if you are not sure of their previous history. They may be damaged, although the damage is not immediately visible.**
- **Old tyres, even if they have never been used, may lose air or burst unexpectedly while driving, especially at high speeds, resulting in serious accident and injury. If tyres are over six years old, they should only be used in an emergency and with extreme caution.**

ⓘ Note

For technical reasons, it is not generally possible to use the wheels from other vehicles. In some cases, this may also be true for the same model of wheel. Please refer to the vehicle documentation or ask at a technical service.

Handling tyres and wheels

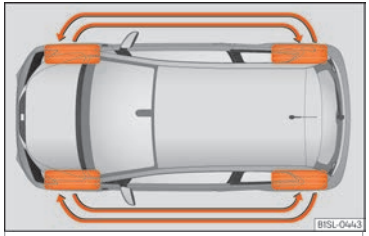


Fig. 186 Diagram for changing wheels.

The tyres of a vehicle are the components which are subjected to most stress and are the most underestimated. Tyres are very important, as the support offered by their narrow surface is the only point of contact between the vehicle and the road.

The service life of tyres is dependent on tyre pressure, driving style, the care they receive and the correct fitting.

The tyres and wheel rims are an essential part of the vehicle's design. The tyres and rims approved by SEAT are specially matched to the characteristics of the vehicle and our critical to good road holding and safe handling.

Avoiding damage to tyres and wheels

- If you have to drive over a kerb or similar obstacle, drive very slowly and as near as possible at a right angle to the kerb.
- Inspect the tyres regularly for damage (punctures, cuts, cracks, dents).
- Remove any foreign bodies found on the outside of the tyre tread and ensure that **they have not passed through the wall of the tyre** ››› page 211.
- In addition, the instructions for tyre control systems should always be observed.
- Replace damaged or worn tyres as soon as possible ››› page 211.
- Regularly check tyres for non-visible damage ››› page 211.
- Never exceed the maximum permitted speed or loads specified for the type of tyre fitted on your vehicle ››› page 214.
- Do not allow tyres (including the spare wheel) to come into contact with aggressive substances, grease, oil, fuel or brake fluid ››› ⚠.
- Lost valve caps should be replaced immediately.

Tyres with directional tread pattern

Tyres with directional tread pattern have been designed to operate best when rotating in only one direction. An arrow on the tyre sidewall indicates the direction of rotation on tyres with directional tread ››› page 214. Always observe the direction of rotation indicated when mounting the wheel. This guarantees optimum grip and helps to avoid aquaplaning, excessive noise and wear.

If the tyre is mounted in the opposite direction of rotation, drive with extreme caution, as the tyre is no longer being used correctly. This is of particular importance when the road surface is wet. Change the tyre as soon as possible or remount it with the correct direction of rotation.

Interchanging tyres

To ensure that the wear is equal on all tyres the wheels should be changed round from time to time according to the system ››› Fig. 186. The useful life of all the tyres will then be about the same time.

SEAT recommends you take the vehicle to a specialised workshop to have the tyres changed.

Tyres over 6 years old

Tyres are subject to an ageing process as a result of physical and chemical processes. This may affect their performance. Tyres which are stored for long periods of time without being used, harden and become more fragile than tyres which are in constant use.

SEAT recommends that tyres over six years old are replaced with new tyres. This also applies to tyres (including the spare wheel) which appear to be in perfect condition on the outside and which have a tread depth within the values stipulated by the Law ››› ⚠.

The date of manufacture, part of the tyre identification number (TIN), indicates the age of the tyre (TIN) ››› page 214.

Storing tyres

Mark tyres when you remove them to indicate the direction of rotation (left, right, forwards, backwards). This ensures you will be able to mount them correctly when you replace them. When removed, the wheels and/or tyres should be stored in a cool, dry and preferably dark location. Do **not** place tyres mounted on the wheel in a vertical position.

Protect tyres not mounted on wheels from dirt by storing them in suitable bags and standing them on the ground on their tread. »

⚠ WARNING

Aggressive fluids or substances could result in visible or invisible damage with the consequent risks.

- **Always ensure that tyres do not come into contact with chemical products, oil, grease, fuel, brake fluid or other aggressive substances.**

⚠ WARNING

Old tyres, even if they have never been used, may lose air or burst unexpectedly while driving, resulting in serious accident or damage.

- **If tyres are over six years old, they should only be used in an emergency and with extreme caution.**

For the sake of the environment

Old tyres must be disposed of by qualified personnel according to the laws in the country concerned.

Wheels

The design of wheel bolts is matched to the rims. If different rims are fitted, the correct wheel bolts with the right length and correctly shaped bolt heads must be used. This ensures that wheels are fitted securely and that the brake system functions correctly ››› page 72.

For technical reasons, it is not generally possible to use the wheels from other vehicles. In some cases, this may also be true for the same model of wheel.

The tyres and rims approved by SEAT are specially matched to the characteristics of the vehicle and are critical to good road holding and safe handling.

Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts must be tightened to the correct torque ››› page 72.

Beadlock wheel rims

Beadlock wheel rims have various components. These are joined together by special bolts using a special procedure. This ensures good performance, a better seal, improved safety and wheel run out. Therefore, worn rims should always be replaced and must only be repaired in a specialised workshop. SEAT recommends visiting a technical service ››› ⚠.

Wheel rims with bolted trims

Wheel rims may be fitted with interchangeable trim parts which are attached to the rim using self-locking bolts. Worn trims should only be replaced at a specialised workshop. SEAT recommends visiting a technical service ››› ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

The use of worn or damaged wheel rims could make driving more dangerous and result in serious accidents and damage.

- **Only wheel rims which have been approved for use with your vehicle should be used.**
- **Inspect wheel rims regularly for damage and replace as required.**

⚠ WARNING

If the bolted joints of wheel rims with bolted ring trims are not correctly tightened or loosened, this could result in serious accident.

- **Never loosen the bolted joints of wheel rims with bolted ring trims.**
- **Any work relating to wheel rims with bolted rims should be carried out at specialised workshop. SEAT recommends taking your car in for technical service.**

Note

A SEAT Service Centre should be consulted to find out whether wheels or tyres of different sizes to those originally fitted by SEAT can be fitted, and to find out about the combinations allowed between the front axle (axle 1) and the rear axle (axle 2).

Replacement of wheel rims and new tyres

New tyres

- When tyres are new, drive with extreme caution for the first 600 km, as all tyres need to be *run-in*. Tyres which have not been run in do not have such good grip or ››› ⚠ braking capacity ››› ⚠.
- All four wheels must be fitted with radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern.
- The tread depth of new tyres may vary, according to the type and make of tyre and the tread pattern.

Replacing tyres

- Where possible, always replace both wheels on an axle (both wheels on the front axle or both wheels on the rear axle) ››› ⚠.
- Only replace used tyres with those authorised by SEAT for the corresponding type vehicle. Pay special attention to size, diameter, and maximum load and speed capacity.
- Never use tyres which are larger than SEAT approved tyres. If the tyres are too big, they may knock or rub against the chassis or other components, resulting in damage.

⚠ WARNING

New tyres do not give maximum grip and will not have reached their maximum braking capacity to start with, and therefore need running in.

- **To prevent accidents and major damage, extreme caution should be taken for the first 600 km.**

⚠ WARNING

There should be adequate space between the tyres and the vehicle in accordance with the vehicle design. If this is not the case, the tyres may rub against parts of the running gear, chassis or brake lines, leading to faults in the brake system or to tread detachment, and the risk of burst tyres.

- **The true tyre dimension should not be greater than the dimensions of tyres manufactured and approved by SEAT and should not rub against parts of the vehicle.**

Note

Although tyres may be shown as being the same size, the true dimensions of different types of tyre may vary with respect to the nominal size, or tread patterns may be different.

Note

If you use tyres that are approved by SEAT, you can be sure that the true tyre dimensions will be correct for your vehicle. For other tyre models, the tyre vendor should provide the manufacturer's certificate with the tyre, indicating that this type of tyre is suitable for your vehicle. This certificate should always be carried with the vehicle.

Tyre pressures

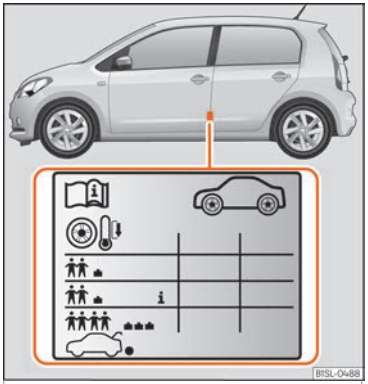


Fig. 187 Position of tyre pressure specification plate

The correct tyre pressures for tyres fitted at the factory is shown on a label and is valid for summer and winter tyres. The label »

››› Fig. 187 is located on the driver's door pillar.

Under-inflation or over-inflation will reduce the life of the tyres considerably and also impair the car's handling ››› ⚠. It is essential to maintain the correct tyre pressures, especially if driving at **high speeds**. Incorrect tyre pressure causes premature wear and could cause tyre blow-out.

The pressure should therefore be checked at least once a month and before starting a journey.

As a general rule, the pressures given are for **cold tyres**. When the tyres are hot, the pressures are greater.

Never deflate a hot tyre in order to obtain the required pressure. This could result in very low tyre pressures which may lead to sudden blow-outs.

Tyre pressure monitoring system

Check tyre pressures only when the vehicle has not been driven for more than a few kilometres at low speeds in the past three hours.

- The tyre pressures should be checked regularly, and only when the tyres are cold. Always check all tyres, including the spare wheel. Tyre pressures should be checked more often in colder regions, and only when the vehicle has not been driven recently. Always use a correctly-operating tyre gauge.
- Adjust tyre pressures to the loads carried in the vehicle.
- After adjusting the tyre pressure, check that the caps are properly screwed on.

The **spare wheel** or **temporary spare wheel** must always be kept at the maximum pressure stipulated.

⚠ WARNING

If tyre pressures are too high or too low, the tyre may deflate or burst suddenly while driving. This could result in a serious accident.

- **If the tyre pressure is too low, they could overheat, resulting in tread detachment or even burst tyres.**
- **When driving at high speeds and/or fully loaded, the tyre could suddenly overheat, burst or be subject to tread detachment, with the resultant loss of control of the vehicle.**
- **Tyre pressures which are too high or too low reduce the service life of the tyre, affecting the vehicle's performance.**
- **Tyre pressures should be checked regularly, at least once a month and before long journeys.**
- **Adjust the pressures of all the tyres to the vehicle load.**
- **Never deflate excess pressure from hot tyres.**

CAUTION

- **Take care not to tilt the manometer when placing it on the valve. Otherwise, the valve may be damaged.**
- **If tyre valves are not protected by caps, or if the caps are not screwed on correctly, they may become damaged. Check that the caps are identical to the standard caps and have been correctly tightened.**

For the sake of the environment

Under-inflated tyres will increase fuel consumption.

Wear indicator depth profile

Fig. 188 Tyre profile: tread wear indicators.

Tread depth

Certain driving conditions require a deeper tread, as well as needing the tread to be

approximately the same on the front and rear tyres. This is particularly important when driving in winter, in cold temperatures and on wet roads ››› ⚠.

The minimum tread depth required by law in the majority of cases is 1.6 mm, measured in the tread grooves next to the tread wear indicators. Observe legal requirements in each country.

The performance of **winter tyres** is much reduced when the tread has worn to 4 mm.

The tread depth of new tyres may vary, according to the type and make of tyre and the tread pattern.

Wear indicators on the tyre

The original tyres on your vehicle have 1.6 mm high ››› Fig. 188 tread wear indicators running across the tread. A number of these indicators are equally spaced around the tyre tread. Certain marks on the tyre walls (e.g. the letters "TWI" or other symbols) indicate the position of the wear indicators.

Tread wear indicators indicate if a tyre is worn. They must always be replaced before the tyre tread has worn to the level of the indicator.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with worn tyres is dangerous, and may lead to loss of control of the vehicle with serious consequences.

- **Tyres must be replaced before the wear indicators are at the same level as the tread pattern.**
- **Worn tyres have significantly reduced grip, especially on wet surfaces, increasing the risk of "aquaplaning".**
- **Worn tyres make control of the vehicle more difficult in normal or difficult driving conditions, increasing the braking distance and the risk of skidding.**

Tyre damage

Damage to wheels and tyres is often invisible to the naked eye. If you notice unusual **vibration** or the car **pulling to one side**, this may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged ››› ⚠.

- Slow down immediately if you think you have a damaged wheel.
- Check the wheels and tyres for damage.
- If tyres are worn, stop driving and seek qualified assistance.
- If there is no visible exterior damage, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest specialised workshop and have the vehicle checked.

Foreign bodies in the tyre

- Do not remove foreign bodies if they have penetrated through the tyre wall!
- You should obtain professional assistance immediately.

Tyre wear

The wear of tyres depends on a number of factors, for example:

- Driving style.
- Unbalanced wheels.
- Running gear settings.

Driving style: driving round bends quickly or sudden acceleration or braking speed accelerates tyre wear. When the driving style is normal, if the tyres wear too quickly, have the running gear settings checked at a specialised workshop.

Eccentricity of the wheels: the wheels of a new vehicle are balanced. However, certain circumstances may lead to imbalance (run-out), which is detected as vibrations in the steering wheel. Run-out leads to wear of the steering and suspension. In the event of run out, the wheels should be balanced again. When a new wheel is fitted, it should be balanced again.

Adjustments of the running gear: misaligned running gear increases the wear of the tyres and affects safety while driving. If tyres wear »

too quickly, have the wheel alignment checked at a specialised workshop.

Low profile tyres

Low profile tyres, compared to other rim and tyre combinations, offer a broader tread and a greater rim diameter along with a lower height of the tyre sidewall. This results in a more agile driving behaviour. However, on roads that are in poor condition, this might affect comfort and cause more noise.

Low profile tyres may deteriorate more quickly than standard tyres, for instance due to strong knocks, potholes, manhole covers and kerbs. Therefore, maintaining the correct tyre pressure is particularly important ››› page 209.

To avoid damage to tyres and wheels, drive with special care when driving on roads in poor condition.

Visually inspect your tyres every 3,000 km regarding damage, e.g. flattening/cracks on the tyre sidewall or deformations/cracks on the rims.

If the rims and tyres have received a heavy impact or have been damaged, have them checked and, if required, replaced at a specialised workshop.

Low profile tyres may deteriorate more quickly than standard tyres.

⚠ WARNING

If you notice unusual vibration or the car pulls to one side while driving, this may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged.

- **Reduce speed immediately and stop, while observing the highway code.**
- **Check the wheels and tyres for damage.**
- **Never carry on driving on worn tyres or wheels. Request qualified assistance immediately.**
- **If there is no visible exterior damage, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest specialised workshop and have the vehicle checked.**

Tyre monitor system*

Fig. 189 Centre console: tyre monitoring system button.

Control lamp

It lights up

The tyre pressure of a wheel is much lower than the value set by the driver ››› ⚠.

The tyre pressure loss indicator compares the revolutions and thus the wheel diameter of each wheel using the ESC. If the wheel diameter of a wheel changes, the control indicator of the tyres informs of this fact (!). The wheel diameter changes when:

- Tyre pressure is insufficient.
- The tyre structure is damaged.
- The vehicle is unbalanced because of a load.
- The wheels of one axle are under more pressure (for example, driving with a trailer or on steep slopes).
- The vehicle is fitted with snow chains.
- The temporary spare wheel is fitted.
- The wheel on one axle is changed.

Tyre pressure adjustment

On adjusting tyre pressure or changing one or more wheels, the ››› Fig. 189 button must be kept pressed down, with the ignition on, until an acoustic signal is heard.

If the wheels are under excessive load (for example, driving with a trailer or heavy load), the tyre pressure must be increased to the

recommended value for a full load (see the sticker on the inside of the fuel flap). If the tyre monitor system button is pressed down, the new tyre pressures are confirmed.

⚠ WARNING

- **When the tyre pressure control lamp lights up, reduce speed immediately and avoid any sudden turning or braking manoeuvre. Stop when possible, and check the tyre pressure and status.**
- **The driver is responsible for maintaining correct tyre pressures. For this reason, tyre pressure must be regularly checked.**
- **Under certain circumstances (e.g. when driving in a sporty manner, in winter conditions or on a dirt track) the tyre control lamp may light up belatedly or may function incorrectly.**

Note

If the battery is disconnected, the yellow warning lamp (!) lights up after turning the ignition on. This should turn off after a brief journey.

Spare wheel or temporary spare wheel*

Fig. 190 In the boot: hand controlled wheel for securing the spare wheel

Removing the spare wheel

- Open the rear lid and lift the luggage compartment shelf ››› page 122.
- If necessary, remove the boot variable floor ››› page 122.
- Lift up the carpet from the recess and remove it from the luggage compartment.
- If necessary, take out the vehicle tool kit with the container.
- Completely remove the hand controlled wheel from the centre of the spare wheel ››› Fig. 190 by turning it in an anticlockwise direction, and take out the spare wheel.

Storing the replaced wheel

- Pull back the carpet.
- With the wheel rim facing downwards, situate the replaced wheel in the spare wheel well so that the wheel rim central hole coincides with the opening.
- Turn the hand controlled wheel with the shank screwed clockwise until the replaced wheel is secured.
- If necessary, store the vehicle tool in the container, inside the boot.
- Replace the carpet on the boot floor.
- Lower the rear shelf.
- Close the rear lid.

If the spare wheel is different to the rest of the vehicle tyres

If the spare tyre is not the same as the tyres that are mounted on the vehicle - for example with winter tyres or the temporary spare wheel - you should only use the spare tyre for a short period of time and drive with extra care ››› ⚠.

Refit the normal road wheel as soon as possible.

Please observe driving advice:

- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering.

»

- Snow chains on the temporary spare wheel are not permitted ››› page 42.
- After mounting the spare wheel or the temporary spare wheel, check the tyre pressure as soon as possible ››› page 209.

It is advisable to check the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel tyre pressure when checking the rest of the vehicle wheels at least once a month. The spare wheel should have the highest pressure allowed for the vehicle ››› page 209. The sticker situated on the temporary spare wheel shows the tyre pressure.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect handling of the spare wheel or the temporary spare wheel can cause loss of vehicle control, producing collisions or other serious accidents and injury.

- **Never use the spare wheel or the temporary spare wheel if it is damaged or worn to the wear indicator.**
- **In some vehicles the spare wheel is smaller than the original tyres. This can be seen on a sticker showing the text "80 km/h" and "50 mph". This text indicates the maximum velocity permitted for this type of tyre.**
- **Never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph). Avoid powerful acceleration, hard braking and taking corners at high speed.**
- **Never drive more than 200 km with a temporary spare wheel fitted to the drive axle.**
- **Replace the temporary spare wheel for a normal wheel as soon as possible. The compact temporary spare wheel is only intended for temporary use over short distances.**
- **The temporary spare wheel must always be secured with the factory supplied wheel bolts.**
- **You should never use more than one temporary spare wheel.**
- **After mounting the temporary spare wheel, check the tyre pressure as soon as possible** **››› page 209**.
- **Snow chains on the temporary spare wheel are not permitted.**

ⓘ Note

Wherever possible, secure the spare wheel, temporary spare wheel or the replaced wheel safely in the luggage compartment. In vehicles with anti-puncture kit, it is not possible to secure the defective wheel.

Tyre code

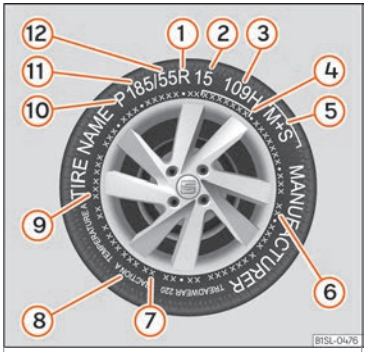


Fig. 191 Universal code on tyres

1. Radial
2. Rim diameter code
3. Load index & speed rating
4. DOT tyre identification number
5. Severe snow conditions
6. Tyre ply composition and materials used
7. Max. load rating
8. Treadwear, traction and temperature grades
9. Max. permissible inflation pressure
10. Passenger car tyre
11. Nominal width of tyre in millimetres

(12) Ratio of height to width (aspect ratio)

Tyre code (example): Meaning		
P185 / 55 R 15: Size:		
	P	Passenger vehicle code.
	185	Nominal width between walls, in mm.
	55	Height/width ratio in %
	R	Tyre type (R indicates "radial").
	15	Rim diameter in inches
109 H		Load index ››› page 216 and speed rating ››› page 216.
XL		Reinforced tyres ("Reinforced").
M+S *or* M/S *or* ❄		Winter tyres code (mud and snow tyres).
RADIAL TUBELESS		Radial tyre without inner tube.
E4 ...		E-mark certifying tyre complies with international legislation followed by a number denoting the country granting the authorisation. The authorisation number (several digits) is shown below.
DOT BT RA TY5 1716: Tyre identification number (**TIN**[a], maybe only on exterior wall of the wheel) and date of manufacture.		

Tyre code (example): Meaning		
	DOT	The tyre complies with the legal requirements of the US Department of Transport, responsible for tyre safety regulations.
	BT	Place of manufacture code.
	RA	Information about manufacturer and tyre size.
	TY5	Manufacturer's tyre specifications.
	1716	Manufacturing date: week 17 of 2016.
TWI		This identifies the position of the Tread Wear Indicator ››› page 210.
MAX LOAD 615 KG (1356 LBS)		US load rating, indicating maximum permitted load per tyre.
MAX INFLATION 350 KPA (51 PSI)		US limit, indicating maximum permitted tyre pressure.
SIDEWALL 1 PLY RAYON		Information about tyre wall components: 1 layer of rayon (artificial silk).
TREAD 4 PLIES 1 RAYON + 2 STEEL + 1 NYLON		Information about tread components: In the example, there are 4 layers below the tread: 1 layer of rayon (artificial silk), 2 layers of steel reinforcement and 1 layer of nylon.

Tyre code (example): Meaning	
Information for the end consumer concerning the comparative values of the established base tyres (standardised test procedures):	
TREAD-WEAR 280	Relative service life of the tyre, with respect to specific US standard test.
TRACTION A	Braking capacity of tyre on wet surface (AA, A, B or C).
TEMPERATURE A	Tyre temperature resistance at higher test speeds (A, B or C).
If there are different letters, they are specific codes of the tyre manufacturer or specific national codes.	

[a] The letters TIN refer to the tyre serial number.

Tyres with directional tread pattern

Tyres with directional tread pattern have been designed to operate best when rotating in only one direction. An arrow on the tyre sidewall indicates the direction of rotation on tyres with directional tread. Always observe the direction of rotation indicated when mounting the wheel. This guarantees optimum grip and helps to avoid aquaplaning, grip, noise and wear.

If the tyre is mounted in the opposite direction of rotation, drive with extreme caution, as the tyre is no longer being used correctly. This is of particular importance when the road surface is wet. Change the tyre as soon as »

possible or remount it with the correct direction of rotation.

Tyre load rating

The load rating code indicates the maximum load in kilogrammes each wheel can carry (load capacity).

78	425 kg
81	462 kg
83	487 kg
85	515 kg
87	545 kg
91	615 kg

Speed rating

The speed rating indicates the maximum speed permitted for the tyres.

P	max. 150 km/h (93 mph)
Q	max. 160 km/h (99 mph)
R	max. 170 km/h (106 mph)
S	max. 180 km/h (112 mph)
T	max. 190 km/h (118 mph)
U	max. 200 km/h (124 mph)
H	max. 210 km/h (130 mph)
V	max. 240 km/h (149 mph)
Z	max. 240 km/h (149 mph)
W	max. 270 km/h (168 mph)
Y	max. 300 km/h (186 mph)

Some manufacturers use the letters “ZR” for tyres with a maximum authorised speed above 240 km/h.

Maintenance

Service

Service intervals

Servicing and Digital Maintenance Plan

Log of services performed ("Digital Maintenance Plan")

The SEAT dealership or a specialised workshop records Service receipts in a central system. Thanks to this comprehensive documentation of the service history, it is possible to reproduce the services performed any time. SEAT recommends requesting a Service receipt after every service carried out containing all the services carried out on the system.

Whenever there is a new service the receipt is replaced with a current one.

The Digital Maintenance Plan is not available in some markets. In this case, your SEAT dealer will inform you about the current documentation of the work.

Service works

In the Digital Maintenance Plan, your SEAT authorised service or specialised workshop documents the following information:

- When each one of the services was carried out.
- Whether a specific repair has been suggested, e.g. changing the brake pads in the near future.
- If you have expressed a special request for the maintenance. Your Service Advisor will write the work order.
- The components or fluids that were changed.
- The date of the next service.

The Long Life Mobility Warranty is valid until the next inspection. This information is documented in all checks performed.

The type and the volume of the service may vary from one vehicle to another. A specialised workshop will be able to provide specific information on the jobs for your vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

If the services are insufficient or not performed and if the service intervals are not observed, the vehicle may be immobilised in traffic cause an accident and severe injuries.

- **Make sure that any repairs are carried out by a SEAT authorised service or specialised workshop.**

ⓘ CAUTION

SEAT cannot be held liable for any damage to the vehicle due to insufficient work or of lack of availability of spare parts.

Note

Regular services on the vehicle not only maintain its value, but also its correct operation and road safety. For this reason, conduct the services in accordance with SEAT guidelines.

Fixed Service or Flexible Service

Services are classified as **oil change service** and **inspection**. The service interval display on the instrument panel display serves as a reminder of the next service.

Depending on the features, the engine and the conditions of use of the car, either the **Fixed service** or the **Flexible service** will be applied for an oil change service..

How to know which type of service needs to his vehicle

- Check the tables below:

»

Oil change service[a]		
PR No.	Type of service	Service interval
QI1	Fixed	Every **5000 km** or after **1 year**[b]
QI2		Every **7500 km** or after **1 year**[b]
QI3		Every **10000 km** or after **1 year**[b]
QI4		Every **15000 km** or after **1 year**[b]
QI6	Flexible	According to the service interval display

[a] The data are based on normal conditions of use.

[b] Whatever happens first.

Inspection Service[a]
According to the service interval display

[a] The data are based on normal conditions of use.

Bear in mind the information about the specifications of the engine oil according to the VW standard ››› page 32.

Particular characteristics of the Flexible Service

Regarding the **Flexible Service**, the oil change service only has to be performed when the vehicle needs it. To calculate when you have to carry out this service, take into account the individual conditions of use and personal driving style. A major component of the flexible service the use of LongLife oil instead of conventional engine oil.

Bear in mind the information about the specifications of the engine oil according to the VW standard ››› page 32.

If you do not want to the flexible service you can select the fixed service However, a fixed service may affect service costs
The Service Advisor will gladly advise you.

Service intervals display

At SEAT, the dates of the services are indicated by the service interval display on the instrument panel display ››› page 90. The service interval display gives information for service dates that involve an engine oil change or an inspection. When the time for the corresponding service comes, additional work required, such as the change of brake fluid and the spark plugs, can be carried out.

Information on the conditions of use

The service intervals and groups are usually based on **normal conditions of use**.

If, on the other hand, the vehicle is under **adverse conditions of use**, some of the work must be carried out before the next service period or even between service intervals.

Conditions of use adverse include:

- The use of fuel with a high sulphur content.
- Frequent short trips.
- Letting the engine idle for a long period of time, as in the case of taxis.
- Using the vehicle in areas with thick dust.
- Frequent driving with a trailer (depending on equipment).
- Using the vehicle mostly in situations with a lot of traffic and stops (e.g. in a city).
- Using the vehicle mostly in winter.

This applies especially for the following parts (depending on equipment):

- Dust and pollen filter
- Air Care allergen filter
- Air filter
- Toothed chain
- Particulate filter
- Engine oil

The Service Advisor of your specialised workshop will gladly inform you about the need of performing service work between normal service intervals, always considering the conditions of use of your vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

If the services are insufficient or not performed and if the service intervals are not observed, the vehicle may be immobilised in traffic and cause accidents and severe injuries.

- **Have the services conducted at authorised SEAT services or specialised workshops.**

CAUTION

SEAT cannot be held liable for any damage to the vehicle due to insufficient work or of lack of availability of spare parts.

Sets of services

Sets of services include all the **maintenance works** needed to ensure the safety and the smooth running of the vehicle (**depending on the conditions of use and the features of the vehicle**, such as the engine, gearbox, or operating fluids). Maintenance services are divided into *inspection* and *review* services. Consult the details of the jobs required for your vehicle at:

- Your SEAT authorised service
- Your specialised workshop

Due to technical reasons (continuous development of components) the sets of services may vary. Your SEAT authorised service or specialised workshop is always receiving updates in time.

Additional service offers

Approved spare parts

Original SEAT Spare Parts have been conceived for their vehicles and approved by SEAT, with a special emphasis on safety. These parts correspond exactly to the manufacturer's requirements in terms of design, accuracy of the measurements and materials. The original SEAT Spare Parts have been conceived exclusively for your vehicle. For this reason, we always recommend the use of Original SEAT Spare Parts. SEAT cannot be held liable for the safety and suitability of parts from other manufacturers.

Approved spare parts

Approved spare parts, following the manufacturer's requirements, are an additional service to you, offering the possibility of replacing complete sets, such as: light engine, gearboxes, heads, control units, electrical components, etc.

These parts are, **approved parts**, and are the same as the factory parts, which are also approved spare parts.

Original accessories

We recommend you only use SEAT Original Accessories and SEAT approved accessories for your vehicle. The reliability, safety and suitability of these accessories have been inspected specifically for this type of vehicle. SEAT cannot be held liable for the safety and suitability of parts from other manufacturers.

SEAT Service Mobility (SEAT Service Mobility)

Since the moment you purchase your SEAT vehicle you will be able to enjoy the benefits and coverage of the SEAT Mobility Service.

For the first two years after the purchase, your new SEAT vehicle is automatically covered by the SEAT Mobility Service without additional costs.

If you wish to enjoy this service after this period, you can extend SEAT Mobility as long as you carry out the recommended Inspection and Maintenance Services at a SEAT Authorised Service. »

If your SEAT vehicle is immobilised due to a fault or an accident, our assistance services will help you keep moving.

Take into account that the SEAT Mobility Service differs depending on the country in which the vehicle was purchased. For further information ask your SEAT dealership or the SEAT website in your country.

Warranty

Fault-free operation warranty

SEAT Authorised Services ensure the perfect condition of new vehicles. Check the purchase agreement or complementary additional documentation provided by your Technical Service to see the conditions and the terms of the warranty. Consult further information in this regard in your SEAT Official Service.

Vehicle maintenance

Maintenance and cleaning

Basic considerations

Regular and careful care helps to maintain the value of your vehicle. In addition, it may become a prerequisite to demand the warranty in the event of corrosion damage and deficiencies in the paint coat of the bodywork.

Specialised workshops have the necessary care products. Please follow the instructions for application on the packaging.

⚠ WARNING

- **Cleaning products and other materials used for car care can be damaging to your health if misused.**
- **Always keep care products in a safe place, out of the reach of children. Danger of poisoning!**

❀ For the sake of the environment

- **When purchasing car care products, chose products that are compatible with the environment.**
- **The waste from car-care products should not be disposed of with ordinary household waste.**

Washing the vehicle

The longer you take to clean the tanks, e.g. remains of insects, bird excrements, tree resin or anti frost salt adhered to your vehicle, the more damage it can cause to the surface. High temperatures, for instance strong sunlight, further intensify the damage.

Before washing the car, soften the dirt using plenty of water.

To remove encrusted dirt such as insects, bird droppings or tree resin, use a lot of water and a microfibre cloth.

Have the underside of the vehicle washed after the end of the anti frost salts in winter.

High pressure cleaners

When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, always follow the operating instructions for the equipment. This applies particularly to the operating pressure and the distance between the spraying water. Do not aim the jet directly to the side window gaskets, doors, covers or the panoramic sunroof*; the same applies to tyres, rubber hoses, soundproofing material, sensors* or camera lenses*. Keep a distance of at least 40 cm.

Do not remove snow and ice with a high-pressure cleaner.

Do not use a nozzle that sprays the water out in a direct stream or one that has a rotating jet for forcing off dirt.

The water temperature must not exceed 60°C.

Automatic car wash tunnels

Spray the vehicle before starting the car wash.

Make sure that the windows and the panoramic sunroof* are closed and the windscreen wipers are deactivated. Bear in mind the instructions of the car wash tunnel operator, especially if your vehicle has detachable parts.

Use of car washes without brushes if possible.

Washing by hand

Clean your vehicle from top to bottom with a soft sponge or with a brush. Only use cleaning products that do not contain solvents.

Washing vehicles with a matte paint by hand

To prevent damage to the vehicle when washing it, first remove the thicker dust and dirt. To remove traces of insects, grease and fingerprints, it is best to use a special cleaner for matte paint.

Apply the product with a microfibre cloth. To avoid damaging the surface of the paint, do not apply too much pressure.

Rinse with plenty of water. Then clean it with a neutral cleaning product and a soft microfibre cloth.

Rinse the vehicle again with plenty of water and then leave it to dry. Remove traces of water with a leather cloth.

⚠ WARNING

- **Only wash the vehicle with the ignition switched off or according to the specifications of the car wash tunnel operator. Risk of accident!**
- **When cleaning the underbody or the inside of the wheel arches, protect yourself from sharp or pointy metal parts. Risk of cut!**
- **After cleaning the brakes could act more slowly due to moisture or, in winter, the ice on the brake discs and pads. Risk of accident! In this case the brakes should be dried by pressing the brake pedal several times.**

ⓘ CAUTION

- **Before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, please make sure to retract the exterior mirrors to prevent them from being damaged. Electric exterior rear-view mirrors must always be folded/deployed electrically!**
- **Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight. Risk of damaging the paint job!**
- **Do not use sponges, abrasive household sponges or similar to clean insect remains. Risk of damaging the surface!**
- **Vehicle parts with matte paint:**
  - **Do not use polish or hard wax. Risk of damaging the surface!**
  - **Never select washing programs that include the use of wax. This could damage the appearance of matte paint.**
  - **Do not put stickers or magnets on parts with matte paint, as removing them may damage the paint.**

For the sake of the environment

The car should only be washed in special wash bays. These places are prepared to prevent oily water from getting into the public drains.

Cleaning and maintenance instructions

The cleaning and maintenance of individual components of the vehicle can be checked in the following tables. The contents should be understood merely as a recommendation. Go to your specialised workshop if you have »

special questions or parts that are not listed. Take he general considerations into account ››› ⚠ in Take special care with... on page 225.

Exterior cleaning

Windscreen wipers

Problem	Solution
Dirt	Soft cloth with wipers

Headlights / Tail lights

Problem	Solution
Dirt	Soft sponge with neutral soap solution[a)]

[a)] Neutral soap solution: two tablespoons maximum in 1 litre of water

Sensors / Camera lenses

Problem	Solution
Dirt	*Sensors*: soft cloth with cleaning product which does not contain solvents *Camera lenses* - soft cloth with cleaning product with no alcohol content
Snow/ice	Hand brush/Anti frost spray with no solvents

Wheels

Problem	Solution
Anti frost salt	Water
Brake abrasion dust	Acid-free special cleaning product

End exhausts

Problem	Solution
Anti frost salt	Water, if a steel cleaning product is required

Covers / Trims

Problem	Solution
Dirt	Neutral soap solution[a)], if a steel cleaning product is required

[a)] Neutral soap solution: two tablespoons maximum in 1 litre of water

Paint

Problem	Solution
Flaws in the paint	Check the paint's colour code in an authorised service and restore with a touch-up pencil
Spilled fuel	Immediately rinse with water
Environmental rust tank	Apply rust remover and then apply hard wax. Go you your specialised workshop if you have any queries
Corrosion	Have your specialised workshop take care of this
The water does not create droplets on the clean paint	Maintain with hard wax (at least 2 times a year)
No shine despite sober maintenance/paint	Treat with suitable wax and apply paint preservative afterwards if the wax used does not contain preservative ingredients
Tanks, e.g. insect remains, bird droppings, tree sap, road salt	Immediately soften with water and remove with a microfibre cloth
Fat-based dirt, e.g. cosmetic products or sunscreen	Delete immediately with a neutral soap solution[a)] and a soft cloth

[a)] Neutral soap solution: two tablespoons maximum in 1 litre of water

Carbon fibre parts

Problem	Solution
Dirt	Clean the same way as painted parts ››› page 220

Decoration slides

Problem	Solution
Dirt	Soft sponge with neutral soap solution[a)]

[a)] Neutral soap solution: two tablespoons maximum in 1 litre of water

Interior cleaning

Windows

Problem	Solution
Dirt	Apply windscreen cleaner and then dry with a cloth

Covers / Trims

Problem	Solution
Dirt	Neutral soap solution[a)]

[a)] Neutral soap solution: two tablespoons maximum in 1 litre of water

Plastic parts

Problem	Solution
Dirt	Damp cloth
Encrusted dirt	Neutral soap solution[a)], if possible solvent-free plastic cleaner

[a)] Neutral soap solution: two tablespoons maximum in 1 litre of water

Displays/instrument panel

Problem	Solution
Dirt	Soft cloth with a liquid crystal display cleaner

Control panels

Problem	Solution
Dirt	Soft brush, then soft cloth with neutral soap solution[a)]

[a)] Neutral soap solution: two tablespoons maximum in 1 litre of water

Seat belts

Problem	Solution
Dirt	Neutral soap solution[a)], allowed to dry before retracting

[a)] Neutral soap solution: two tablespoons maximum in 1 litre of water

Fabrics, artificial, Alcantara leather

Problem	Solution
Dirt particles adhered to the surface	Vacuum cleaner
Water-based dirt, e.g. coffee, tea, blood etc.	Absorbent cloth and neutral soap solution[a)]
Grease-based dirt, e.g. oil, make-up, etc.	Apply a neutral soap solution[a)]. Absorb the dissolved grease and paint particles drying with an absorbent cloth, in case you must treat it with water afterwards
Special dirt, e.g. pens, nail polish, dispersion paint, shoe cream etc.	Special stain remove: dry with an absorbent cloth, if applicable, apply neutral soap solution afterwards[a)]

[a)] Neutral soap solution: two tablespoons maximum in 1 litre of water

Natural leather

Problem	Solution
Recent dirt	Cotton cloth with neutral soap solution[a)]
Water-based dirt, e.g. coffee, tea, blood etc.	Recent stains: absorbent cloth Dry stains: leather cleaner
Grease-based dirt, e.g. oil, make-up, etc.	Recent stains: absorbent cloth and leather cleaner Dry stains: grease dissolving spray
Special dirt, e.g. pens, nail polish, dispersion paint, shoe cream etc.	Stain remover suitable for leather

»

Problem	Solution
Care	Apply preservative cream regularly to protect from sunlight. Use a colour preservative if required

[a] Neutral soap solution: two tablespoons maximum in 1 litre of water

Carbon fibre parts

Problem	Solution
Dirt	Clean like plastic parts

Take special care with...

Headlights/tail lights

- Do not clean the headlights/tail lights with a dry cloth or sponge.
- Do not use cleaning products that contain alcohol. Risk of cracks!

Wheels

- Do not use for paint wax or other abrasive products.
- If the protective coating on the paint of the rim has been damaged due to stone impacts, scratches, etc., the damage should be repaired immediately.

Camera lenses

- Do not use hot or warm water to remove ice or snow from the camera lenses. Risk of cracking the lens!
- To clean the camera lens, never use abrasive cleaning products or products with alcohol. Risk of scratches and cracks!

Windows

- Remove snow and ice from windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper only. To avoid scratches, the scraper should only be pushed in one direction and not moved to and fro.
- Never remove snow or ice from windows and rearview mirrors with warm or hot water. Risk of cracks on the windows!
- To prevent damage to the heating of the rear window, do not put stickers over the heating elements.

Covers/trims

- Do not use cleaning products or chrome based cleaning agents.

Paint

- The vehicle must be free from dirt and dust before applying wax or care products. Risk of scratches!
- Do not apply wax or care products if the vehicle is exposed to direct sunlight. Risk of damaging the paint job!
- The ambient rust deposits must not be removed through friction. Risk of damaging the paint job!
- Remove cosmetic products and sunlight immediately. Risk of damaging the paint job!

Displays/instrument panel

- The screens, the instrument panel and the trim around it must not be cleaned dry. Risk of scratches!
- Make sure that the instrument panel is switched off and cooled down before cleaning.
- Make sure that no liquid leaks between the instrument panel and the trim. Risk of damage!

Control panels

- Make sure that no liquid leaks into the control panels. Risk of damage!

Seat belts

- Do not remove the seat belts to clean them.
- Seat belts and their components must never be cleaned with chemical products, nor should they be allowed to come into contact with corrosive liquids, solvents or sharp objects. Risk of damaging the fabric!
- If you find any damage to the belt webbing, belt fittings, the belt retractor or the buckle, ask your specialised workshop to replace the belt in question.

Fabrics/artificial leather/Alcantara leather

- Do not treat artificial leather/Alcantara leather with leather cleaning products, solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers or similar products.
- If the stain is very hard to remove, take the vehicle to a specialised workshop to have it removed there. This will prevent damage.
- Do not use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. to clean.
- Do not turn on seat heating* to dry the seats.
- Sharp objects on clothing, such as zips, rivets or belts can damage the surface.
- Open Velcro, e.g. on clothes can damage the seat upholstery. Make sure that Velcro fasteners are closed.

Natural leather

- Never use solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, spot removers or similar products on leather.
- Sharp objects on clothing, such as zips, rivets or belts can damage the surface.
- Do not use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. to clean.
- Do not turn on seat heating* to dry the seats.
- Avoid exposing leather to direct sunlight for long periods, otherwise it may tend to lose some of its colour. If the car is left for a prolonged period in the bright sun, it is best to cover the leather.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use water-repellent coatings on the windscreen. In bad visibility conditions such as humid weather, darkness or when the sun is in its lowest point, visibility may be impacted. Risk of accident! Such coatings can also cause the windscreen wiper blades to make noise.

Note

- **Remains of insects can be removed much more easily with previously treated paint.**
- **Regular car care treatments can prevent deposits of ambient rust.**

Remove the vehicle from traffic

If you want to leave your vehicle stationary for a long period of time, contact a qualified workshop. They will gladly inform you about the necessary measures, such as anti-corrosion protection, Service and storage.

Also take into account instructions regarding the vehicle's battery ››› page 204.

Information for the user

Information for the user

Information stored in control units

Description and operation

Your vehicle is fitted at the factory with a series of electronic control units responsible for the engine and gearbox management. In addition, the control units supervise the performance of the exhaust gas system and the airbag systems.

Therefore, while the vehicle is being driven, these electronic control units are continuously analysing the vehicle data. In the event of faults or deviations from the theoretical values, only this data is stored. Normally, the warning lamps on the instrument panel light up in the event of faults.

This data can only be read and analysed using special equipment.

The storing of the data allows specialised workshops to detect and repair faults. Stored data may include:

- Data relating to the engine or the gearbox
- Speed
- Direction of travel
- Braking force
- Detection of seat belt

The vehicle control units never record conversations held by passengers in the vehicle.

In vehicles equipped with an emergency call function via the mobile phone or other appliances connected in the vehicle, it is possible to send the vehicle position. If the control unit records an accident with airbag activation, the system may automatically send a signal. This will depend on the network operator. Normally, transmission is only possible in areas with good coverage.

Event Data Recorder

The vehicle is **not** fitted with an event data recorder.

An event data recorder temporarily stores the vehicle information. Therefore, in the event of an accident, it is possible to obtain detailed information about how the accident occurred. Vehicles with airbag systems can store data relating to impact speed, seat belt status, seat positions and airbag activation times may be stored, etc. The volume of data depends on the manufacturer.

Event data recorders can only be mounted with authorisation from the vehicle owner and, in some countries, they are governed by local legislation.

Reprogramming control units

On the whole, all the data required for the component management is stored in the control units. The programming of certain convenience functions, such as the turn signals, individual door opening and instructions on the display can be modified using special equipment at the workshop. If the comfort functions are reprogrammed, the information and Instruction Manual descriptions will not coincide with the modified functions. Therefore, SEAT recommends that any modifications be recorded in the section “Other workshop notes” in the Maintenance Programme.

The SEAT Official Service must have a record of any modification to the programming.

Reading the vehicle fault memory

There is a diagnostics connector in the vehicle interior for reading the vehicle fault memory. The fault memory documents errors and deviations from the theoretical values of the electronic control units.

The diagnostics connector is in the driver side footwell area, next to the lever for opening the bonnet, below a cover.

The fault memory should only be read and reset by a specialised workshop.

Other important information

Introduction

⚠ WARNING

Failure to treat the vehicle with the correct care increases the risk of accident and injury.

- **Observe legal requirements.**
- **Observe the Instruction Manual.**

ⓘ CAUTION

If the vehicle is not properly cared for, damage may occur.

- **Observe legal requirements.**
- **Carry out regular maintenance of the vehicle, according to specifications in the Maintenance Programme.**
- **Observe the Instruction Manual.**

Labels and plates

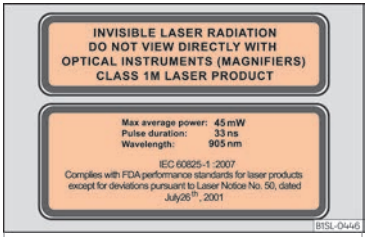


Fig. 192 Warnings relating to handling of the City Safety Assist system laser sensor function.

Some parts in the engine compartment come from the factory with certificates of safety, labels or plates containing important information regarding the operation of the vehicle, for example, on the fuel tank flap, on the passenger's sun visor, on the driver door strut, or on the floor of the boot.

- Never remove these certificates of safety, labels or plates, and ensure they are kept in good condition and are legible.
- If a vehicle part, bearing a certificate of safety, label or plate, is replaced, the specialised workshop should attach the information back in the same place.

Certificate of safety

A certificate of safety on the door strut states that all the safety standards and regulations established by the national traffic authorities responsible for road safety were met at the time of manufacture. It may also give the month and year of manufacture, together with the chassis number.

Warning of high voltage label

There is a label close to the bonnet lock which warns of high voltage in the vehicle's electrical system.

Warning relating to the City Safety Assist system laser sensor

There are some warning and information signs on the City Safety Assist system laser sensor ››› Fig. 192.

Using your vehicle in other countries and continents

The vehicle is manufactured at the factory for use in a particular country in accordance with the national legislation in force at the time of manufacture.

If the vehicle is sold in another country or used in another country for an extended period of time, the applicable legislation of that country should be observed.

»

It may be necessary to fit or remove certain pieces of equipment or to deactivate certain functions. Service work may also be affected. This is particularly true if the vehicle is used in a different climate for an extended period of time.

CAUTION

- **SEAT does not accept liability for any damage to the vehicle due to the use of a lower quality fuel, an inadequate service or the non-availability of genuine spare parts.**
- **SEAT does not accept liability if the vehicle does not comply in part or in full with the legal requirements of other countries or continents.**

Radio and antenna reception

For factory-fitted radio equipment, the aerial for radio reception is fitted to the roof of the vehicle.

Note

If electrical equipment such as mobile telephones, is used near a roof aerial, you may observe interference in the reception of AM stations.

Notes on SEAT repairs

WARNING

Repairs or modifications which are not performed correctly may result in damage or errors in the vehicle operation, affecting the effectiveness of the driver assist and airbag systems. This could result in serious accident.

- **Have any repairs or modifications carried out at a specialised workshop.**

Conformity certification

The respective manufacturer hereby declares that the products indicated below comply with basic requirements and the following provisions and important legislation on the date of manufacture of the vehicle, among others FCC Part 15.19, FCC Part 15.21 and RSS-Gen Issue 1:

Radio frequency equipment

- Electronic gearbox lock.
- Vehicle key

Electrical equipment

- 12 volt power socket

Collection and scrapping of end-of-life vehicles

Collection of end-of-life vehicles

SEAT is already prepared for the moment when you wish to scrap your vehicle and offers you an environmentally-friendly solution. An extensive network of used car reception centres already exists in much of Europe. After the vehicle has been delivered, you will receive a certificate of destruction describing the environmentally friendly scrapping of the vehicle in accordance with applicable legislation.

We will collect the used vehicle free of charge, provided it complies with all national legislation.

Please see your technical service for further information about the collection and scrapping of end-of-life vehicles.

Scrapping

The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the airbag or belt tensioner systems are scrapped. These requirements are known to specialised workshops.

Recycling of electrical or electronic devices

All electrical or electronic devices (EED) that are not permanently fitted in the vehicle must be marked with the following symbol:

This symbol indicates that EED must not be discarded as home waste but through selective waste collection.

Information about the EU Directive 2014/53/EU

Simplified EU compliance declaration

Your vehicle has different radioelectrical devices. The manufacturers of these devices declare that they comply with Directive 2014/53/EU when legally required.

The full text of the EU compliance declaration is available online at the following address:

www.seat.com/generalinfo CE

Table of correspondences

The table of correspondences will help you to associate the name of the device in the declaration of compliance with the features of the vehicle and the terminology used in the on-board documentation.

Features of the vehicle	Name of the device according to the declaration of compliance
Radiofrequency remote control (vehicle)	FS09, FS12A, FS12P, FS1477, FS94
Radio frequency remote control (auxiliary heater)	Sender STH SEAT - 50000914
	Telestart
Auxiliary heating	50000864 / D208L VW
	Telestart
Bluetooth	MIB2 Entry
	MIB Standard 2
	MIB2 Main-Unit
	A580 / A270
Wireless hotspot	MIB2 Main-Unit
	A580 / A270
Keyless Access System	MQB-B B
Radar sensors for assistance systems	ARS4-B
	MRRevo14F
	BSD3.0
Central control unit	5WK50254
	5WK50474
Infotainment system	MIB2 Entry
	MIB Standard 2
	MIB2 Main-Unit
	A580 / A270
Wireless charging	WCH-183
	WCH-185
	5G0.980.611
Connection to the external antenna of the car	UMTS/GSM-MMC
	UMTS/GSM-MMC-AG2
Instrument panel	eNSF
	Immobilizer integrated in dashboard module instrument cluster

»

Features of the vehicle	Name of the device according to the declaration of compliance
Antenna	FM/AM Antenna Base
	Antennas MQB27 Small/Big family
	Antennas KSA Small Fam III
	5Q0.035.507 Roof Antenna
	GNSS Antenna VAG 720166002
	8S7.035.503.B
Antenna amplifiers	6F0.035.225 6F9.035.225 3V5.035.577.A 7N0.035.552.J 7N0.035.552.K 7N0.035.552.Q 5F4.035.225 5F4.035.225.A 5F4.035.225.B 5F9.035.225 5F9.035.225.A 5F9.035.225.B 575.035.225 575.035.225.A 575.035.225.B

Addresses of the manufacturers

According to the Directive 2014/53/EU, all relevant components must include the address of the manufacturer.

The address of the manufacturers of components that, due to their size or nature, cannot include a sticker are listed below, as long as it is legally required:

Radioelectrical equipment fitted in the vehicle	Addresses of the manufacturers
Radiofrequency remote control key	Hella KGaA Hueck & Co. Rixbecker Straße 75 59552 Lippstadt, GERMANY
Radio frequency remote control (auxiliary heater)	Digades gmbH Äußere Weberstraße 20 02763 Zittau, GERMANY
	Webasto Thermo & Comfort SE Friedrichshafener Str. 9 82205 Gilching, GERMANY

Radioelectrical equipment fitted in the vehicle	Addresses of the manufacturers
Radar sensors for assistance systems	ADC Automotive Distance Control Systems GmbH Peter-Dornier-Straße 10 88131 Lindau, GERMANY
	Robert Bosch GmbH Postfach 16 61 71226 Leonberg, GERMANY

Frequency bands, station power

Radioelectrical equipment[a)]	Frequency band	Max. station power	Valid for models
Radiofrequency remote control (vehicle)	433.05-434.78 MHz	10 mW (ERP)	All SEAT models
	433.05-434.79 MHz	10 mW	
	868.0-868.6 MHz	25 mW	
	434.42 MHz	32 µW	
Radio frequency remote control (auxiliary heater)	868.7-869.2 MHz (869.0 MHz)	0.24 mW, / -6.3 dBm e.r.p.	Ateca
	868.0-868.6 MHz (868.3 MHz)	3.1 mW, / 4.8 dBm e.r.p.	Alhambra
Auxiliary heating	868.0-868.6 MHz (868.3 MHz)	23.5 mW, / 13.7 dBm e.r.p.	Alhambra
	868.7-869.2 MHz (869.0 MHz)	23.5 mW, / 13.7 dBm e.r.p.	Ateca
Bluethooth	2402-2480 MHz	6 dBm	All SEAT models
	2400-2483.5 MHz	10 dBm	
Wireless hotspot	2400-2483.5 MHz	10 dBm	Leon and Ateca
Connection to the external antenna of the car	GSM 900: 880-915 MHz	33 dBm	Ibiza, Arona, Leon, Ateca and Alhambra
	GSM 1800: 1710-1785 MHz	30 dBm	
	WCDMA FDD I: 1920-1980 MHz	24 dBm	
	WCDMA FDD III: 1710-1785 MHz	24 dBm	
Keyless Access	434.42 MHz	32 µW	Ibiza, Toledo, Arona, Leon and Ateca
Radar sensors for assistance systems	76 GHz-77 GHz	28.2 dBm	Toledo, Leon and Alhambra
		35.0 dBm	Ibiza, Arona and Ateca
	24050-24250 MHz	20 dBm	Arona, Ateca and Alhambra
Wireless charging	110-120 kHz	10 W	Ibiza, Arona, Leon and Ateca

»

Radioelectrical equipment[a)]	Frequency band	Max. station power	Valid for models
Instrument panel	125 kHz	40 dBµA/m	All SEAT models

[a)] The commissioning or authorisation of radioelectrical technology may be restricted in some European countries, forbidden or only allowed with additional requirements.

Technical data

Technical features

Important information

Introduction

The information in the vehicle documentation always takes precedence over the information in this Instruction Manual.

All technical specifications provided in this documentation are valid for the standard model in Spain.

The figures may be different depending whether additional equipment is fitted, for different models, for special vehicles and for other countries.

Abbreviations used in the Technical Specifications section

kW	Kilowatt, engine power measurement.
PS	Pferdestärke (horsepower), formerly used to denote engine power.
rpm, 1/min	Revolutions per minute - engine speed.
Nm	Newton metres, unit of engine torque.
CZ	Cetane number, indication of the diesel combustion power.
RON	Research octane number, indication of the knock resistance of petrol.

Vehicle identification data

Fig. 193 Vehicle identification number.

Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (chassis number) can be read from outside the vehicle through a viewer in the windscreen ››› Fig. 193. This viewer is located in the lower part of the windscreen. The vehicle identification number (chassis number) is also stamped on the right water drain channel. The water drain channel is located between the suspension tower and the wing. Open the bonnet to read the vehicle identification number ⚠.

Specific vehicle weight information

The instructions in the official vehicle documents take precedence. All the technical data provided in this documentation is applicable to the basic model.

The figures may be different depending whether additional equipment is fitted, for different models and for special vehicles.

Kerb weight values shown in the following table apply to a vehicle with driver (75 kg), liquids including a fuel tank 90% full, in addition to tools and a spare wheel ››› ⚠. The kerb weight indicated increases with optional equipment and retrofitting of accessories, while proportionally reducing carrying capacity.

The load is equivalent to the following weights:

- Passengers.
- Total equipment.

»

- Roof load, included in the carrier.

⚠ WARNING

Exceeding the maximum authorised weight and the load on the axles could cause damage to the vehicle, accidents and serious injuries.

- **The real load on the axles should never exceed the maximum permitted.**
- **The load and its distribution in the vehicle have effects on the vehicle handling and the braking ability. Always drive at a suitable speed.**

CAUTION

Distribute the load as uniformly and as low down on the vehicle as possible. When transporting heavy objects in the luggage compartment, these should be placed as far forward as possible or over the rear axle to have as little influence on handling as possible.

Fuel consumption

Approved consumption values are derived from measurements performed or supervised by certified EU laboratories, according to the legislation in force at the time (for more information, see the Publications Office of the European Union on the EUR-Lex website: © European Union, http://eur-lex.europa.eu/) and apply to the specified vehicle characteristics.

The values relating to fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions can be found in the documentation provided to the purchaser of the vehicle at the time of purchase.

Fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions depend on the equipment/features of each individual vehicle, as well as on the driving style, road conditions, traffic conditions, environmental conditions, load or number of passengers.

Note

In practice, and considering all the factors mentioned here, consumption values can differ from those calculated in the current European regulations.

Wheels

Tyre pressure, snow chains and wheel bolts

Tyre pressure

The sticker with the tyre pressure values can be found on the back of the left front door frame ››› **page 209**. The tyre pressure values given there are for *cold* tyres. Do not reduce the slightly raised pressures of warm tyres ›››.

Snow chains

Snow chains may be fitted only to the *front wheels*.

Consult section ››› **page 42, Snow chains**.

Wheel bolts

After the wheels have been changed, the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts should be checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench ›››. The tightening torque for steel and alloy wheels is **110** Nm.

⚠ WARNING

- **Check the tyre pressure at least once per month. Checking the tyre pressure is very important. If the tyre pressure is too high or too low, there is an increased danger of accidents - particularly at high speeds.**
- **If the tightening torque of the wheel bolts is too low, they could loosen while the vehicle is in motion. Risk of accident! If the tightening torque is too high, the wheel bolts and threads can be damaged.**

Note

We recommend that you ask your Technical Service for information about appropriate wheel, tyre and snow chain size.

Engine data

Petrol engines

	1.0 MPI		1.0 MPI Ecomotive	1.0 MPI Start-Stop Ecomotive	1.0 MPI		1.0 MPI Start-Stop	1.0 MPI Start-Stop Ecomotive
Power output in kW (PS) at 1/min	44 (60)/5,000-6,000				55 (75)/6,200			
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	95/3,000-4,300				95/3,000-4,300			
No. of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	3/999				3/999			
Fuel	Super 95 / Normal 91 (with a slight power loss) ROZ							
Gearbox	manual	automatic	manual	manual	manual	automatic	manual	manual
Top speed (km/h)	161 (4)	161 (4)	161 (4)	161 (4)	172 (4)	172 (4)	172 (4)	172 (4)
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h (seconds)	9.1	10.9	9.1	10.9	8.7	10.1	8.7	10.1
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h (seconds)	14.4	16.7	14.4	16.7	13.5	14.9	13.5	14.9
Maximum authorised weight (kg)	1,320	1,330	1,330	1,330	1,330	1,300	1,330	1,330
Weight in running order (with driver) (kg)	926	937	934	940	928	931	936	936
Maximum authorised weight on front axle (kg)	680	680	680	680	680	680	680	680
Maximum authorised weight on rear axle (kg)	640	640	640	640	640	640	640	640

Natural gas / petrol engines

	1.0 MPI
Power output in kW (PS) at 1/min	50 (68)/6,200
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	90/3,000
No. of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	3/999
Fuel	CNG
	Super 95 / Normal 91 (with a slight power loss) ROZ
Gearbox	manual
Top speed (km/h)	164 (4)
Acceleration from 0-80 km/h (seconds)	10.3
Acceleration from 0-100 km/h (seconds)	16.3
Maximum authorised weight (kg)	1,380
Weight in running order (with driver) (kg)	1,033
Maximum authorised weight on front axle (kg)	680
Maximum authorised weight on rear axle (kg)	640

Vehicle data

Dimensions

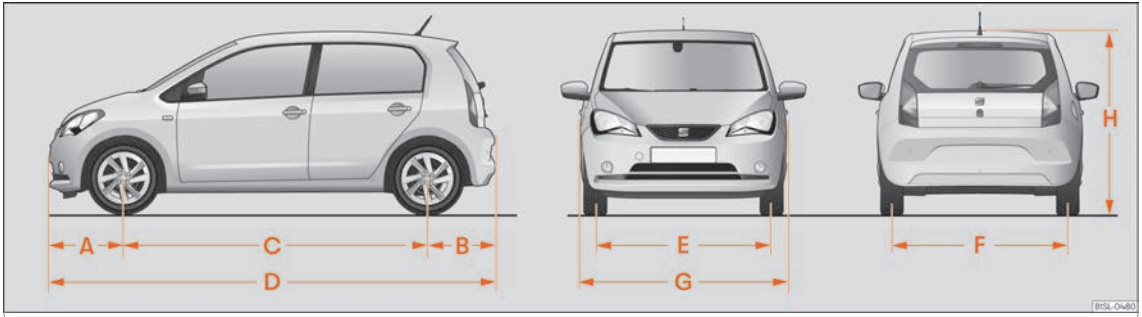


Fig. 194 Dimensions.

		Mii
A/B	Front and rear projection (mm)	595/542
C	Wheelbase (mm)	2,420
D	Length (mm)	3,557
E/F	Front/rear[a] track width (mm)	1,428/1,424
G	Width (mm)	1,645
H	Height at kerb weight (mm)	1,478
	Turning radius (m)	approx. 9.8

[a] This data will change depending on the type of wheel rim.

Index

A

Abroad
extended stay abroad with your vehicle ... 227
sale of vehicle ... 227
ABS
see Anti-lock brake system ... 156
Accessories ... 180
Acoustic alarm
control and warning lamps ... 27
seat belt unfastened ... 55
Adjust
front seat ... 112
Adjusting
lights ... 107
rear head restraints ... 52, 112
seats ... 49
Adjusting the head restraints
rear head restraints ... 112
Advice for driving
spare wheel or temporary spare wheel ... 213
Airbag covers ... 16
Airbags ... 60
Airbag system ... 16, 60
activation ... 62
control lamp ... 64
description ... 61
front airbags ... 16, 63
functioning ... 62
locking the vehicle after deployment ... 95
repairs ... 182
side airbags ... 18
use of child seats ... 17
Air conditioning ... 129
air recirculation ... 129
air vents ... 130
climatronic ... 29, 129
instructions for use ... 131
malfunction ... 131
tips ... 131
water under vehicle ... 132
Air recirculation ... 129
Climatronic ... 30
how it works ... 129
switching off ... 129
switching on ... 129
Air vents ... 130
Alcantara leather: cleaning ... 223
Antenna ... 182, 228
Anti-freeze ... 33
Anti-lock brake system ... 156
Anti-lock system ... 157
Anti-puncture ... 36, 73
Anti-puncture kit ... 36, 73
check after 10 minutes ... 74
do not use ... 73
Anti-puncture set ... 73
Anti-theft security system ... 97
Ashtray ... 119
Aspects to take into account before starting the vehicle ... 48
ASR
see Traction control system ... 156
Assistance systems
brake assist system (BAS) ... 157
cruise control system ... 171
electronic differential lock (EDS) ... 158
optical parking system (OPS) ... 174
parking aid ... 173
parking distance warning system ... 173
safety Assist ... 174
traction control (ASR) ... 157
Assisted starting ... 44
Assist systems
traction control (TC) ... 157
Audible warning
lights ... 103
speed ... 26
Automatic belt retractor ... 59
Automatic car wash tunnel ... 221
Automatic device disconnection
battery ... 205
Automatic dipped beam control ... 104
Automatic gearbox
driving tips ... 161
ignition key removal lock ... 150
kick-down ... 161
malfunction ... 162
starting on a slope ... 162
stopping on a slope ... 162
Automatic gear change ... 160
AUX-IN ... 144
AUX-IN multimedia source ... 144
Axle loads ... 233

B

Bag support ... 117
BAS
see Brake assist system ... 157
Battery
changing in the vehicle key ... 93
Battery acid ... 204
Before starting the vehicle ... 48

Belt tension device
service and disposal ... 59
Belt tensioner ... 59
Belt tension limiter ... 59
Belt tightening ... 59
Bluetooth ... 143
Bonnet ... 12, 193
Brake assistance system ... 156
Brake assist system ... 156
Brake fluid ... 34
specification ... 200
Brakes ... 151
brake assist system ... 156
brake fluid ... 200
brake fluid level ... 201
brake pads ... 154
brake servo ... 154
changing the brake fluid ... 201
control and warning lamps ... 152
running in new brake pads ... 154
warning and control lamps ... 156
Brake servo ... 154, 156
Brake system ... 156
fault ... 154
Braking
brake assistance system ... 156
Bulb fault
See "Changing bulbs" ... 79

C

Capacities ... 32
natural gas tank ... 192
windscreen washer liquid reservoir ... 202
Catalytic converter ... 168
control and warning lamps ... 168
malfunction ... 168
CCS
see cruise control ... 26
Central locking ... 94
emergency locking ... 11
opening doors individually ... 95
Central locking system
after airbag deployment ... 95
description ... 95
remote control key ... 95
Changes ... 181
Changing a wheel ... 37, 72
subsequent tasks ... 42
wheel bolts ... 39
Changing bulbs ... 79
front bumper ... 81
headlights ... 80
number plate light ... 83
rear lights ... 82
side turn signal ... 84
Changing gear ... 158
automatic gear change ... 160
control and warning lamps ... 159
engaging the gears (automatic gearbox) . 160
tiptronic ... 161
Changing the blades ... 75
Changing the wiper blades ... 46
Charging the battery ... 44
Child safety seat
securing with the seat belt ... 19
Child seat ... 18, 67
Child seats
disabling the front passenger front airbag .. 17
ISOFIX system ... 20, 69
mounting child seats ... 19
mounting systems ... 19
on the front passenger seat ... 68
on the rear seats ... 69
regulations ... 68
safety instructions ... 18, 66
Top Tether system ... 21
transporting children in the vehicle ... 67
weight categories ... 68
Cigarette lighter ... 120
City safety assist ... 174
City Safety Assist function
control and warning lamps ... 175
function ... 177
sensor ... 176
special driving situations ... 178
Cleaning
Alcantara leather ... 223
carbon fibre ... 222, 224
control panels ... 223
decorative sheets ... 223
exhaust tail pipes ... 222
exterior ... 222
fabrics ... 223
headlights / tail lights ... 222
high pressure cleaners ... 220
Interior ... 223
leather ... 223
paint ... 222
plastic parts ... 223
seat belts ... 223
sensors/camera lenses ... 222

special care ... 224
the radio screen ... 223
trims/covers ... 222, 223
washing the vehicle ... 220
wheels ... 222
windows ... 223
windscreen wipers ... 222
Climatronic
adjusting the temperature ... 29
air distribution ... 29
air recirculation ... 30
AUTO (automatic mode) ... 29
controls ... 29
cooling mode ... 29
fan ... 29
removing ice from windows ... 29
switch off ... 29
Close ... 92
bonnet ... 12
Closing ... 92
bonnet ... 12
electric windows ... 13
luggage compartment ... 100
panoramic sunroof ... 13
windows ... 101
Clothes hook ... 118
Code number ... 71
Coming Home Function ... 105
Compartments ... 115
centre console ... 116
glove compartment ... 117
passenger side ... 117
Sunglasses storage compartment ... 117
Conformity certification ... 228
Control and warning lamps ... 27
airbag system ... 64
brake system ... 152
catalytic converter ... 168
changing gear ... 159
City Safety Assist function ... 175
coolant ... 198
cruise control ... 171
cruise control system ... 171
emission control system ... 168
engine management ... 168
engine oil sensor ... 195
ESC ... 152
for the seat belt ... 54
fuel level ... 190
generator ... 203
hill hold ... 170
indication of brake pad wear ... 152
key ... 93
lights ... 103
locking the steering column ... 164
on the driver door ... 98
overview ... 27
refuelling ... 190, 191
tyres ... 212
vehicle battery ... 203
Controls for the windows ... 13, 101
Control units ... 226
reprogramming ... 226
Coolant
checking the level ... 199
control and warning lamps ... 198
filler neck ... 199
topping up ... 199
Cooling system
checking the coolant ... 198
topping up with coolant ... 198
Correct position ... 49
Correct sitting position
driver ... 49
Cruise control ... 26, 171
control and warning lamps ... 171
operation ... 172
Cruise control system ... 171

D

Dangers in not using the seat belt ... 56
Dash panel ... 87
Data registry ... 226
Data storage during the journey ... 226
Daytime running lights ... 104
Diagnostics connector ... 226
Digital clock ... 88
Dimensions ... 237
Direction of rotation
tyres ... 42
Disabling the front passenger front airbag ... 17
Display ... 88, 89
Disposal
belt tension device ... 59
Door cylinder ... 10
Door lock ... 10
Door release lever ... 10
interior ... 87
Doors ... 98
childproof locks ... 98
Emergency closing or opening ... 10
opening and closing ... 10

Drink holders 118
Centre console 119
Driver
see Correct sitting position 49
Driving
automatic gearbox 161
data storage 226
driving abroad 169
driving through water 169
economical 166
fuel gauge 190
fuel level too low 190
parking downhill 153
parking uphill 153
safe 48
starting on a slope 162
stopping on a slope 162
through salt water 169
with a trailer 179
Driving abroad
headlights 107
Driving in winter
fuel consumption 167
snow chains 42
traces of salt 110
tread depth 211
tyre pressure 210
Driving through water 169
Driving tips
For a loaded vehicle 114
Duplicate keys 92
Dust filter 132
Dynamic headlight range control 107

E

E10
see Ethanol (fuel) 187
EDL
see Electronic differential lock 156
EDS
see "Brake assist system" 158
Electrical devices 120, 121
Electric windows 13
buttons 101
closing 101
opening 101
see Windows 101
Electronic differential lock 156
Electronic immobiliser 151
operating fault 149
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 156
Emergencies 70
bulbs 36
changing a wheel 37
emergency towing of the vehicle 43
fire extinguishers 70
first aid kit 70
fuses 35
hazard warning lights 106
jump leads 44
puncture 36
replacing a blown fuse 35
vehicle tool kit 70
warning triangle 70
Emergency closing or opening
driver door 10
passenger door 11
Emergency locking and unlocking 77
rear lid 12
Emergency unlocking
rear lid 12
Emission control system
control and warning lamps 168
Emissions data 234
Engine
assisted starting 44
noises 150
running in 165
Start-Stop system 170
Engine and ignition 149
12 Volt sockets 121
ignition lock 149
Immobiliser 151
starting the engine 149
stopping the engine 150
unauthorised vehicle key 149
Engine compartment 12, 193
battery 34, 202
brake fluid 34, 200
coolant 33, 198
engine oil 32, 197
windscreen washer reservoir 34, 201
Engine coolant 33
checking the level 198
G 12 plus-plus 33
G 13 33
specifications 33
temperature display 198
Engine data 235
Engine management 168
control lamps 168

Engine oil 32, 195
changing 195
checking oil level 196
consumption 196, 197
control and warning lamps 195
dipstick 196
specifications 195
topping up 197
Environment
environmental compatibility 165
Environmental
ecological driving 166
Environmental tips
refuelling 191
Equipment 180
safety 61
ESC
electronic stability control 156
Ethanol (fuel) 187
Event Data Recorder 226
Exhaust gas purification system 168
Exterior mirrors
adjustment 15
Exterior rear view mirrors
control of the function 111
electric exterior mirrors 111
exterior 111
Exterior view 7, 8

F

Fabrics: cleaning 223
Fastening rings 126
Fault
parking distance warning system 174
Fault memory
connector 226
reading 226
Filling the tank 189, 191
Fire extinguisher 70
First-aid kit
storage 70
Floor mats 53
Fluid level control 32
Fog light 23
Front airbags 16, 63
Front passenger front airbag
control lamp 64
disabling 17
disconnection 64
Front seats
manual adjustment 112
manually adjusting 14
Front wiper blades
change 47
cleaning 47
Fuel 32, 186
ethanol 187
identification 186
natural gas 187
petrol 186
savings 166
Fuel gauge
control lamp 190
petrol 190
Fuel tank cap
opening and closing 32
Fuel tank flap
opening and closing 32
Fuses 35, 78
fuse box 79
identifying blown fuses 35
identifying by colours 35
preparation before replacing 35
replacing 35

G

Gearbox lever 28
Gear change 28
automatic gearbox 28
changing gears manually 159
gear recommendation 163
manual gear change 28
putting the vehicle in gear (manual gear-box) 159
Gear engaged 28
General instrument panel
instrument panel 87
Generator 203
Glove compartment 117

H

Handbrake 153
Hazard warning lights 23, 106
Head-on collisions and their laws of physics . 56
Headlight range control 107
Headlights
driving abroad 107
Head rest
adjustment 112
Head restraints
adjustment 112
rear head restraints 52

Heated rear window 30, 31
Heating and fresh air
controls 30
Heating and fresh air system 129
Heating of the rear window 30, 31
Hill driving assistant 179
Hill hold
control and warning lamps 170
Start-Stop system 170
Horn 87
How to jump start 44
description 45
Hubcaps 38

I

Ice
removing from the windscreen 30, 31
Identification of the fuel 186
Identifying letter on engine 233
Ignition 22
see "Engine and ignition" 149
Ignition lock 22
removal lock 150
unauthorised vehicle key 149
In case of emergency 70
Indications on the display 89
odometer 89
recommended gear 90
reminder 91
seat belt status 90
selector lever positions 90
Start-Stop 90
temperature 89
Information for the user 226
Infotainment system
introduction 133
Infotainment System
adjusting the playback volume 144
anti-theft password 137
AUX-IN connection 144
Bluetooth 143
change the Media source 141
changing station 140
Drive Mii App 147
frequency bands 139
frequency change 139
general considerations about operation ... 137
general equipment panel 135, 136
Media mode 141
mobile phone connection 145
phone calls 147
power management 137
preset buttons 140
Radio mode 139
saving stations 140
SD card 142
switching on and off 137
tune station frequency 140
USB 143
Inspection 217
Instrument panel 88
control and warning lamps 27
display 88, 89
general instrument panel 87
instruments 88
menus 25
service intervals 90
symbols 27
Instrument panel lighting 107
Instruments 88
Interior lights 24
Interior rear vision mirror
anti-dazzle 110
Interior view
left-hand drive 9
ISOFIX 20
ISOFIX System 20

J

Jack 37, 70, 72
mounting points 40
Jump leads 44

K

Keys
control lamp 93
duplicates 93
mechanical key 93
remote control 92
replacing the battery 93
spare key 92
synchronising 94
unlocking and locking 10, 95, 97
vehicle key 92
Kick-down 162

L

Labels and plates 227
Laser sensor 176
Leaving Home Function 105
Lift platform 184

Lights 22, 103
audible warnings 103
AUTO 104
Coming home 105
control and warning lamps 103
control lighting 107
daytime running lights 104
dipped beam headlights 103
driving abroad 107
fog light 23
functions 104
hazard warning lights 23
headlight range control 107
instrument panel lighting 107
Leaving home 105
light controls 103
luggage compartment 108
main beam 23
main beam headlights 103
main beam lever 105
parking light remains on both sides 104
side lights 103
switch 22
turn signal lever 105
Load compartment in the luggage compartment
see Loading the luggage compartment ... 122
Loading
general advice 114
loaded vehicle 115
transporting the load 114
Loading the luggage compartment 122
driving with the rear lid open 114
Loading the vehicle
class N1 126
fastening rings 126
luggage compartment 11
retaining hooks 126
roof carrier system 128
Locking and unlocking
in the door cylinder 10
luggage compartment 100
panoramic sunroof 102
Luggage 122
Luggage compartment 11, 99, 122
closing 100
cover 124
driving with the rear lid open 114
luggage compartment variable floor 125
manual release mechanism 12
opening 100
unlocking 100
see also Loading the luggage compartment 122
Luggage compartment floor 125
Luggage compartment variable floor 125

M

Main beam lever 105
Main panel
turn signal and main beam lever 105
Maintenance
see Service 217
Malfunction
air conditioning 131
automatic gearbox 162
catalytic converter 168
rain and light sensor 110
Manual air conditioning 129
adjusting the temperature 31
air distribution 31
controls 30
cooling mode 31
fan 31
switching off 30
MEDIA 141
external data storage device connected to a USB port 143
smartphone 147
Mirror 110
Mobile phone
Bluetooth 145
Mobile telephone 182
use without an exterior aerial 183
Model plate 233

N

Natural gas 187
fuel tank cap 192
refuelling 187, 192
smell 188
Navigation
smartphone 147
Noises
brake assist system 158
engine 150
Number of seats 50

O

Octane rating (petrol) 186

Odometer
partial ... 88
total ... 88
Open and close
panoramic sunroof ... 102
Opening ... 92
bonnet ... 12
electric windows ... 13
fuel tank flap ... 191, 192
luggage compartment ... 100
panoramic sunroof ... 13
Windows ... 101
Opening and closing ... 10, 92
bonnet ... 12
by remote control ... 95
doors ... 98
electric windows ... 13
from the inside ... 97
fuel tank flap ... 192
in the door cylinder ... 10
panoramic sunroof ... 13, 102
rear lid ... 11
tank flap ... 191
Opening doors individually ... 95
Optical parking system (OPS) ... 174
Original SEAT Spare Parts ... 219
Overview
Control and warning lamps ... 27

P

Panoramic sunroof ... 13, 102
anti-trap function ... 102
closing ... 102
opening ... 102
Parking ... 151, 153
downhill ... 153
uphill ... 153
Parking aid ... 173
optical parking system (OPS) ... 174
sensors and camera: cleaning ... 222
Parking aid system
see Parking aid ... 173
Parking distance warning system ... 172
fault ... 174
see also Parking aid ... 173
Parking light remains ... 104
ParkPilot
see Parking aid ... 173
Passenger door emergency locking ... 11
Pedals ... 49, 53
Petrol
fuel gauge ... 190
Petrol ... 186
Phone management
Bluetooth ... 145
Pollen filter ... 132
Pollution filter ... 132
Positioning the seat belt
for pregnant women ... 57
seat belts ... 14
Power brake system
anti-lock system ... 157
Power outlet
12 volts ... 120
Products for vehicle maintenance ... 220
Puncture
action ... 36
Pushing the vehicle ... 149

R

Radio-operated remote control
see Keys ... 92
Radio DISPLAY: clean ... 223
Radio Mode ... 139
Radio reception
antenna ... 228
operating faults ... 228
Rain and light sensor ... 109
malfunction ... 110
Raising the vehicle ... 40
lift platform ... 184
Rear
headrests ... 52
Rear backrest
folding ... 123
lifting up ... 123
Rear lid ... 11
emergency locking and unlocking ... 12
see also Luggage compartment ... 99
Rear seat bench ... 123
Rear view mirror
adjusting the exterior mirrors ... 111
Rear vision mirror
interior anti-dazzle ... 110
Rear windows ... 101
Recommended gear ... 163
Recycled ... 228
refuelling
Petrol additives ... 186
Refuelling ... 186
control and warning lamps ... 190
fuel gauge ... 190
mistakes ... 189

natural gas ... 192
opening fuel tank flap ... 191
Remote control key
unlocking and locking ... 95
Repairs ... 181, 228
airbag system ... 182
Repair work ... 180
Replacement
parts ... 180
Replacement parts ... 180
Replacing bulbs
See "Changing bulbs" ... 79
Reprogramming control units ... 226
Retaining hooks ... 126
Revolution counter ... 88
Rims
changing a wheel ... 37
Roof carrier ... 127
Roof carrier system ... 127
fastening the supports ... 127
Roof rack ... 127
Running in
brake pads ... 154
new engine ... 165
wheels and tyres ... 209

S

SAFE ... 97, 151
Safe driving ... 48
Safety
child safety ... 65
child seats ... 65
disabling the front passenger front airbag ... 17
safe driving ... 48
Safety Assist ... 174
Safety equipment ... 49
Safety instructions
using child seats ... 18, 66
using seat belts ... 55
Sale of vehicle
in other countries / continents ... 227
Scrapping ... 228
airbag system ... 228
vend-of-life vehicles ... 228
SD card ... 142
Seat belts ... 53
adjustment ... 14, 57
automatic belt retractor ... 59
belt tensioner ... 59
belt tension limiter ... 59
protective function ... 55
purpose ... 53
safety instructions ... 55
twisted belt ... 55
unfastened ... 56
warning lamp ... 54
Seat belt tensioner ... 15
Seat belt tensioners ... 59
Seat heating ... 113
SEAT information system ... 24
Seats ... 50
heating ... 113
incorrect position ... 50
number of seats ... 50
rear backrest ... 123
SEAT Service Mobility ... 219
Service
conditions of use ... 218
digital maintenance plan ... 217
fixed service ... 217
flexible service ... 217
oil change service ... 217
service ... 217
Service proof ... 217
services ... 217
servicing ... 217
sets of services ... 219
Service fluids ... 180
Service interval display ... 90
Service intervals display ... 218
Side airbags
description ... 18
Smartphone ... 147
Smartphone holder
removing and inserting ... 121
Smell of gas ... 188
Snow chains ... 42, 234
temporary spare wheel ... 42
Spare fuel canister ... 189
Spare parts ... 180
Spare wheel
removing ... 213
Spare wheel or temporary spare wheel
advice for driving ... 213
Speed limiter ... 171
Speed rating ... 216
Start-Stop system ... 170
operation ... 170
Starting the vehicle ... 22
Steering ... 163
control and warning lamps ... 164
steering column lock ... 163
tendency to pull to one side ... 211
Steering wheel
adjustment ... 15, 50

Storage compartments 115
centre console 118
driver side 116
other storage compartments 118
Sunglasses storage compartment 117
Sun protection 108
Sun visors 108
Switch
hazard warning lights 106
Switching lights off 103
Switching lights on 103
Switching the ignition on and off 22
Symbols
see Control and warning lamps 27

T

TC
see Brake assist system 157
Technical data
axle loads 233
engine oil specifications 195
kerb weight 233
roof load 128
total weight 233
tyre pressures 209
weights 233
windscreen washer reservoir capacity 202
windshield washer fluid container capacity . 32
Technical features 233
Technical modifications 181
Technical specifications
dimensions 237
Temperature gauge
coolant temperature 26
temporary spare wheel
Snow chains 42
Tightening torque 234
wheel bolts 39
TIN 215
Tiptronic 161
Top Tether 21
Top Tether system 21
Tow-starting 44, 75
Towing
things to note 76
Towing bracket 179
description 179
Towing the vehicle 43, 75, 149
front towline anchorage 77
tow bar 76
tow rope 76
Towline anchorages 43
Traction 215
Traction control 157
Traction control system 156
Traction Control (TC) 157
Trailer 179
Transporting
driving with the rear lid open 114
load 114
loaded vehicle 115
Transporting children 65
Transporting items
fastening rings 126
roof carrier 127
roof carrier system 127
Transporting objects
roof carrier system 128
Treadwear 215
Turn signal convenience function 105
Turn signal lever 23, 105
Tyre load rating 216
Tyre Mobility Set 36
Tyre Mobility System
components 74
inflating a tyre 74
sealing a tyre 74
see also Anti-puncture kit 73
Tyre pressure 234
spare wheel or temporary spare wheel 210
Tyre pressures 209
Tyre profile 210
Tyre repair 73
Tyre repair kit
see Anti-puncture kit 73
Tyres
avoiding damage 207
changing 37
code 214
damage 211
eccentricity 211
foreign bodies in the tyres 211
handling 206
interchanging tyres 207
new 209
old 207
replacing 209
serial number 215
snow chains 42
speed rating 215, 216
storing 207
technical details 214
tyre code 214
tyre identification number (TIN) 215

tyre load rating 216
Tyre pressures 209
tyres with directional tread pattern 207
valve caps 210
wear 211
wear indicators 211
wheel alignment issues 211
Wheel balancing 211
wheels 208
with compulsory direction of rotation 42
with directional tread pattern 215
Tyre tread depth 210
Tyre wear 210

U

Unfastening the seat belt 14, 57
Unlocking and locking 10
by remote control 95
doors 98
from the inside 97
USB
connecting an external data storage device 143
location 120
USB socket 120

V

Valve caps 210
Vanity mirror 108
Vehicle
chassis number 233
identification data 233
identification number 233
loading 114
raising 40
recycling 228
Vehicle battery 34, 202
acid 204
assisted starting 44
automatic device disconnection 205
charging 204
checking the battery electrolyte level 203
connecting 204
control and warning lamps 203
discharging 150
disconnecting 204
preparations 203
replacing 204
running flat 205
Vehicle care
antenna incorporated in window 228
Vehicle data 237
Vehicle key set 92
Vehicle maintenance 220
Vehicle paint
maintenance 222
Vehicle tool kit 37, 70
components 71
location 71
Vibrations
steering 211

W

Warning and control lamps
ABS 156
ESC 156
Warning triangle 70, 106
Warranty 220
Washing the vehicle
external vehicle maintenance 220
high pressure cleaners 220
sensors 173
Wear indicators 211
Weights 233
What negatively affects driving safety? 48
Wheel bolts 72, 234
anti-theft 72
caps 38
loosening 39
Tightening torque 39
Wheel load capacity 215
Wheel rims
beadlock 208
bolted trims 208
Wheels 206, 208, 234
changing 37, 41
changing a wheel 72
hubcaps 38
spare wheel or temporary spare wheel 213
storing the replaced wheel 213
Wheel trim
hubcaps 38
remove 38
Wheel trims
Full hub caps 38
Windows 101
electric 13
Window wiper 108
Window wiper lever 108
Window wiper blade 24

Windscreen
heat-insulating glass 108
infrared coating 108
removing ice 30, 31
Windscreen and rear window wiper blades . . . 75
Windscreen washer 34, 108
rain and light sensor 109
Windscreen washer water
checking 201
topping up 201
Windscreen wipers 24, 108
cleaning 222
functions 109
heated windscreen washer jets 109
lifting the wiper blade 46
replacing the wiper blade 46
service position 46
Windscreen wipers service position 46

SEAT S.A. is permanently concerned about continuous development of its types and models. For this reason we ask you to understand, that at any given time, changes regarding shape, equipment and technique may take place on the car delivered. For this reason no right at all may derive based on the data, drawings and descriptions in this current handbook.

All texts, illustrations and standards in this handbook are based on the status of information at the time of printing. Except for error or omission, the information included in the current handbook is valid as of the date of closing print.

Re-printing, copying or translating, whether total or partial is not allowed unless SEAT allows it in written form.

SEAT reserves all rights in accordance with the "Copyright" Act.

All rights on changes are reserved.

This paper has been manufactured using bleached non-chlorine cellulose.

© SEAT S.A. - Reprint: 15.11.18

Inglés 1SL012720BL (11.18)